

**THE ROLE OF THEME AS AN INDEX OF GENRE:  
ANALYSES OF TOURIST GUIDES TAKEN FROM TWO  
CULTURALLY DIFFERENT SITUATIONS**

**Volume 2: Appendices**

**Thesis submitted in accordance with the requirements of the  
University of Liverpool for the degree of Doctor in Philosophy by**

**Anwar Suleiman Awad El-Issa**

**December 1998**

# Table of Contents

<b>Introduction .....</b>	<b>1</b>
<b>Appendices to Doha: Original Versions of Texts .....</b>	<b>2</b>
Appendix A1: Text D1.....	3
Appendix A2: Text D2.....	10
Appendix A3: Text D3.....	24
Appendix A4: Text D4.....	32
Appendix A5: Text D5.....	37
Appendix A6: Text D6 .....	44
Appendix A7: Text D7.....	46
Appendix A8: Text D8.....	53
Appendix A9: Text D9.....	60
Appendix A10: Text D10.....	65
<b>Appendices to Doha: Structural Analysis of Theme Types .....</b>	<b>74</b>
Appendix B1: Text D1.....	75
Appendix B2: Text D2.....	94
Appendix B3: Text D3.....	122
Appendix B4: Text D4 .....	141
Appendix B5: Text D5.....	153
Appendix B6: Text D6.....	176
Appendix B7: Text D7.....	180
Appendix B8: Text D8 .....	196
Appendix B9: Text D9.....	214
Appendix B10: Text D10 .....	225

**Appendices to Doha: Analysis of Topical Themes and Transitivity .....253**

Appendix C1: Text D1 .....254  
Appendix C2: Text D2 .....257  
Appendix C3: Text D3 .....261  
Appendix C4: Text D4 .....264  
Appendix C5: Text D5 ..... 268  
Appendix C6: Text D6.....270  
Appendix C7: Text D7 .....271  
Appendix C8: Text D8 .....274  
Appendix C9: Text D9 .....277  
Appendix C10: Text D10 .....279

**Appendices to Liverpool: Original Versions of Texts .....283**

Appendix D1: Text L1 .....284  
Appendix D2: Text L2 .....287  
Appendix D3: Text L3 .....290  
Appendix D4: Text L4 .....290  
Appendix D5: Text L5 .....292  
Appendix D6: Text L6 .....294  
Appendix D7: Text L7 .....298  
Appendix D8: Text L8 .....306  
Appendix D9: Text L9 .....322  
Appendix D10: Text L10 .....329

**Appendices to Liverpool: Structural Analysis of Theme Types .....330**

Appendix E1: Text L1 .....331

Appendix E1: Text L2 .....343

Appendix E1: Text L3 .....349

Appendix E1: Text L4 .....358

Appendix E1: Text L5 .....364

Appendix E1: Text L6.....375

Appendix E1: Text L7 .....401

Appendix E1: Text L8 .....425

Appendix E1: Text L9 .....446

Appendix E1: Text L10 .....464

**Appendices to Liverpool: Analysis of Topical Themes**

**and Transitivity ..... 467**

Appendix F1: Text L1 .....468

Appendix F2: Text L2 .....470

Appendix F3: Text L3 .....471

Appendix F4: Text L4 .....473

Appendix F5: Text L5 .....475

Appendix F6: Text L6 .....476

Appendix F7: Text L7 .....480

Appendix F8: Text L8 .....484

Appendix F9: Text L9 .....487

Appendix F10: Text L10 .....490

<b>Appendices to Biography Genre: Original Versions of Texts .....</b>	<b>491</b>
Appendix G1: Alfred Hitchcock .....	492
Appendix G2: Captain James Cook .....	493
Appendix G3: Dizzy Gillespie .....	497
<b>Appendices to Biography Genre: Structural Analysis of Theme Types .....</b>	<b>500</b>
Appendix H1: Alfred Hitchcock .....	501
Appendix H2: Captain James Cook .....	508
Appendix H3: Dizzy Gillespie .....	515
<b>Appendices to Geography Text-Book genre: Original Versions of Texts .....</b>	<b>522</b>
Appendix I1: Volcanoes .....	524
Appendix I2: Rivers .....	526
<b>Appendices to Geography Text-Book Genre: Structural Analysis of Theme Types .....</b>	<b>528</b>
Appendix J1: Volcanoes .....	530
Appendix J2: Rivers .....	537

## **Introduction**

The appendices contained in Volume 2 of the thesis are divided into three major parts:

First, Appendices A1-A10 (Doha tourist guides), D1-D10 (Liverpool tourist guides), G1-G3 (texts drawn from the Biography genre) and I1-I2 (texts drawn from the Geography Text-Book genre) contain the complete original versions of the chosen texts.

Second, Appendices B1-B10 (Doha tourist guides), E1-E10 (Liverpool tourist guides) H1-H3 (Biographies) and J1-J2 (Geography Text-Book extracts) contain the Structural Analysis of the Theme types of each of the above sets of data respectively.

Third, Appendices C1-C10 (Doha) and F1-F10 (Liverpool) contain the Analysis of the Topical Themes and Transitivity Analysis of the Doha and the Liverpool data respectively.

## **Appendices to Doha: A1-A10**

### **The Original Versions of Texts**

**APPENDIX A1****Text 1 about Doha**

***Qatar, A MEED PRACTICAL GUIDE***, John Whelan (ed.). Middle East Economic Digest Ltd., London-England (1983 ).

Fly into Doha by night and you will see through the semi-circumstanceless of bright orange lights a city which has clearly been planned. Qatar's capital is built on four concentric ring roads which follow the curve of a perfect semicircumstanceular bay stretching northwest and southeast. This is modern Doha, the city of 2000, whose elegance is often masked by construction sites and the dust of seemingly perpetual roadworks. The city has changed rapidly in the time 50 years. A transformation brought about by the advent of oil wealth.

In the late eighteenth century Thani Bin-Mohammad, usually considered the founder of Qatar's present ruling family, left the northwest town of Zubara, which had for centuries been the seat of power in the country, and moved down the east coast to Fuwairat. Fuwairat today is a tiny fishing village of perhaps 100 home, retaining no sign of its former prominence.

Thani's son, Mohammad Bin-Thani, was born at Fuwairat, but later moved to Bida, a fishing village halfway down the peninsula. As the population grew, the original village gradually extended along the coast and became known as Al-Doha-the extension.

Bida still retains some signs of the time-although this will not be true for much longer. The district covers the coastal strip west of the present Amiri palace, extending as far as Rumaila. It has a variety of old, small mud-built houses and more elegant stone-built villas- which became fashionable once the oil operators moved in - and also provides direct access to the original dhow harbour.



Doha's early development can be traced through the names given to the various districts of the existing city. Each district (fariq) was named after the family group which inhabited that particular area, so you find Fariq Bin-Omran, Fariq Bin-Mahmoud, Fariq Salata, and so on. Some areas- Al-Hitmi, Al-Najma, Al-Badi and Wadi Sail - have not yet succumbed to modern urbanisation. There you can see single-story buildings with flat roofs and white gypsum-covered walls, reminders of the way most of the population lived before oil revenue changed their lives. Before 1952 there was no electricity, no running water and only a few roads for the handful of cars belonging to the oil company and some wealthier families.

Even where older housing has been removed to make way for modern buildings the longer established areas of Doha are marked by the presence of abundant deciduous trees, which provide a pleasant contrast to the city's generally dusty appearance.

Two of the capital's more impressive landmarks also hark back to pre-oil days. On the southeast point of the Bay of Doha is the Qatar National Museum, a former Amiri palace rebuilt and restored as an exact replica of the original. The palace was originally built by Shaik Abdulla Bin-Jassim al-Thani, ruler of Qatar from 1913-49.

It contains three buyut (residences), the central one for the ruler, and the other two for his sons, Shaik Hamad Bin Abdulla - father of the present ruler-and Shaik Ali Bin-Abdulla. The architect was the Bahraini builder Abdulla Bin Ali al-Mail, who also built the harbour at Bir Zikrit, the original landing stage for Bahrain dhows bringing fresh water, vegetables and equipment for oil operations in Dkuhan in the late 1940s.

Abdulla moved from the old palace to the present one, in the heart of the existing town, in 1923. It had been the site of a fort used by Turkish forces during their domination of Qatar before 1915.

Doha bay's shoreline has changed dramatically in the past 30 years. The waters of the Gulf used to lap the walls of both the original and the present Amiri palaces. In

pre-oil days access to the sea was a vital means of communication. In addition, the west point of the bay where the Doha Sheraton and conference centre now dominate the skyline, did not exist. Beyond Bida the semi-circumstanceular curve of the bay disappeared into an ill-defined evil-smelling morass of sabkhas (salt flats).

One of the most impressive features of Doha's modern reconstruction programme has been the reclamation of land from the sea, both to create an aesthetically pleasing coastline and to provide the site for the prestigious West Bay urban development area (see West Bay).

### **The Corniche and Port**

With reclamation complete, the corniche road has become an elegant focus both for affairs of state and for recreation. A protective sea wall will, in the next two years, be lined with pleasant gardens and pavements dotted with open-air cafes.

Driving along the Corniche you can see opposite Qatar National Museum a large shelter under which craftsmen, sponsored by the Amir, continue their traditional work of building dhows. The shows are no longer essential to the economy, but are used for traditional sports and celebrations such as the annual dhow race. Next comes the modern port, where the latest equipment has been installed to deal with container traffic. Doha handles mostly commercial cargoes destined for the city, while oil and industrial exports and imports are handled at Umm Said. A major development programme is continuing at the port to ensure its facilities will rival those found elsewhere in the Gulf. Opposite the port are the head offices of Qatar National Navigation & Transport Company, one of the countrys largest and most successful private ventures (see Transport).

Continuing along the Corniche you come to the traditional fishing port, its tightly packed fleet of dhows interspersed with modern cabin cruisers, and with fishing nets hanging out along the roadside waiting for repair. Early risers can visit this area at dawn to buy fresh fish at very reasonable prices.

On the landward side of the Corniche and continuing for its entire length is a series of architecturally outstanding buildings representing the heart of commercial and financial activity. They include the headquarters of many ministries and major commercial institutions, among them Qatar National Bank (QNB), Government House and Qatar Monetary Agency (QMA-central bank authority). While the QNB and QMA buildings are modern concrete and glass structures, Government House, the seat of the Finance & Petroleum Ministry, is much older. It is undergoing a major facelift to make it blend in with modern style of the rest of the seafront architecture.

### **Amiri Palace**

Returning once more to the Corniche you go time the capital police headquarters to the central part of the city, opposite the Grand Mosque and dominated by the Amiri palace. The square also includes the National Development Museum and the Clock Tower. Major reconstruction is under way at the Amiri palace to expand facilities to cope with the new demands of state administration, and to build an entrance to the palace from the Corniche appropriate to the city of the future. Close by are several beautiful buildings including the Foreign Affairs Ministry, an outstanding example of a blend of modern and traditional Islamic architecture, the Interior Ministry and The British Bank of the Middle East.

### **National Theatre**

Towards the northwest end of the Corniche before it turns on to the West Bay is the Qatar National theatre and Information Ministry complex which opened in February 1982. The theatre, which includes a 500-seat auditorium is sited in traditional Arab gardens with multiple arches and rose gardens. If you turn left from the theatre the road leads towards the television and radio station complex, which includes new automated studios to allow more programmes to be produced locally. Opposite the complex is a row of commercial establishments including restaurants.

Turning left at Television Station roundabout you come to Fariq Bin Omran. This area houses the US embassy, the Doha English-speaking junior school and kindergarten, the Doha Players Theatre, the Gulf Folklore Heritage Centre and the diplomatic guest villas. Back towards the town centre are, on the right, the Hamad

hospital and the Women's hospital, now being built. The Hamad is a referral hospital but includes a 24-hour casualty unit. On the left is the Rumaila hospital, opened in 1957 as the country's first general hospital and now used as a long-stay and rehabilitation hospital. Behind the Rumaila is the polyclinic, where all bachelors are registered for primary health care as part of the new nationwide registration scheme.

### **Taxis**

All taxis have yellow number plates and some have 'taxi' on the roof or the drivers door. Meters are not used and the fare should be negotiated before setting off. Unless told otherwise the driver will stop to pick up other fare-paying passengers on the way. Ladies should always travel in the back and should specify that there be no other passengers. (for car hire see Practical Guide.)

### **Hotels**

Qatar is now well served by first class hotels, with over 1,500 beds available in five-star hotels alone. Some hotels face 50 per cent occupancy rates for much of the year, making advance booking a formality for businessmen and travellers. There are also several three and four-star hotels available which offer an acceptable standard of accommodation a reasonable price.

There is no need to tip hotel staff because a 10 per cent service charge is added to the bill.

### **Restaurants**

Eating out in Qatar can range from the very elegant to the very basic. the major restaurants are those in the five-star hotels, of which undoubtedly the best is the Al-Shaheen Rooftop Restaurant in the Sheraton on West Bay. All the other five-star hotels maintain good restaurants, and the Italian Restaurant at the Oasis deserves a special mention.

The Ramada hotel has Maxim's (French cuisine in sumptuous decor) and the Lulua restaurant which specialises in Arabic food, as does the main restaurant at the

Oasis hotel. Buffet lunches tend to be the rule at the hotels but excellent alternatives can be found at the Oasis' Italian at other hotels.

### **Shops and supermarkets**

It is now possible to buy most things in Doha, though it is still necessary on occasion to search diligently, and shortages of certain items do occur.

### **Food**

No street is complete without its 'cold store' or corner shop, usually stocking the essentials and open all day, every day.

### **Bread**

Arab bread is available from all bakers. European-style bread and cakes can be bought from all supermarkets and direct from the Umm Said Bakery on Museum road, Arirang Bakery on Gulf street and Andalusia Bakery behind the B ring road.

### **Antiquities and museums**

**Qatar National Museum** At the eastern end of the Corniche. Open 0900-1200 and 1500-1800. Tuesday afternoons: ladies only. Closed Friday morning.

The Qatar National Museum is acknowledged as one of the finest in the region. It is housed in a former Amiri palace, built at the turn of the century and recently restored. The museum won the Aga Khan award for restoration and rehabilitation of Islamic architecture in 1980. The museum contains sections on history, the traditional economy-pearl fishing, fishing, nomad textiles-the geology and developments of the oil industry, traditional perfumes, costumes, jewellery, firearms and furniture, as well as a collection of decorations presented by foreign governments to the state of Qatar.

The museum complex also includes a large aquarium, displaying a cross-section of the marine life of the Gulf, and a lagoon in which a number of original dhows used during the pearling age are moored.

A visit to the museum is essential for any visitor wishing to gain an insight into the character and culture of the people of Qatar.

**National Development Museum** Next to the Grand Mosque, by the Diwan al-Amiri. Houses permanent displays of the major development plans under construction or planned for implementation by 2000.

**APPENDIX A2****Text 2 about Doha**

*Welcome to Qatar*, published by Department of Publications & External Information, Information Affairs. Ministry of Information & Culture.

**History**

Evidence of early habitation in Qatar, that can be traced as far back as the 4th century BC, appeared in many artifacts such as inscriptions, rock carvings and the fine examples of pottery which were uncovered by the different foreign expeditions.

Al-Thani were among a tribal group which settled at Gebrin Oasis in southern Najd, for a long time, before their arrival in Qatar during the early 18th century. Initially they stayed in the north of the peninsula before moving to Doha in the mid 19th century under the leadership of Mohammed Bin Thani.

The family of Al-Thani is a branch of the Arab tribe Tamim, whose descent is traced back to Mudar Bin Nizar. This tribe inhabited the eastern parts of the Arabian peninsula.

The name of Al-Thani is derived from that of the family's ancestor Thani Bin Mohammed, father of Mohammed Bin Thani who was the first Shaik to rule over the Qatar peninsula during the mid 19th century.

**Location & Area**

The state of Qatar is situated half-way along the west coast of the Arabian Gulf covering an area of 11,437 sq km, including a number of islands, the most important of which are Hawar Archipelago, Halul, the island of Jinan, Shar'ou and others.

The State of Qatar generally consists of flat rocky surfaces. However it includes some hills and sand dunes in the western and northern parts of the country.

Qatar has a moderate desert climate of hot summer and, minimal rainfall, warm winter. As from October to mid April the weather is usually pleasant.

The present population is estimated at 500,00 inhabitants, most of most of whom reside in Doha, the capital city.

### **Independence**

On the 3rd of September 1971 H.H. Shaik Khalifa Bin Hamad Al-Thani, the Emir declared the independence of Qatar and on the 22nd of February 1972. H.H. assumed leadership of the country.

On May 31st 1977 H.H. the Emir issued an Emiri Decree appointing HH Shaikh Hamad Bin Khalifa Al-Thani, Heir Apparent and Minister of Defense.

### **Main Cities & Towns**

#### **Doha:**

Doha is the capital city of Qatar. It is situated half-way down the east coast of the Qatar peninsula. It is the seat of the government, housing government departments, ministries, financial and commercial institutions.

#### **Umm Said:**

Umm Said is the heart of Qatar's industry. Its development is integrally linked with the discovery of oil in the country.

#### **Al-Khor:**

It is a coastal town, boasts of its fine beaches, mosques and its old tower. It has its regional museum to house the historical valuable acquisitions of Al-Khor town.

#### **Al-Wakrah:**

It is a coastal town situated 15 km from Doha, half-way along the north east coast between Doha and Umm Said. The town has a small old port in addition to mosques and a number of traditional houses which represent the old Islamic architecture.



**Dukhan:**

Dukhan is situated on the west coast of the State of Qatar, 84 km from Doha. It gained its importance when oil was discovered in the surrounding fields.

**Madinat Al-Shamal:**

It is situated on the northern tip of the Qatar peninsula, about 107 km from Doha. It functions as an administrative centre for a number of coastal villages.

**Al-Zubarah:**

It is an important antiquity and historical town, situated in the north of the peninsula about 105 km from Doha. It is well known for its old fort.

### **The Important Forts**

**Al-Zubarah Fort:**

It lies 105 km away from Doha on the north western part of Qatar peninsula. It was built during the time of Shaik Abdullah Bin Qassim Al-Thani in 1938 by a group of local builders and was restored in 1987 to be a local museum.

**Al-Kout Fort:**

It is one of Doha's old military fortresses, situated in the centre of the city. It was built in 1917 during the time of the late Shaikh Abdulla Bin Qassim Al-Thani.

**Al Wajbah Fort**

It is situated in the western south part of Al-Rayan in Doha. It was built in 1882. The fort witnessed a famous battle in which the people of Qatar, under the leadership of Shaik Qassim Bin Mohammed Al Thani, the ruler of Qatar, won victory over the Ottoman forces in 1310 AH (1893 AD).

**Murwab Fort:**

It is situated 15 km north of Dukhan town. It was built on the foundations of an older fort around which five groups of buildings are scattered, making a total 250 houses, built during the Abbasid period.

**Al-Thughb Fort:**

It is an old fort situated 8 km away in the north eastern part of Al-zubarah town.

**Al-Rakiyat Fort:**

It lies about 110 km away from Doha. It was built during the late 19th century and restored in 1988.

**Umm Salal Mohammed Fort:**

It was built during the 19th century on the north eastern part of the country, about 20 km away from Doha. It is residential fort which combines civil and military functions.

**Burzan Tower:**

It is situated in Umm Salal Mohammed area. It was built during the late 19th and early 20th centuries. Its unique watch towers have no equal in the Gulf region. It is a rectangular construction of three levels with an external staircase leading to the top level.

On the other hand, many forts, in Qatar, have been effaced or become ruins such as Al-Teeby, Al-Yousufia and Umm Al-Ma forts in addition to Al-Ghuwair Castle which lies about 85 km away from Doha.

### **Places of Interest**

**a-Museums:****1. Qatar National Museum:**

It is the main museum in Qatar lies opposite to Doha Corniche. It was built in 1912 as a palace for ruler of Qatar. Shaik Hamad Bin Abdulla Al-Thani was the first Emir to use it.

In 1972 H.H. the Emir, Shaik Khalifa Bin Hamad Al-Thani, commissioned the restoration and development of the palace as a national museum and it was officially opened in 1975.

The museum complex consists of the following five sections; the old palace, the State Museum, the Lagoon, the Aquarium and the gardens.

**Opening Hours:**

(9 am to 12 noon except Friday. 3 pm to 6 pm in winter. 4 pm to 7 pm in summer. Saturday closed for maintenance).

**Al-Wakrah Museum:**

**Opening Hours:**

(8 am to 12 noon. 3 pm to 6 pm in winter. 4 pm to 7 pm in summer. Saturday closed).

**Al-Khor Museum:**

**Opening Hours:**

(9 am to 12 noon. 3 pm to 6 pm in winter. 4 pm to 7 pm in summer. Saturday closed).

**Al-Zubara Museum:**

**Opening Hours:**

( 9 am to 12 noon. 3 pm to 6 pm in winter. 4 pm to 7 pm in summer. Saturday closed).

**Al-Kout Museum:**

**Opening Hours:**

(8 am to 12 noon. 3 pm to 6 pm in winter. 4 pm to 7 pm in summer. Saturday closed).

**Doha Ethnographic Museum:**

**Opening Hours:**

(8 am to 12 noon. 3 pm to 6 pm in winter. 4 pm to 7 pm in summer. Saturday closed).

**B-Beaches:****Fuwairat Beach:**

It lies about 90 km away from Doha on the north eastern coast of Qatar. This fine beach, together with Al-Jassasiya rocky hills are considered an attractive site for visitors.

**Dukhan Beach:**

It lies about 36 km away from Doha on the South eastern coast.

**Umm Said Beach:**

It lies about 36 km away from Doha on the South eastern coast.

**Khor Al-Udeid:**

It lies about 78 away from Doha on the south eastern part of Qatar. It is famous for its sand dunes which reach altitude of 40 metres above sea level in some places:

**The Palm Trees' Island:**

It is not far from Doha Corniche, looking upon Doha Sheraton Hotel and full of palm trees. Those who are fond of fishing prefer to visit the island, by their boats for rest and enjoyment. On the island there are some restaurants that can offer delicious fresh fish dishes in addition to a wonderful beach, public coffee and a special place for children to play and get fun. The Palm Trees' island soon receive visitors.

**Umm Said Camp:**

This camp will include a high standard hotel and forty beach cabins along the marvelous sandy beach of Umm Said.

**West Bay Residential Project:**

This big residential project is taking place on the west bay area. It consists of several residential sections around an artificial huge lake, includes a big hotel and a special club, commercial center, entertaining center that includes parks and water sports, a mosque and many different restaurants

**Al-Dohoul:**

It means caves that were formed through thousands of years underground because of the erosion of limestones by the rushing of the ground water.

Some of these (Dohoul) are: Dahl Al-Haman, Dahl Al-Misfer and Dahl Al-Modhlim. These caves (Dohul) are distinguished in their natural beauty and cold weather.

**C-The Desert:**

The deserts are not the same in Qatar. In the north and central parts of the State there are many surface rain water-draining basins known as Al-Riyadh (the gardens) which are changed usually to green colour during spring time.

In the south parts desert includes some sand dunes while in west center, near the coast, there are series of calcic mountains.

**Amusing Places****Shahaniyah Farm**

It lies about 45 km away from Doha on an area of 12 sq km. It was set up to protect the Arabian deer (Al-Maha, Al-Reem) from extinction, in addition to Al-Wabrah shelter, 40 km away from Doha, which includes different kinds of deer and descendants of rare origin.

**The Zoo:**

It lies 20 km away from Doha on Salwa road.

**Doha Corniche:**

It extends for more than 7 km along the city coast.

**Women & Children Park:**

It lies in Al-Muntazah area south Doha. It is assigned only for women and children.

**Families' park:**

It lies in Al-Muntazah area south Doha. It is suitable place for families to enjoy their time with their children who can have the benefit of the several playing equipment available in the park. On special, during the year, the park presents different interesting shows to entertain and amuse the visitors.

**The Airport Park:**

It lies near the Airport buildings.

**Al-Wakrah Park:**

It lies in Al-Wakra. It provides much entertainment and enjoyment, especially for children.

**Al-Khor Park:**

This park is set up on a large area near Al-Khor city. Many visitors prefer to spend their weekend in this place. Children can find many playing equipment in addition to a cafeteria and other services.

**Theatres & Cinemas:**

Qatar National Theatre is one of the biggest theatres in Doha. It is equipped with the most up-to-date techniques. Most of the works of Qatari theatrical groups are staged on this theatre. Players theatre hosts foreign theatrical groups. There are also two other small theatres; the Ministry of education's theatre and the theatre of the General Organisation for Youth and Sports.

In Doha and Umm Said the cinemas present the most up-to-date Arabic and Foreign films.

**Al-Addin's**

Al-Addin's kingdom, as it is named, lies on the west bay coast area. It is built on a 140,000 sqm over looking the bay offering a total of 18 rides suitable for all ages.

The park has two sections; one is assigned for women and children under 8 years, the other is available for families.

The park includes a rest house, a mosque for men and another for women and children under 8 years, the other is available for families.

The park includes a rest house, a mosque for men and another for women, an artificial lake, a theatre for a 1000 person and a cafeteria facing the bay in addition to many other services.

-The park is open from 4 pm to 11 pm. Except Saturdays.

-The admission fee is QR. 35.

-Wednesdays only women are allowed.

### **THE SOUQS (Markets)**

Most of the Souqs lie in the middle of Souq Wakif area. Many old small shops, standing along the small passways and narrow passages, exhibit all sorts of garments, perfumes, spices and all tools of different crafts.

### **Diving After Pearls**

Diving after pearls before oil discovery was the main work for those who lived near the coast. Diving after pearls needs a team work and collective effort from those who are working on the boat to succeed on their mission.

Diving time is about five months: from April to September.

### **AL-Kolafa (Boats Calking):**

Al-Kolafa (Boats Calking) is one of the oldest crafts on the Gulf shores. The Chief material used in this craft are red wood, teak wood, ropes and tar. Later iron nails were used instead of ropes. Some of these old boats are; Al-Baqarah Boats, Al-Baghlan Al Bateel, Al-Galboot and Al-Boom.

The main centres for boats calking in Qatar are, Al-Ruwais, Al-Wakra, Al-Khor and Doha. Qatari sea-men used these boats for commerce and transporting purposes, fishing and diving after pearls.

### **Architecture**

The old Qatari buildings are distinguished by their carvings, ornaments and arabesque decorations which were carried out by the hands of local builders.

The Qatari architecture is an extension of the famous Islamic Architecture. The Qatari builder knew the gypsum and used it in building houses, palaces, forts, towers and mosques.

Gypsum rocks were brought usually from Fuwairat and Al-Mafgar, north of the country, to Doha, Al-Rayan and Al-Wakrah.

### **JEWELS & GARMENTS**

In most cases women's jewels are made of gold or silver inlaid with precious stones. Women's jewels have many and different shapes. Some are used for ears, for neck and for fingers like earring, necklaces and rings. Some others are put on wrists, arms, around waists, on the head or braided with the hair.

The traditional women's garments are always loose and modes according to the Islamic teachings and Arabian traditions.

Women's garment are made of wool, flax or cotton according to the season.

Some of these garments are embroidered with golden or silver threads at the front upper and lower parts in addition to the wide sleeves of the dress.

Some of the most famous women's dresses in Qatar are; Thawb Al-Nashel, Al-Darra'ah, Al-Serwal, Al-Higab, Al-Aba'ah and Battolah.

### **SPORTS**

Qatar have lately hosted several regional and international championships the latest of which were Qatar Rally championship, the Fifth Pan-Arab Equestrian



Championship and the Qatar Open Tennis in addition to many tournaments which have taken place on Khalifa International Complex for Tennis & Squash.

In Qatar there are Nine Sports Clubs in which a variety of sports are practiced in addition to many other cultural and scientific clubs. Youth Centers and Youth Societies which comprise most of the international sports one of which are practiced in open air such as Baseball, Badminton, Basketball, Cricket, Golf, Hockey, Rugby, Horse Races (in horsemanship club at Rayyan), Diving, Water Skating and many other sports. Some others are practiced in closed halls, like Bowling (in the Bowling Center), Judo, Tokondo, Tennis, Squash and others.

### **Sports Still Practiced:**

Camel races sport is of a great importance in Qatar. It is a sport of full excitement and competition.

Annual camel races are organised at Shahania racecourse, under the supervision of the Camel Race Committee, and many prizes are appropriated for this occasion.

Horse races sport has the same interest and many horse races are organized by the horsemanship club in Rayyan, supervised by the Horsemanship Association.

On of the old sports still existing is boats races which always take place offshore near Doha Corniche during national occasions and feasts.

Falson's hunting is a seasonal sport, practiced by the Qatari people and others. There are many different kinds of falcons of which the best are; Al-Hor and Al-Shaheen which each may reach QR. 250,000 or more.

Before sharing in hunting, the Falcon must be well trained by his owner in order to be able to hunt Al-Habara, Pigeons, Rabbits and Deer.

## **GENERAL INFORMATION**

### **Rules of Entry:**

Visitors to Qatar have to get a visa at one of Qatar's Embassies to the different countries, except those of CCASG and the United Kingdom.

The Qatari visas are of four sorts:

- 1 Hours Visa: For businessmen who has urgent business with Qatari companies or corporations.
- 2 One week-Three Months Visa: for visitors who need more time to finish their work. They can get it through their agents in Qatar and they can not go past three months.
- 3 Residing visa: For those who are contracting to work in Qatar after practicing their work and it is renewed automatically.
- 4 Residing visa: For tourists and businessmen through the Qatar hotels.

### **Points of Entry**

**By land:** Through the two main border points at Abu Samra and Sauda-Nathil.

**By Air:** Through Doha International Airport.

**By Sea:** Through the ports of Doha and Umm Said.

### **Durations & Official Occasions:**

-Government Dept.: 7 am to 1 pm

-Companies & Corporations:

8 am to 12 noon

4 pm to 6 pm

-Friday is the weekend holiday

### **Feasts & Official Occasions:**

-Eid Al-Fitr Al-Mubarak:

in the 1st of Shawal of the Hegira

-22nd of February:

The anniversary of H.H. the Emir's accession to rule.

-The 3rd of September:

The National Day

**Local Time:**

-Greenwich Mean Time plus three hours

**Electricity:**

-240 Volts ± with a frequency of 50 hertz

**International Communications:**

-Qatar has direct dialing with a total of 198 countries

**Post Services:**

The Departments of Posts is responsible for providing a variety of excellent postal services; Letters, Parcels and Mumtaz post. There are over 28 Post Offices in Doha and other cities.

**-Stamp's Fees:**

25 Dirhams-inside the country

75 Dirhams-for CCASG

100 Dirhams for other Arab countries

200 Dirhams for foreign countries

200 Dirhams for East Asia, U.S.A. and Australia.

Registered letter due more fees.

**Currency Unit:**

-The Qatari Riyal, which divides into 100 Dirhams

**Paper Money:**

-1 Riyal, 5, 10, 50, 100 and 500 Riyals

**Metallic Money;**

-1 Dirham, 5, 10, 10, 25 and 50 Dirhams

(1 US\$ = 3.65 QR.)

**Banks:**

There are 14 banks in Qatar of which 6 are national banks.

**Hotels:**

- Doha Sheaton Hotel: 85444

- Gulf Hotel: 432432

- Ramada Hotel: 417417

- Oasis Hotel\_424424

- Sofitel Doha Palace: 435222

- Doha Palace Hotel: 426131
- Qatar Palace Hotel: 421515
- Qatar International Hotel: 321761
- New Capital Hotel: 445445-Al-Qayed Hotel: 425396

**Taxi Wages:**

- 10 Dirhams for every 200 m inside Doha at morning.
- 20 Dirham for every 200 m inside Doha at night.
- 15 Dirham for every 200 m outside Doha at morning.
- 30 Dirham for every 200 m outside Doha at night.
- 10 Dirham for every 60 seconds of wait period at morning.
- 20 Dirham for every 60 seconds of wait period at night. (night wages from 9 pm to 5 am).

**APPENDIX A3****Text 3 about Doha**

***Qatar Tourist Guide.*** Published by Ministry of Information, Department of Tourism and Antiquities.

**HISTORY**

Recent excavations by a French archaeological mission indicate that settlement in Qatar dates back to about 8000 BC. The flourishing period, from which over two hundred sites have already been located, was the fifth millennium BC, with an economy depending mainly on fishing and hunting.

Grinding stones unearthed at Al-Da'sa and Al-Khor may be considered as evidence that wild crops were gathered, while the existence of agriculture remains a question mark.

Barter at that period is ascertained by the presence of imported Ubaid pottery at Al-Da'sa and Al-Khor.

Except for a number of cairns and burials, the period between Neolithic and Hellenistic has not yielded yet adequate information because of the lack of field work. The fishing village discovered at Ras Aburuk dates back to the first centuries of our era.

Murwab marks a turning point in the history of Qatar since it is the oldest known fort, going back to the early Islamic period, built on the ruins of an older fort destroyed by fire.

## **The Reign of al-Thani**

The Al-Thani came to Qatar in the 18th century and in 1868 Sheik Mohammed bin Thani became the first ruler . The family is a branch of Bani Tamim tribe who traced their descent back to Mudhar bin Nazar.

During August and the beginning of September 1971, His Highness Sheik Khalifa bin Hamad al-Thani negotiated the end of the 1916 treaty with Britain and on 3 September announced full independence for Qatar. Sheik Khalifa assumed supreme authority on 22 February 1972 with the full support of the ruling family, the people of Qatar and the armed forces.

On 31 May 1977, Sheik Khalifa issued an Emiri decree appointing H.H. Major General Sheik Hamad bin Khalifa al-Thani Her Apparent and Minister of Defence.

## **Geography**

Qatar is situated halfway along the western coast of the Arabian Gulf. The country consists of a peninsula projecting northwards about 160 km into the Gulf. At its widest point, the Qatar peninsula is about 80 km from coast to coast and covers an area of 11,437 square kilometres.

The climate is characterized by a mild winter with little rain (approx. 70 mm per annum) and a hot summer. The weather is generally pleasant during the months of April, May, October and November.

The population of Qatar is about 230,000, eighty per cent of whom live in the capital, Doha.

Islam is the country's official religion and Islamic jurisprudence is recognized as the basis of the legal system.

Arabic is the official language although English is widely spoken.

## **Main Cities and Towns**

**Doha:** the capital and centre is situated along Qatar's eastern coast and houses the ministries, government departments and financial and commercial institutions. Villas of modern design and high-rise apartment blocks form the skyline of the new residential areas. Al-Rayyan, the largest and most important of the capital's suburbs lies seven km from Doha and is noted for its architecture, green areas and its stadium.

**Umm Said:** (36 km from Doha) a town situated on the south east coast, developed after the discovery of oil when a port for oil export from onshore fields of Dukhan was established. It has become Qatar's main industrial town following the establishment of a number of heavy industrial projects, the most important of which are the iron and steel and petrochemical plants.

**Al-Khor:** (57 km from Doha) is an old Qatari town, famous for its traditional harbour, beaches, watchtowers and archaeological sites.

**Al-Wakrah:** is a trading and fishing town halfway between Doha and Umm Said. It is well known for its traditional architecture. A traditional house under restoration is being transformed into a regional museum.

**Dukhan:** (84 km from Doha) lies on the western coast of Qatar. It gained significance by the discovery of oil in adjacent onshore fields and is the headquarters of the onshore operations of the Qatar General Petroleum Corporation. It is distinguished by its beautiful beaches, popular with visitors on weekends and public holidays.

**Madinat al-Shamal:** (107 km from Doha) is a modern town on the extreme northern coast of the country. It was established as a service centre for a number of coastal villages.

**Al-Zubarah:** (105 km from Doha) situated in the north, is famous for its archaeological sites and old fort.

**Umm Bab:** (85 km from Doha) lies to the south of Dukhan. It is the site of a large cement factory established in 1969 and an important junction for the pipeline which carries oil and gas from Dukhn to Umm Said.

**Umm Salal Mohammed:** (21 km from Doha) lies on the Doha-Al-Khor highway. Distinguished by its forts, it depends on trade for its livelihood.

**Umm Salal Ali:** (27 km from Doha) lies halfway between Doha and Al-Khor. Like its neighbouring town of Umm Salal Mohamed, its economy depends on trade.

### **Entry Requirements**

It is necessary to have a valid passport before entering the country.

Three categories of entry visas are obtainable from Qatari resident diplomatic missions:

1-A 72 hour visa is granted to businessmen provided they are sponsored by a local company.

2-Visitors visas for a maximum period of three months must be sponsored by a government ministry or a local company.

3-Persons holding employment contracts to work in Qatar are granted residence permits.

### **Points of Entry**

**By land:** through the two main border points at Abu Samra, frontier point with Saudi Arabia and Sauda-Nathil, frontier point with the United Arab Emirates.

**By air:** through Doha International Airport.

**By sea:** through the ports of Doha and Umm Said

### **Government and Business Hours**

6.00- 13,00 (Saturday through Thursday)

### **Commercial Establishments**

8.00-12.00

15.00-18.00



## **Public Holidays**

Anniversary of the accession

of H.H. the Emir-22nd February.

Eid al-Fitr-Four days

Eid al-Adha-Four days

Independence Day-3rd September

New Year's Day-1st of Muharram of every Hegira year

## **Places of Interest**

**Qatar National Museum and Aquarium:** Itself an old palace, displaying the country's heritage, customs, and traditions and the underwater world of the Gulf.

**Qatar National Development Exhibition:** Projects-under construction and planned exhibited in a restored traditional residence.

**The Souks:** No middle eastern city is complete without a bazaar, and Doha is no exception. Here small stalls and shops are packed together in narrow passages and streets where you can buy almost anything from oriental handicrafts to the most modern electronic equipment.

**Doha Fort (Al Kout):** An old fort in downtown Doha where visitors are offered the unique opportunity to buy genuine handwoven bedouin handicrafts.

**The Windtower House:** The only remaining example of its type in Qatar, this house has a windtower (Badgir) open on its four sides and capable of providing both ventilation and cooling to the internal room within the house during the long hot summer season.

**Khalifa Stadium (7 km off Salwa Road):** One of the most modern stadiums in the region, able to accommodate 45,000 people.

**Rayyan Race Course:** Much attention is paid to breeding Arabian horses and camels. Race meetings take place on Fridays and special occasions.

**Khor al-Oudeid:** Here in the most south-westerly point of the country is the area of Qatar's most impressive sand dunes which rise around a bay to some 40 metres in height. The best time to visit is at sunrise or sunset when the sun casts dramatic shadows across this amazing landscape. This is also an area to observe wildlife and migratory birds.

**The Oryx Farm:** The state takes much interest in the breeding and protection of the Arabian oryx (al-Wedaihi). The oryx farms in al-Shahaniyah and al-Zubara comprise one of the largest of this rare herd in the world.

**Al-Jassassiyah:** A chain of low rocky hills overlooking the blue waters of the Gulf. A good place for a picnic, where one can look at the hundreds of prehistoric rock carvings and enjoy a swim at neighbouring Fuwairat.

**The Zoo (Salwa Road):** Besides the vast collection of animals, the zoo comprises an information office, child care rooms and a cafeteria.

## **Traditional Crafts**

### **Weaving**

Weaving is one of the oldest traditional crafts in the Gulf region. The Bedu people are distinguished as weavers of a special kind of textile from the exclusive use of the wool of their flocks. The wool is spun into yarn by the Bedu woman. Then, with the help of some very primitive tools she weaves the yarn into those shapes and lengths required for the practical usages of the desert.

### **Jewellery**

Work in precious metals is a very old Qatari tradition. Gold, silver and various kinds of precious stones are still used extensively. The Qatari goldsmith specializes mainly in ornaments worn by women, but he often, as well, works in the encrustation of swords and daggers. Most of the decorations used are inspired by Islamic patterns, but often incorporating local traditional designs.

## **Traditional Dress**

The Qatari dress is centuries old. It was designed to fit the climatic conditions and to comply with Islamic rules that have firm roots in the Qatari traditions.

## **Women's Dress**

**Al-Bukhnouq:** The most popular Qatari dresses. It is worn by young girls as headcover reaching the waist at the front and to the feet at the back. The material used is usually transparent silk embroidered in gold (Zari).

**Al-Bushiyyeh (al-Ghushwah):** A cover considered as part of the veil, sewn usually in semi-transparent black cotton or silk.

**Thobe Al-Nashl:** A traditional dress in transparent silk usually of bright colours especially purple, and embroidered in gold.

**Ad-Darra'a:** A woman's dress in dark blue silk embroidered in gold and silver and usually worn under the Thobe al-Nashl.

Many among Qatari women wear the **Battulah**, a traditional cover for the face embroidered with minute arabesques at the border.

## **Men's Wear**

Men's clothes are characterised by simplicity, consisting of a long thobe or dishdasha, usually white, and underneath a pair of long white trousers. The headcover consists of a white square cloth folded diagonally (Ghutrah) and a black double rope (Uqal) to fix the Ghutrah in its place. Men's wear is usually devoid of any embroidery.

The white colour favoured by Islam helps also to reflect the hot sun rays during the long summer season. In winter, wool thobes of dark colour are worn by most Qataris.

Both men and women wear cloaks as part of the required dress. Women's *cloaks* are called *Abaya* and men's cloaks *Bisht*. The *Abaya* is usually in black silk while the

*Bisht* is woven from camel hair coloured in black, brown, white or beige. The *Abaya* is worn by women almost all the time while men put on their *Bshut* (plural of *Bisht*) on official visits or special occasions only. Both types of cloaks have embroidery on the border. This fine work which requires a lot of skill and patience is done in six stages.

**APPENDIX A4****Text 4 about Doha**

*Destination Qatar*, published by Public Relations Department, Qatar General Petroleum Corporation (1990).

**General Information****Geography**

The State of Qatar is situated half-way along the western coast of the Arabian Gulf. It consists of a Peninsula projecting northwards approximately 160 kms. into the Gulf. At its widest point, the Peninsula measures about 80 kms. across from coast to coast. The total area of the country is 11,437 square kms. The capital is Doha. Local time in Qatar is GMT + 3 Hours.

**Climate**

The climate is characterised by a mild winter and a hot summer with high levels of humidity. The weather is generally pleasant during the period from October to May. Occasionally, during winter time, heavy rainfall and thunderstorms may occur.

**Population**

The present population of Qatar is estimated at approximately 372.000. The majority of the population is centered in and around Doha.

**Language**

The official language in Qatar is Arabic. English is also widely understood and spoken in the country.

**Religion**

Islam is the religion of Qatar, and the Holy Koran is the Moslem Holy Book.

**The profession of faith**

This is the belief that there is only one God and Mohammed is His prophet.

**Prayer**

Moslems must cleans and pray five times a day, before dawn, at midday, in the latter part of the afternoon, at sunset and in the evening. The worshipers face towards Mecca.

**The giving of alms (zakat) to the needy.**

Moslems must give 2.5% of their property in charity to the poor annually.

**The pilgrimage to Mecca**

Moslems who are of responsible age, in fairly good health and financially capable must make the pilgrimage Hajj) to Mecca once in life time.

**The GOVERNMENT**

The Government is headed by H.H. Sheik Khalifa bin Hamad Al-Thani, the Emir of the State of Qatar, who assumed full powers as Head of State on 22nd February, 1972. H.H. Sheik Hamad bin Khalifa Al-Thani is the Heir Apparent, Minister of Defence, and Commander-in-Chief of the Armed forces.

The advisory Council, composing notable senior members of Qatari society, was convened for the first time on 15th May, 1972. The Council reviews and advises on proposals related to State affairs and legislation.

**Currency and Banking**

The currency in Qatar is the Qatari Riyal (QR.) which has full international monetary fund backing. At present there are no restrictions on money transfers into or out of Qatar and it is normally possible to effect remittances in any currency.

Bank notes are in circulation in denominations of 500 riyals, 100 riyals, 50 riyals, 10 riyals, 5 riyals and one riyal (one riyal = 100 dirhams). There are coins of 50

dirhams, 25 dirhams, 10 dirhams, 5 dirhams and one dirham. (US\$ = QR 3.65 approximately)

## **OTHER PLACES OF INTEREST**

The following are places of interest that you may wish to visit during your stay in Qatar

### **Qatar National Museum**

Qatar National Museum for which the Department of Tourism and Antiquities is responsible, is unique in the region and one of the finest projects of its kind in the Arab world.

The old palace which forms the nucleus of the museum complex, is a fine example of the style of architecture and the way of life of the Qatari people in the pre-oil era. The various rooms contain displays of clothing and utensils used in daily life.

The new building houses a detailed presentation of the country's history and development through sections which include archaeological finds, a bedouin tent, a natural history section and an illustrated explanation of the oil industry in Qatar.

The lagoon houses a new open tank, which will enable Visitor to look at big fish (i.e. sharks and sting rays) through a tower area and a walkway built in the lagoon. Also in the lagoon, you can see a traditional dhow of the type used for pearl-diving and trade.

The aquarium, popular with Visitor and residents alike, contains many types of fish and marine life found in the waters around Qatar. This section also tells the story of Qatar's links with the sea over the ages and there are some beautiful pearls on display.

### **Doha Fort & Windtower House**

Two ancient architectural structures which still exist in Qatar are the windtower and Doha Fort. The windtower is open on its four sides which provides both ventilation and a cooling effect to the rooms inside the house throughout the summer. Doha Fort, an old building in downtown Doha, offers the visitor the chance to buy genuine handwoven bedouin handicrafts.

### **Parks**

There are several parks in Doha, such as Al-Muntazah Park and the Airport Garden, with lawn, shaded rest areas, fountains, restaurants, and children's playgrounds. Also the area along the Corniche has been nicely landscaped with lawns and palm trees, and is popular for jogging, walking and small family outings.

### **The Zoo**

Situated just outside Doha, the Zoo houses a wide variety of animals and birds from various parts of the world. It also comprises an information office, child care rooms and a restaurant.

### **Al-Wakrah**

Al-Wakrah is a trading and fishing town halfway between Doha and Umm Said.

Wakrah museum is situated near the old harbour in a traditional house which has been restored. It houses many interesting artifacts from a bygone era and is well worth a visit.

### **Al-Khor**

Al-Khor is an old Qatari town in the north, famous for its traditional harbour. Look out for the 2 watchtowers at the end of the Corniche.

Al-Khor museum is situated in the Old Customs House just off the picturesque harbour, where you can watch the fishermen drying their catches in the sun.



Al-khor garden are located a few kilometers past the turnoff for the town of Khor on the North Road. It is well sign-posed. There are green lawns, a pond, children's play area, restaurants and bar-becue facilities. Families are encouraged to picnic but are requested to throw their litter in the many bins provided.

### **Zubarah**

Zubarah fort is located in the North (turn left at the police post on the North Road). Zubarah is also the site of a previous town of which still some of the foundations are still visible.

### **Khor-al-Udeid**

Khor-al Udeid ('The Inland Sea'): Here in the most south-easterly part of the country are Qatar's most impressive sand dunes which rise around a bay to some 40 metres in height. At sunrise or sunset the sun casts dramatic shadows across the amazing land-scrape. For a visit to Khor-Al-Udeid, a 4-wheel drive car is necessary. This is also a good area to observe wild life and migratory birds.

**APPENDIX A5****Text 5 about Doha**

*This is QATAR & What's On*, published by Yousif K. Al-Darwish (1994).

**QATAR NOTEBOOK****Information for the Visitor**

Qatar is one of the smaller Arab Gulf States in terms of geographical area and population. However, the role played by Qatar in promoting greater understanding of the Arab World in the West, coupled with example it has set in drawing up and implementing a comprehensive yet balanced domestic development plan, have, in recent years, enhanced the political stature and image of the young state.

**QATAR**

The peninsula of Qatar is a small State, jutting northwards into the Gulf at a length of about 160 kms. Its maximum width reaches 85 kms and covers an area of 11'437, including many islands. Its population is nearly 500,000 of which the majority live in and around Doha, administrative centre and capital.

Qatar, with territory on both the country's East and West coast, enjoys a refreshing range of a variety of landscapes, and some of the most beautiful picnic areas. The desert is one of the most popular areas in the country.

Qatar values its traditions and has taken care to preserve many elements of its history. Both government and its people are firmly attached to the present with a sharp eye upon planning for the future. In less than 40 years this small nation has grown, from dependence upon a dwindling pearling and trading economy, to become an oil-rich country which was then furthered by the finds of natural gas.

## **GOVERNMENT**

The State of Qatar proclaimed its independence, from the 1916 Anglo-Qatari treaty, and thus from the British domination over the Gulf countries and Qatar, on September 03, 1971. The Emir Sheik Khalifa bin Hamad Al-Thani took up the reigns of power on February 22, 1972 with the support of the people, and has since led the country's development. In May 1977 H.H. The Emir decreed the appointment of H.H. Sheik Hamad bin Khalifa Al-Thani as Heir apparent, Minister of Defence and Commander in Chief of the armed forces.

## **CLIMATE**

Qatar has a 'moderate desert' climate, i.e. one in which the seasonal and day temperature extremes of inland desert regions are moderated by the Gulf's sea breezes. The fact that Qatar is so flat in profile results in low levels of precipitation (5 to 7 cm per year) and moderate humidity compared to some of the other Gulf countries. When it does rain, generally around December- January, rain showers can be very heavy and are sometimes accompanied by hail. In winter the weather tends to be sunny and quite pleasant in the day, with noticeably cooler nights. The average January temperature is 7 C. This contrast sharply with the almost unbearable heat of the mid-summer when the nights are only just cool enough, at around 22 C. to bring much relief from the searing daytime heat which can go as high as 52C. Even at this time, however, northerly winds tend to moderate the air temperature and in the process lower humidity levels. However, air-conditioning is a very common thing and all buildings, offices, stores and cars are equipped with this. The sea temperature in winter is usually around 20/22 C. and it can get as low as 15 C in coastal shallows, thus ideal for watersports all year around.

## **HERITAGE**

DOHA has expanded into a charming modern city full of palaces, mosques, fountains and souqs, where the old and contemporary architecture blend in perfect harmony. The Grand Mosque, with its multiple domes and majestic chandeliers and the new Abu Bakr Al-Siddiq and Umar Ibn Al-Khattab mosques, built in traditional Islam style are worth a visit. The Qatar National Library houses a rich collection of books, rare volumes and manuscripts. The National Museum, located in an Old Palace which

forms the nucleus of the museum complex, is a fine example of architecture and the way of the life of the Qatari people in the pre-oil era. The various rooms contain displays of clothing and utensils used in daily life. The new building houses a detailed presentation of the country's history and development through sections which include archaeological finds, a bedouin tent, a natural history section and an illustrated explanation of the oil industry in Qatar. The aquarium and lagoon contain many types of fish and marine life found in the waters around Qatar. Needless to say worth a visit. Doha has a beautiful Corniche which stretches along the edge of the bay. There are several Parks, Ideal for family ventures. Doha Zoo offers visitors the opportunity to see a wide variety of animals and birds from all over the world. The Arabian horse stables, at the Rayyan Racetrack, are of interest as there are many purebred and halfbreeds stabled there. And of course, during the season, a visit to the tracks are fun. Two ancient architectural structures which still exist in Qatar are the windtower (badgir) open on its four sides which provides both ventilation and a cooling effect to the rooms inside the house throughout the summer. Doha Fort, an old fort in downtown Doha, offers the chance to buy genuine hand-woven Bedouin handicrafts.

Some other places of interest are **Wakra**; situated halfway between Doha and Umm Said, a trading and fishing town. The museum, displaying many artifacts from the past and well worth a visit, is housed in a restored, traditional, local house and can be found near the old harbour. **Al Khor**, in the north of Qatar, has preserved many features of local architecture. Famous for its harbour and the two ancient watchtowers at the end of the attractive new Corniche. Also famed for the gardens, (found a few kilometres past the turnoff for the town of Al Khor on the North Road) it is an ideal venue for restaurants. Barbecue facilities are available. The town of **Zubara** has long since been deserted but visible foundations indicate a little of the pre-oil. Zubara Fort is a fine example of the rich cultural heritage of Qatar's yesteryears (turn left at the Police Post on the North Road). **Khor-Al-Udeed-The inland Sea** - is in the most South Easterly area of Qatar. The bay of water is surrounded by sand dunes which rise as high as 40 meters. Sand dunes indeed are an attraction in themselves. Qatar has some of the most picturesque sand desert and dune wilderness, running inland in great billows of sand from the West Coast. There are areas of pure dunes, like the challenging sands near **Umm Said** which are so popular. The sand is fine, fading from

a pale cream color near the coast to deep orangy red more inland. The dunes are short and steep, a challenge to adventurous desert drivers and offer the ultimate excitement to dune drivers. The thrill of driving through virgin desert and golden sands is an experience not to miss. Novices to the sport are advised always to travel in convoys as it is easy to get stuck in the soft sand and there are no roadside telephones to ring for aid. Even experts can easily become stuck and often the only way out is a tow from another vehicle. Camping in the desert or dunes has become popular pastimes for residents and tourists, following the footsteps of the Bedouin of long ago. As an offshoot of these desert safaris, a new sport was born, sand skiing. A lot of fun can be had by skiing and surfing down the dunes, using a 4-wheel drive to ferry the skiers back to the summit. Western-style sports and leisure activities have become very popular. This is not due only to the large influx of expatriates, but also to the great interest shown by the local population. The major hotels, are all equipped with extensive recreational club facilities and private beaches. The climate is ideal for outdoor sports such as windsurfing, waterskiing, sailing, jet-skiing to name but a few. Dhow, the traditional fishing boats, are for hire by the half day, day or evening. Barbecues on the beach are a favourite alternative to a party indoors, and fishing trips in search of delicious Hammour and red snapper or even some fair-sized fish are an exciting way to spend a day. One activity not offered by the hotels, but none the less is horse riding. The Qatar Equestrian Club branched out in this field some years ago and it has become a very popular activity with both experienced riders and novices, particularly children. Trained instructors are on hand to give lessons. Common to nearly all clubs, at hotels and others, is tennis and squash, the perfect social games from all ages. Professional coaching is available and there are many tournaments and competitions for all levels of ability, of which the A.T.P. Qatar Open Tennis Tournament is the most famous. Also, the Qatar International Squash Championship is becoming world renowned. Not all facilities are based in the hotels, however. There are many clubs for different activities such as bowling, billiards, diving, golf, martial arts, massage, and gymnastics.

## **RELIGION**

The official religion is Islam and most Qataris are Sunni Moslems. The State lives by the laws of the Holy Quran and instills religious principles into the people. Moslems pray five times a day and fast from dawn to dusk during the holy month of Ramadan when non-moslems are also expected to refrain from eating, drinking and smoking in public, Moslems are required to donate one-fortieth of their property to the poor, Zakat, and to endeavour to make the pilgrimage 'Haj', to the holy city of Mecca, at least once during their lifetime if their means permit then to do so.

## **EXPATRIATE SCHOOLS**

In addition to the local Arabic Schools, Qatar offers several English Speaking Schools styled on the British National Curriculum. Schools specialising in American, Indian Egyptian, French, Japanese, Filipino, and Pakistan Syllabus can also be found.

## **SHOPPING**

Qatar has several department stores and a plethora of souqs where everything (except banned substances or foodstuffs) can be bought.

## **PROHIBITED IMPORTS**

Qatar Customs will not allow the following items into the country:

- Weapons and ammunition
- Fireworks
- Obscene pictures or magazines
- Narcotics and dangerous drugs
- Counterfeit coins and/or banknotes
- Alcohol
- Pork products

## **PETS**

Expatriates are allowed to bring their pets to Qatar. A valid health certificate issued by a veterinarian registered with the Public Health Authorities in the country of departure must be produced for pets imported into Qatar. Although there is no known rabies in

the country, all imported animals must be immunised against this disease. The Government-run Veterinary Centres are augmented by private clinics in and around the capital. There is one private veterinary clinic which offers boarding facilities for pets.

### **DRESS RESTRICTIONS**

Qatar is an Islamic State and as a courtesy to our hosts, expatriates should wear modest clothing. Women in particular are advised not to shop in vest-top or shorts although this is perfectly acceptable for the poolside or club.

### **HOLIDAYS**

Friday is the Moslem day of rest and all offices and most large shops are closed. The major holidays observed in Qatar are the Eid al-fitr and Eid al-Adha which both last about three days. The Eid al Fitr follows the end of the fasting month of Ramadan which comes forward about ten days each year and Id al-Adha occurs about ten weeks later. It is not possible to give exact dates as these are dependent on the lunar calendar.

Independence Day, 3rd September is also a fixed national one day holiday.

### **ENTRY POINTS & REGULATIONS**

There are three points of entry to Qatar: by air through Doha International Airport; and by sea through the ports of Doha and Umm Said. Entry by land is made through the two main border points at Abu Samra, frontier point with Saudi Arabia, and Soda Nathil on the joint border with the United Arab Emirates.

To enter the country it is necessary to have a valid passport and an entry visa issued either by the Ministry of Interior in Doha or by a Qatari resident diplomatic mission abroad. Persons holding employment contracts to work in Qatar are granted Residence permits. 7-day visa are granted to businessmen provided they are sponsored by a local company, and visitor visas for up to three months are obtained upon application by a sponsor residing in Qatar.

The Qatar Chamber of Commerce (Tel: 425131), the embassies and banks will all provide useful information on commercial and business affairs.

## **HOURS OF BUSINESS**

Government offices are open from 06.00 to 13.00 daily from Saturday to Thursday. Banks are open from 07.30 to 11.30. Commercial offices normally open 07.30 to 12.30 and between 14.30 and 15.30 to 18.00. Information business discussions often extend into the evening.

## **CURRENCY/MEASURES**

The unit of currency is the Qatar Riyals which is divided into 100 Dirhams. Currency is issued by the Qatar Monetary Agency. Denominations are issued as follows:

Qatar riyals: 1, 5, 10, 50, 100 and 500

Dirhams: 1, 5, 10, 25 and 50. The metric system is in general use in Qatar.

The electricity supply is 240 volts AC.50 Hz Plugs are usually 13 Amp. although 5 and 15 Amp. sockets are found in older buildings. For airconditioners, 15 and 20 Amp. plugs are used in older buildings while flex outlets are required in newer constructions.

## **MEDICAL FACILITIES**

Free medical and dental treatment is available for everyone, resident or visitor. Treatment by general practitioners is provided at the clinics mentioned below and hospital treatment is available at Hamad Medical corporation (Tel: 446446). Maternity and gynaecological cases are seen at the Women's Hospital (Tel: 466466). There are also a number of doctors and dentists in private practice in Doha. The address and telephone numbers of the duty pharmacy, which is open all night, are published each week in the Gulf Times.



## APPENDIX A6

### Text 6 about Doha

*Doha: Portfolio*, Lorenzo Martinengo (ed.). Zug, Switzerland: Tourist Research and Planning T.R.P. LTD (1978).

#### Introduction

Take a wide gently curving bay, clear blue seas and a multimillion dollar development programme and you have the ingredients for modern Doha, the capital of Qatar. Once a small but important fishing and trading town along the southern shores of the Gulf, today it is the showpiece city of an important oil state. The recently opened Qatar National Museum with its traditional Islamic architecture and lagoon, which provides sanctuary for the traditional fishing dhow, is a focal point along the dual carriage-way seafront Corniche. Modern styles of architecture are evident in the multi-storey government ministry buildings, many of which also stand along the waterfront.

Doha has a population of over 130,000 people, and is fast expanding. Accounting for more than half the country's population, the city has doubled in only five years, and efforts to meet current and predicted demand creates an impression of a gigantic building site. The city already provides all the services to be expected of any capital. Modern luxury hotels, hospitals and schools. A new souk and shopping facilities for local residents and international travellers alike. In the suburbs is Khalifa Town, comprising free or lowcost housing which is both a model of the country's welfare services and an example of how the housing problem is being tackled with a sense of urgency and determination. Only a few minutes from the city centre is Doha International Airport, providing easy communications with the other capitals of the world and well served by the major airlines.

There are also air conditioned cinemas, a National theatre and a 40,000-seat turfed stadium. In addition to the existing parks, a zoological and botanical garden is planned. Plans for future expansion are ambitious and include the West Bay project which will almost provide a completely new town on reclaimed land. It is to include

the University of the Lower Gulf and a giant pyramid-shaped hotel and conference complex. When completed they must surely provide one of the most impressive cities on the gulf.

**APPENDIX A7****Text 7 about Doha**

*Qatar Today 95: Tourist & Commercial Guide.* Doha: Al-Fares Advertising Co. (1995).

**QATAR IN BRIEF****Head of State**

His highness Sheik Khalifa bin Hamad Al-Thani, Emir of the state of Qatar, acceded on 22nd February 1972. In 1977, the Emir appointed his eldest son Sheikh Hamad bin Khalifa Al-Thani as Heir Apparent, Minister of Defence and commander-in-chief of armed forces.

**Flag**

The flag of the State of Qatar is maroon and white with a nine point zigzag interlock.

**Language**

Arabic is the official language but English is widely spoken and understood.

**Religion**

Islam is the official religion of the state and the Islamic law is the principal source and the foundation of the legal system.

**Climate**

Qatar has a desert climate of hot summer and relatively warm winter. In the summer, the weather temperature ranges between 25 and 46 degrees centigrade. Rainfall in the winter is minimal and on average does not exceed 75.2 mm per year.

**Currency**

The Qatari riyal is the unit of currency and is divided into 100 dirhams.

Qatari Riyals:

1,5,50,100 & 500

Dirhams: 10, 25 & 50

U.S\$ 1+ QR 3.65

**Electricity**

The electricity supply is 240/215 volts AC, 50 Hz.

**Geography**

Qatar is situated halfway along the western coast of the Arabian Gulf. The country is a peninsula covering an area of 11,437 square km, jutting northwards into the sea. Its highest altitude is 40 meters above sea level.

**Entry Regulations**

All visitors to Qatar should possess a valid passport. Visa requirements should be checked well in advance. The Qatar government allows four types of visa.

1. 14 days transit visa.

2. A 7 day visa granted to visitors for business purposes.

3. A visitor for up to 3 months obtained only upon application by a sponsor residing in Qatar.

4. A residence visa renewable from 1 to 3 years granted to persons holding employment contracts to work in Qatar.

**MAIN TOWNS**

**DOHA** : Capital of the country and the seat of the Government, situated in the middle of the eastern coast of Qatar, and in it are Ministries and Government Departments and Commercial corporations.

**Umm Said:** Situated on the coast, in the south-eastern side of the country; its establishment was connected with the emergence of oil in the State of Qatar where oil export terminal was established, to export the petroleum from onshore fields in Dukhan; and is about 36 kilometers from Doha.

**Al-Khor:** One of the old town, famous of its fold sea port where fishing dhows and small boats anchor and of its tourists shores; the town is about 57 km from Doha.

**Al-Shamal:** Situated on the north coast, (far north of the country) is a new town built to be a center for a number of coastal village in the area, and is about 107 kilometres from Doha.

**Wakra:** Situated halfway between Doha and Umm Said; residents are engaged in trading and fishing. Wakra town has a small harbour, and monumental old houses. The town is about 15 kilometers from Doha.

**Dukhan:** Situated on the western coast of the State of Qatar. The town attained great attention since the discovery of oil in the ashore wells around it, and have become a centre of the onshore operation, Qatar General Petroleum Corporation. Dukhan is about 84 kilometers from Doha.

**Umm-Bab:** Located south of Dukhan town, oil and gas pipeline accumulator which carry the crude oil and gas to Umm Said for export is also found there. Umm Bab is about 85 kilometers from Doha.

**Umm Slal Mohammed:** Fall on the main road between Doha and Al-Khor, residents are engaged in trading business. The town is about 21 kilometers from Doha.

**Umm Slal Ali:** Situated nearly half way between Doha and Khor, this town almost form one town with Umm Slal Mohammed, and that due to the fast architectural spread in both town and as the distance between them does not exceed few kilometers

## **Places of Interest**

### **Qatar National Museum**

Is unique in the region and one of the finest projects of its kind in the Arab world. The museum was established on the wishes of H.H. the Emir Sheik Khalifa bin Hamad Al-Thani, who made the official opening in 1975.

#### **WHAT TO SEE?**

The old palace, which forms the nucleus of the museum complex, is a fine example of the style of architecture and the way of life of Qatari people in the preoil era. The various rooms contain displays of clothing and utensils in daily life. A detailed presentation of the country's history and development through sections which include archaeological finds, a Bedouin tent, a natural history section and illustrated explanation of oil industry in Qatar.

The lagoon was actually a natural extension of the sea, where from water is pumped through pipes below the corniche. Floating there are natural size models of dhows and the aquarium, popular with visitors and residents alike, contains many types of fish and marine life found in waters around Qatar. This section also tells the story of Qatar's links with the sea over the ages.

### **BARAZAN TOWER**

This tower is situated in Umm Salal Mohammed to the west of Al-Shamal Road, and at a distance of 20 kilometers from Doha town. There is a unique kind of watch towers and residence in the Gulf area, as it takes rectangular shape and is formed of three levels and has staircase from outside for reaching the upper level and, of which is decorated with dentated terraces; the tower is built of stones, mud and gypsum.

### **DOHA ETHNOGRAPHIC MUSEUM**

(The Windtower House)

This is the only wind tower house of its kind remaining in Doha. It was built in 1935. It is of the badgir type: a square structure with opening on all four sides to ensure a continuous airflow which, in turn, provides the inner rooms of the house with both ventilation and cooling during the summer season.

**AL- KOUT FORT**

One of the Doha's fortresses situated in the centre of the city. It was built in 1880.

**AL-WAJJBAH FORT**

Al-Wajbah fort is considered the oldest fort in Qatar, built during the 19th century. The fort witnessed a famous battle in which the people of Qatar under the leadership of Sheik Qassim bin Mohammed Al-Thani, the ruler of Qatar, won victory over the Ottoman forces in 1310 A.H. (1893 A.D.)

**Khor Museum**

This museum is situated in the old customs house just off the picturesque habrou, where you can watch the fishermen drying their catches in the sun.

**AI-ZUBARAH FORT**

lies 105 km away from Doha on the north western part of Qatar. It was built during the time of Sheik Abdullah bin Qassim Al-Thani by a group of local builder's. And is known for its high thick walls that end in battlements.

**WAKRAH MUSUM**

Is a traditional house which has been restored. It too close to the old harbour. It houses many interesting artifacts from a bygone era.

**POPULAR CRAFTS****SADW CRAFT:**

Sadw craft is one of the popular crafts that 'Badw' women are famous for. After dying the sadw cloth, which is spun from lambs wool and camels hair, with bright and beautiful colors, derived from the nature around the manufacturer, it is usually woven by simple spindles and looms. The woven cloth is used for manufacturing carpets, rugs, tents and abas (bishoot).

This craft was about to be effaced had it not been for the great efforts of the Gulf countries to support this craft by encouraging the manufacturers and saving, for them

its complete needs to ensure its duration, in order to be a good witness for the creative talents of the desert human being.

### **BOATS CALKING 'KOLAFI':**

Boats calking is one of the oldest crafts inherited from fathers and grandfathers. It had begun as early as the beginning of inhabiting the Arabian Gulf shores. The chief materials used in this craft are usually wood and ropes.

At the beginning, palm leaves and ropes were the chief materials of this craft but, later, wood and ropes were used and afterwards red wood and teak wood, (one of the best kinds of wood).

The main centers for boats calking are al Al Rewis, Al Wakrah, Al Khour and Doha where the most of sea-people are centering.

### **POPULAR GARMENT 'MEBOROIDERY':**

This craft is an old craft that Qatar was famous for. It depends, usually, on embroidering garments with golden and silvery threads.

The woman's dress is always embroidered by covering the front and lower parts with these threads in a vertical way, in addition to the wide sleeves, the back and some other parts of the dress. The front part of the Aba (Bisht), the man's dress, is also embroidered with the same threads.

Some of the most famous women's dresses in Qatar are: El Nashel, El Tawoose and El Darra'ah dresses, that have bright colors and are decorated with attractive artistic ornaments.

### **GOLD FORMATION:**

This was well known in all the gulf countries. It was transferred, like many other crafts, from India to all the Gulf countries including Qatar.



The Qatari goldsmith has proved great skill in forming and decorating the gold works with designs derived from the nature around him with which he was deeply effected. He used the Turkish golden and silvery 'Lira', in addition to precious jewels in this craft.

Some of the most famous women's jewelry are: Al Merte'isha, Al Kaff, Al Khiwass and Al Shamilat which are made of gold and, silver and sometimes precious stones are added.

**APPENDIX A8****Text 8 about Doha**

*Al-Mourshed: A Tourist & Commercial Guide in Qatar.* Doha: Dallah Advertising Agency (1992), an article from a magazine.

**QATAR**

The State of Qatar is a Muslim Arab Country and is an active member of the Co-operation Council for the Arab States of the Gulf, the Arab League and the United Nations.

**GEOGRAPHY**

Qatar is situated halfway along the western coast of the Arabian Gulf. The country is a peninsula covering an area of 11,437 square km. jutting north-wards into the sea. Its highest altitude is 40 metres above sea level.

The landscape of Qatar is generally flat and low lying except for some modest hills and higher ground to the northwest, such as Dukhan, the rocky outcrops in the north and some scattered sandstone hills in Umm Said and southeast of the Peninsula. Green areas have been increasing in the past few years due to agricultural activities and landscaping sponsored by the government.

**HEAD OF STATE**

His Highness Sheik Khalifa Bin Hamad Al-Thani, Emir of the State of Qatar, acceded on 22nd February 1972. In 1977, the Emir appointed his eldest son Sheik Hamad Bin Khalifa Al-Thani as Her Apparent, Minister of Defence and Commander-in Chief of the Armed Forces

**FLAG**

The flag of the State of Qatar is maroon and white with a nine point zigzag interlock.

## **THE PEOPLE**

Qatar being a part of the Arabian peninsula, its people are descendants of ancient Arab origins.

The present population of Qatar is about 427,333 inhabitants, the majority of whom live in the capital city of Doha. The highest population density of Doha and its suburbs stems from the fact that the city is the country's financial and commercial centre. Recent national planning has encouraged more people to settle in the surrounding cities and towns.

## **LANGUAGE**

Arabic is the official language but English is widely spoken and understood. French and Urdu are also spoken. The ability to speak a little Arabic and know the normal greetings is highly appreciated.

## **CLIMATE**

Qatar has a desert climate with a long hot summer and mild winter with little rain. Due to Qatar's land altitude, the average humidity especially in the inland is lower compared with neighbouring regions in the Arabian Gulf. In April, May, October and November, the weather is generally pleasant. The hottest time of the year is between June and September.

## **CURRENCY**

The Qatari Riyal is the unit of currency and is divided into 100 dirhams. Currency is issued by Qatar Monetary Agency. Denominations are issued as follows:

Qatar Riyals: 1, 5, 10, 50, 100 & 500

Dirhams: 1, 5, 10, 25 & 50.

(Us 1\$= 3.65)

## **WEIGHTS AND MEASURES**

The metric system is in general use in Qatar

**ELECTRICITY**

The electricity supply is 240/215 volts AC, 50 Hz.

**HOLIDAYS**

The major holidays observed in Qatar are as follows:

The Emir's Accession Day 22nd Feb.

Eid al-Fitr about 4 days

Eid al-Adha about 4 days

Independence Day 3rd September

Hijri New Year 1st. Muharram

**BUSINESS HOURS**

Government offices are open from 6 am to 1 pm (Saturday to Thursday), whilst commercial offices normally open from 7,30 am to 12,30 pm and then from 2 to 6 pm.

Banks are open from 7,30 to 11,30.

**DOHA TIME**

FMT- 3 hours

**MEDICAL FACILITIES**

Free medical and dental treatment is available to all residents and visitors, through the many Health Centres in Qatar. There also a number of doctors and dentists in private practice.

The telephone number and location of the duty pharmacy, which is open all night, is published in the local newspaper Gulf Times.

Hamad General Hospital	446446
Rumailah Hospital	325151
Women's Hospital	420555
Al Sadd Children's Clinic	429126
Veterinary Clinic	853083

## **TRANSPORTATION**

### **1. Buses:**

Doha's public bus service provides transportation to and from the neighbouring towns.

### **2. Taxis:**

They are easy to obtain and are distinguished by their orange and white color, in addition to yellow & black number plates, meters are used in all taxis and the rates vary according to the time of the day.

## **CAR HIRE**

Air conditioned cars are available for hire from local Car Rental firms at a daily rate of approximately QR. 100.00 for a medium size car and QR. 150.00 for a big car. Insurance is arranged by the Car Rental firm.

## **ENTRY REGULATIONS**

All visitors to Qatar should possess a valid passport. Visa requirements should be checked well in advance. The Qatar government allows four types of visas.

1. A 48 hour transit visa.
2. A 7 day visa granted to visitors for business purposes.
3. A visitor's visa for up to 3 months obtained only upon application by a sponsor residing in Qatar.
4. A residence visa renewable from 1 to 3 years granted to persons holding employment contracts to work in Qatar.

## **ENTRY POINTS**

1. By land through two main border points at Abu Samra, frontier point with Saudi Arabia, and Suda Nathil on the joint border with U.A.E.
2. By air through Doha International Airport.
3. By sea through the port of Doha and Umm Said.

## **CUSTOMS REGULATIONS**

Alcoholic beverages are prohibited. Up to 1lb. of tobacco is allowed. There is no limit to the amount of currency brought into or taken out.

## **HEALTH REGULATIONS**

Vaccination and inoculation certificates against smallpox and cholera are not compulsory.

### **Sightseeing Tours**

Recent excavations indicate that settlement in Qatar dates back to about 800 BC and a long-term plan for developing Qatar's archaeological sites is under study by the Tourism and Antiquities Department of the Ministry of Information. Many sites are well signposted.

**UMM SALAL MOHAMED** lies on the Doha-Khor highway and is distinguished by its old forts.

**UMM SALA ALI** is situated just beyond Umm Salal Mohamed and, like its neighbouring town, its economy depends on trade.

**KHOR AL-OUDEID:** Here in the most southeasterly part of the country is Qatar's most impressive sand dunes which rise around a bay to some 40 metres in height. The best time to visit is at sunrise or sunset when the sun casts dramatic shadows across the amazing landscape. This is also a good area to observe wildlife and migratory birds.

**AL KHOR** is an old Qatar town, famous for its traditional harbour. Look out for the 2 watchtowers at the end of the attractive new Corniche.

**AL WAKRAH** is a trading and fishing town halfway between Doha and Umm Said. It is well known for its traditional architecture.

Two ancient architectural structures which still exist in Qatar are the wind tower and Doha Fort. The wind tower house has a wind tower (badgir) open on its four sides which provides both ventilation and a cooling effect to the rooms inside the house throughout the summer

**Doha Fort**, an old fort in downtown Doha, offers the visitor the chance to buy genuine handwoven bedouin handicrafts.

The Department of Tourism and Antiquities was created in 1974 as the need arose to assert and strengthen the Qatari character of society with its Arab-Islamic traditions alongside the introduction of modern technology and civilisation.

Qatar National Museum, for which the Department is responsible, is unique in the region and one of the finest project of its kind in the Arab world. The museum was established on the wishes of H.H. the Emir, Sheik Khalifa Bin Hamad Al-Thani, who made the official opening in 1975.

It has recently undergone extensive renovations and visitors to Qatar and residents alike should go along and admire this notable landmark on the Corniche.

## **WHAT TO SEE**

The old palace, which forms the nucleus of the museum complex, is a fine example of the style of architecture and the way of life of the Qatari people in the pre-oil era. The various rooms contain displays of clothing and utensils used in daily life.

The new building houses a detailed presentation of the country's history and development through sections which include archaeological finds, a bedouin tent, a natural history section and an illustrated explanation of the oil industry in Qatar.

The lagoon, which has recently been drained, now houses a new open tank project, which will enable visitors to look big fish (i.e. sharks and sting rays) through a tower area and a walkway built in the lagoon. And you can see a traditional dhow of the type used for pearl-diving and trade in the lagoon.

The aquarium, popular with visitors and residents alike, contains many types of fish and marine life found in the water around Qatar. This section also tell the story of Qatar's links with the sea over the ages and there are some beautiful pearls on display.

### **OPENING HOURS**

9 am to 12 noon (except Friday and Saturday).

4 pm to 6 pm (except Saturday).

Tuesday afternoon for families only.

### **AL KHOUR GARDENS**

You will find Al Khor Gardens 2 km past the turnoff for the town of Khor on the North Road. It is well signposted. There are green lawns, a pond, children's play area, restaurants and barbecue facilities. Families are encouraged to picnic but are requested to throw their litter in the many bins provided.

### **KHOR MUSEUM**

This museum is situated in the Old Custom House just off the picturesque harbour, where you can watch the fishermen drying their catches in the sun.

### **WAKRA MUSEUM**

Wakra Museum is a traditional house which has been restored. It opened recently and it is to be found near the old harbour. It houses many interesting artifacts from a bygone era and is well worth a visit.

Opening hours: Same as Qatar National Museum.

### **ZUBARAH FORT**

If you turn off the North Road just past the Police Post you will eventually come to Zubarah and the old fort. As this fort is now a museum, it would be worthwhile to go along and see it.

### **AIRPORT GARDEN**

This garden was officially opened in February 1985. It includes lawns, shaded rest areas, fountains, a restaurant, and a children's playground.



**APPENDIX A9****Text 9 about Doha**

**Untitled**, a text published by Gulf Air Agency (1993).

**GEOGRAPHY AND POPULATION****Location**

The State of Qatar is situated half-way along the west coast of the Arabian Gulf east of the Arabian peninsula, between latitudes (27 to 24, and 10 to 26 degrees north) and longitudes (45 and 40 to 51 degrees east.) The State of Qatar is a peninsula that extends northward covering an area of 11, 437 sq. km.

The territory of the State of Qatar includes a number of islands in the coastal waters of the peninsula. The most well known of these islands are the Hawar Archipelago, Halul, which is the main export terminal for the offshore oil fields, Shar'ouh, Al Bashiriya, and others.

**Topography**

The State of Qatar generally consists of flat rocky surfaces. However, it includes some hills and sand dunes which reach an altitude of 40 metres above sea level in the areas of Dukhan, and Jebel Fuwairat in the western and northern parts of the country.

The surface of Qatar is characterized by a number of geographical phenomena which are peculiar to the west coast of the Arabian Gulf. Such phenomena include coves and inlets together with depressions and surface rainwater-draining basins known as Al-Riyadh (the gardens) found mainly in the north and central parts of the State, the most important of which are Al-Majida, Al-Shahaniyah and Al-Sulaimi.

Because of their fertile land, natural and seasonal vegetation, the northern and central regions of the country are considered the most suitable areas for development and expansion of agricultural enterprises. These regions have attracted heavy investments

from both the public and private sectors in support of agricultural projects accomplishing a satisfactory degree of self-sufficiency in that field.

### **The Climate**

Qatar has a desert climate of hot summer and relatively warm winter. In the summer, the weather temperature range is between 25 and 46 degree centigrade. Rainfall in the winter is minimal and on average does not exceed 75.2 mm. per year.

### **The Population**

The people of Qatar are the descendants of ancient Arabian lines of kinship. This is particularly due to the geographical location and proximity to the Arabian Peninsula, on the one hand and to the close historical and cultural heritage which the State shares with the rest of the states in the Arabian Peninsula, on the other.

The Arab tribes, who migrated from the neighbouring areas, mainly Najd, al-Ihsa and Oman at various periods during the seventeenth and eighteenth centuries A.D. form the basis for the composition of the present population. The tribal migration continued into the early parts of the nineteenth century.

The present population of Qatar is estimated at 400,000 inhabitants, most of whom reside in Doha, the capital city. The rest of the population, however, lives in a number of towns and villages, including Dukhan, Umm Said, al-Wakrah, al-Khor, Medinat al-shamal and other modern residential centres.

### **Religion**

Islam is the official religion of the State and the Shari'a (Islamic Law) is the principal source of legislation in the country.

## **PLACES OF INTEREST**

### **Qatar National Museum**

It was built in 1912 as a palace for the ruler of Qatar. Sheik Hamad Bin Abdullah Al-Thani was the first Emir to use it. The Emir, Sheik Bin Khalifa Bin Hamad Al-Thani,

commissioned the restoration and development of the palace as a national museum in 1972, and it was officially opened in 1975.

The Museum complex consists of the following five sections: The old palace, the State Museum, the lagoon, the Aquarium and the gardens.

### **Al-Kout Fort**

One of Doha's old forts situated in the centre of the city. It was built in 1880 and restored in 1978 to function as a centre for displaying traditional handicrafts.

### **The Windtower House**

#### **(DOHA ETHNOGRAPHIC MUSEUM)**

This is the only windtower house of its kind remaining in Doha. It was built in 1935. It is of the badagir type: a square structure with openings on all four sides to ensure a continuous airflow which, in turn, provides the inner rooms of the house with both ventilation and cooling during the summer season.

### **Al-Jassasiya (Jabal Al-Jassasiya)**

Al-Jassasiya is composed of a number of rocky hills overlooking the north eastern coast of the country. These hills are famous for their numerous stone carvings and engravings, some of which date back to prehistoric times. Al-Jassasiya together with the fine beaches of the neighbouring Fuwairat are considered an attractive site for weekend recreation.

### **Murwab Fort**

Murwab fort is situated about 4 km from the coast and 15 km north of Dukhan town. It was built during the Abbasid period in the 3rd century A.H. (9th century A.D.) The fort was built on the foundations of an older fort, around which five groups of buildings are scattered, making a total of 250 houses and two mosques.

### **Al-Zubarah Fort**

Al-Zubarah fort lies 105 km away from Doha on the north western part of Qatar peninsula. It was built during the time of Sheik Abdullah Bin Qassim Al-Thani in 1938 by a group of local builders. The fort is square shaped with three round towers and one rectangular tower. the fort is known for its high thick walls which end in battlements.

### **Ar-Rakiyat Fort**

This fort lies about 110 km away from Doha. It was built during the late 19th and early 20th centuries. A rectangular construction of mud and stone with three rectangular comer towers and one round tower. This stone with three rectangular comer towers and one round tower. This type of building is an example of the military architectural style in the Gulf.

### **Al-Thughb Fort**

Al-Thughb fort was built during the late 19th and early 20th centuries. It represents a simplified example of military architecture in the Gulf region.

### **Al-Ghuwair Castle**

The ruins of Al-Ghuwair castle lie about 85 km from Doha. It was built during the early 19th century. The castle is rectangular in shape with crenellations and thick walls (130 cms wide) of stone and mud. Al-Ghuwair castle is a unique example of other castles in the Qatar peninsula.

### **Burzan Tower**

Burzan tower is situated in Umm Salal Mohammed area. It was built during the late 19th and early 20th centuries. Its unique watch towers have no equal in the Gulf region or the Arab world at large. It is a rectangular construction of three levels with an external staircase leading to the top level. Its thick high walls end in decorative battlements.

**Umm Salal Mohammed Fort**

This is a residential fort which combines civil and military functions. It has high thick walls with an impressive facade. The fort contains varied examples of architectural and decorative elements.

**Al-wajbah Fort**

Al-Wajbah fort is considered the oldest fort in Qatar, built during the 19th century. The fort witnessed a famous battle in which the people of Qatar under the leadership of Sheik Qassim Bin Mohammed Al-Thani, the ruler of Qatar, won victory over the Ottoman forces in 1310 A.H. (1893 A.D.).

## APPENDIX A10

## Text 10 about Doha

*The Gulf Handbook: A Guide for Business and Visitors.* Bath, England: Trade & Travel Publications Ltd. (1979) (a chapter from a book).

## DOHA

Within a few years, Doha has been transformed from a sleepy fishing village into a spacious, well-planned modern city which has nonetheless kept its links with the past. Something of the old village atmosphere remains, and a sense of continuity with Arab and Islamic culture has been preserved. The new Doha has a refined look. The architecture of its public buildings is of a high standard. The ministries along the Corniche have been designed as a collective whole. None is high enough to break the sweep of the eyes. Each attractively combines the modern with the traditional.

The new city is built around a series of ring roads which spread out in a half circle from the centre. They are wide double carriage ways with tree-lined central reservations which in turn are connected by a series of roads radiating out from the centre. Once this pattern has become familiar the city is easy to travel around. The heart of modern Doha is the pink and white Clock Tower and the vast new *Amiri Palace* alongside. Behind is the *Grand Mosque* whose tall slim minaret serves as a useful landmark. From here the wide boulevards lead to rows of enormous villas surrounded by purdah walls which the richer Qataris have built for themselves. The spaciousness of outer Doha contrast with the narrow streets of the old centre which are not so well maintained and have many potholes. Traffic congestion is a problem in central Doha.

The National Museum (Corniche Road East), the first of its kind in the Gulf when it opened in the spring of 1975, gives a record of the old way of life in Qatar as it was before the oil revolution. It has reconstructed scenes from traditional Bedouin life and a display of Bedouin ornaments and weapons.. The museum is in a building which

was the home of the Amir's father and grandfather, known as the Old Amiri Palace, or the *Salatah Palace*. It had fallen into very poor condition when the idea of a museum was conceived in 1972 and restoration work began. It overlooks the old harbour site, and the sea was a good deal nearer its walls before land reclamation pushed it back. An attempt has been made to 'bring back' the water by making a sort of pool-lagoon, the far side of which roughly simulates the old shoreline. On this lagoon replicas of the old pearling and trading dhows, built in the old way with the old tools by Qatari craftsmen, ride at anchor. Close to the museum is an aquarium where a variety of fish, including a shark, swim in water from the lagoon.

Near the Clock Tower is the recently-opened National Development Exhibition tracing Qatar's rapid economic expansion. It is housed in a building where the present Amir was brought up.

A "new Doha" is being constructed at the north end of the corniche in West Bay. Houses, shops, offices, a hotel and conference centre are being built in a circular area three kilometres in diameter. Over the next 25 years a quarter of the total growth of Doha should be located in the West Bay.

**Post Office** The main post office is opposite Government House. Hotels will sell stamps. Air mail letter to Europe take 307 days. surface mail should be avoided because of port delays. Mail delivery is generally quick and reliable.

**Telephone** Direct-dial calls can now be made to other Gulf countries and to Western Europe. Other international calls have to be booked but are not usually subject to much delay.

**Telex** The main hotels have telexes. Telex messages can also be sent from the *Cable and Wireless Building* in Musarib Street.

**Shops** *The Doha Centre* is the Gulf's first superstore. Built by Shaik Ghanim bin Ali Al-Thani, a member of the ruling family, it has become known as Shaik Ghanim's souq. It has a Western-style department store, selling most things except furniture and

furnishings, and a large supermarket of mostly American food products, including fresh meat flown in from the US West Coast. Inevitably prices are high.

**Souqs** Close to the Click Tower. The main souk mainly sells imported modern goods. The fish market has the traditional atmosphere of haggling and bargaining which has not changed for centuries. It is at its best in the early morning. The vegetable and fruit stores have an excellent range of produce. There is an area of small shops selling copper pots, brass bowls and other small antiques.

**Social clubs** Several companies (like Shell and QAFCO in Umm Said) have social clubs which admit guests accompanied by members. The *Doha Club* is the most exclusive in Qatar, its membership being reserved for top government employees. But guests signed in by members are admitted.

**Lesiure/sport** Facilities are limited. The largest sporting amenity is the city's new Khalifa stadium, which is mainly reserved for soccer matches. The *Doha Club* has the best sporting facilities (see above). Some companies have their own tennis courts. The *Rugby Club* plays on a sand pitch scattered with saw dust. The *Beach Club* at the Oasis Hotel has facilities for sailing and a squash court. The marina at the *Gulf Hotel* hires out small boats and dhows mainly for people wanting to fish. A special dhow for fishermen leaves the marina early every Friday morning. Local fishermen sometime take out groups for week-end fishing trips. Qatar has many fine beaches, giving ample opportunities for swimming. There is a race course and occasionally camel races are held privately.

**Bookshops** *The Family Bookshop*, Khabara Street, has the best selection of foreign newspapers, periodicals and books. *Arabian Library*, Abdullah Bin-Than Street (Tel:324416), also sells foreign newspapers and magazines. the Gulf Hotel has a bookshop.



## Outside Doha

The countryside outside the capital can be explored by using the country's four main roads, which are all fast and of a high standard. A round trip taking in all four roads can be done comfortably in one day.

The roads radiating from Doha are: the *Ruwais road* (to the north); the *Dukhan road* (to the west coast); the *Salwa road* (southwest to the Saudi Arabian border); and the *Umm Said road* (to the new industrial town on the southeast coast). All the roads connect at roundabouts to the outer 'C' ring road in Doha.

Beyond the roundabout at Madinat Khalifa, approximately two kilometres on the right, is the site of the new Gulf University, being built with precast concrete. Further along to the left are a series of small villages, the most notable being Umm Salal Mohammad, which has three large forts. The first, now a noble but decaying ruin, is sited away from the village on a by-road. The other two, standing close to each other and surrounded by newer houses, are still occupied. Adjacent to one of the forts is one of the largest date palm groves in Qatar.

Forty kilometres north of Doha on the main road is the turnoff (right) to the coastal town of Al Khor. Once a major centre of the pearl fishing industry, Al Khor is at present undergoing redevelopment. Many of the older buildings facing the dhow harbour have been demolished and are yet to be replaced. Desert roads, going northwards across the *sabka* (salt flats), lead to some popular beaches, about 10 kilometres along the coast. It is advisable to have more than one vehicle here because soft sand, especially after rainfall, can make parts of the *sabka* impassable.

Sixty-five kilometres up the Ruwais road from Doha is a turnoff (left) to Zubara, an important town in the 18th century. Now virtually all that remains is a fort used by the police. Much of the land in this area has sweet fertile soil, supporting bushy outcrops of foliage, and is a popular palace for falconry. One kilometre from the junction with the Ruwais road (on the left) is a Government Experimental Farm. A permit can be obtained from the Doha Municipality Officer to visit it.

Approximately 30 kilometres from Ruwais, a turning (right) leads to the small village of Fuwairat and the adjacent Djebel. This was one of the earliest settlements in Qatar, dating to the 18th century. It was the site of a battle between warring factions of Bahrain's ruling Khalifa family in the mid-19th century. Djebel Fuwairat, an adjacent large rock outcrop descending to an eroded coastline, is a popular weekend beach, with soft sand and remarkable coral and marine life.

The old town of Ruwais faces a large bay and a causeway leading to a dhow jetty. Dhows, sailing to and from Bahrain, use a deep water channel blasted out of the coral reef to reach the jetty.

About three kilometres from Doha, this road passes through Al-Rayyan, a wealthy residential satellite to Doha with many large villas and mansions, invariably surrounded by high enclosing walls. On the left of the road (20 kilometres from Doha), there is a small village dominated by a large fort, below which is a depression of the ground, known as the **Wajbah** depression. Here a battle was fought in 1893 between the local people, led by Shaik Jassim, and Turkish forces, headed by the Wali of Basra, Nafiz Pasha. This battle ended the Turkish domination of Qatar.

Beyond Wajbah the landscape remains flat and arid, until about 10 kilometres from Dukhan (to the right) where a 25-metre-high plateau edged with eroded cliffs rises up, creating a dramatic outline in the evening sun. These cliffs continue northwards up a peninsula for about 10 kilometres, with a desert track running along their western side to some pleasant beaches.

**Dukhan**, a town based on the oil industry, is dominated by gas flares which look particularly spectacular at night. The town lies between the sea, with a stretch of beaches, and a range of hill skirting the coast as far as Salwa.

### **The Salwa Road**

Immediately on the right beyond the 'C' Ring Road is the camel market, where trading in goats and camels is at its most brisk at about seven o'clock in the morning. Four kilometres on the left is a new wholesale market complex, and a further three kilometres on the right is the Khalifa Stadium.

Around 35 kilometres from Doha (on the left is the satellite tracking station giving Qatar telephone and media communications throughout the world. From here the road travels through typical sparsely-vegetated desert to the western coast, where it cuts through a natural break in range of hills stretching down from Dukhan. The hills look spectacular at this point, erosion having exposed horizontal strata of many different colours. Beyond these hills there is a fine view of the sea, sweeping in a great curve round to Salwa. Salwa itself is only a border post.

### **The Umm said Road**

This road goes south past the International Airport at Doha to the town of **Al-Wakra** (10 kilometres away). Once as important a town as Doha, most of old Al-Wakra is now in a state of ruin, though some of the traditional buildings still stand. New buildings are going up on the landside of the main road and the road leading west to Al-Wakir.

Beyond Al-Wakir is a remote and sparsely-populated desert area, with tow small oasis farms at its extremity. The road goes through a spectacular range of sand dunes (about 20 kilometres from Al-Wakra) which are a popular picnic spot. About 20 metres high, the dunes produce an unearthly resonant sound, so are known as the "singing dunes".

From Al Wakra, the main road continues south across the salt plains to **Umm Said**, 30 kilometers from Doha. Umm Said is a new town, built to accommodate workers manning a number of adjacent industrial plants.

## GENERAL INFORMATION

How to get there **By AIR (outside Gulf):** With the exception of a good service to and from London. Qatar has poor air connections with Europe. There are daily flights from London (on the average two daily). Otherwise there are only a few weekly flights from Paris and Amsterdam. There are weekly flights from Bombay, Karachi, Tokyo, Hong Kong, Delhi, Dacca, Colombo, and Brunei. Several flights a week go from Beirut and Cairo to Doha and less frequent ones from Amman, Damascus, Sanaa and Taiz.

**BY AIR (inter-Gulf):** There are several flights a day from Bahrain, which is the main transit point for passengers to Qatar. There are also daily flights from Abu Dhabi and Dubai.

Several flights a week go to and from Sharjah, Shiraz, and Muscat and there are less frequently weekly flights from Baghdad, Ras al-Khaimah, Riyadh, Kuwait and Dhahran.

**Visas** Visas are required by all except nationals of Bahrain, Kuwait, Oman, Saudi Arabia, and the United Arab Emirates and holders of British passports in which their national status is described as 'British Subject' Citizen of the United Kingdom and their place of birth or country of residences as the United Kingdom (for a stay not exceeding 30 days).

Transit visas are not required by those who continue their journey to a third country by the same or first connecting aircraft within 24 hours. But they must hold tickets with reserved seats and documents for their onward journey. Business and company representatives may be issued with a 72-hour visa provided that their passports are endorsed for Qatar and they hold onward valid proof of identity from the company and be met at the airport by a commercial representative of the company being dealt with. Nationals of Albania, Bulgaria, Czechoslovakia, East Germany, Hungary, North Korea, Pakistan, China, Poland, Rumania, U.S.S.R. Vietnam require a visa at all times.

**Language** The official language is Arabic. English is widely spoken in business circles.

**Religion** Qatar is a Wahhabi Muslim state.

**Official holidays** The holidays marked with an asterisk \* are dependent on the Moslem calendary and may differ by one or two days from the dates given. The Muslim year has 354 or 355 days, so Muslim dates and holidays fall 10 to 11 days earlier each year on the Gregorian calendar. Businessmen are advised to avoid visits to Qatar during the month of Ramadan which is the month preceding the Id al-Fitr.

1978/1979

Id aladha* .. .. .	11-13 November
Independence Day .. .. .	3 September 1979
Id al-Fitr (end of Ramadan)* .. .. .	22-24 August 1979

**Time** GMT + 3.

**Electric current** 220-240 volts, 50 cycles AC.

**Currency** The unit of currency is the Qatar Riyal (QR) divided into 100 dirhams. The following denominations are in circulation:

Notes: Qatar Riyal 1, 5, 10, 100, 500.

Coins: Dirhams 1, 5, 10, 25, 50.

**Currency regulations** There are no restrictions on the import or export of currency.

**Customs regulations** Visitors are allowed to bring 1 lb. of tobacco and perfumes up to the value of QR 20. The import of alcohol is prohibited.

**Alcohol** Visitors may have difficulty in obtaining alcohol because of severe restrictions on its sale. The Gulf Hotel is the only public place that has a bar but it is

only open to hotel guests. Residents can obtain permits from the British embassy allowing them to buy alcohol from a restricted number of licensed syndicates (mainly run by British companies). Company clubs are also allowed to buy and sell liquor. With the exception of canned beer, alcohol bought with a permit tends to be cheaper than in Europe.

**Useful advice** During the hot and humid summer months between April and September, light cotton clothing is best for comfort. Qataris are strict Wahhabi Muslim, so women should dress very modestly with long-sleeved dresses. In December/January, sweaters may be needed as a protection against cold weather. Men should not wear shorts or go round shirtless.

## **Appendices to Doha: B1-B10**

### **The Structural Analysis of Theme Types**

## APPENDIX B1

<b>Theme Analysis of Text 1 About Doha</b>
--

**Part Six****Doha**

1a

Fly	into Doha by night
Theme: top Imperative Unmarked	Rheme

1b

and	you	will see through the semi-circumstanceless of bright orange lights a city which has clearly been planned.
text Conj: cord	top Sub: pron Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

2.

Qatar's Capital	is built on four concentric ring roads which follow the curve of a perfect semicircumstanceular bay stretching northwest and southeast.
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

3.

This	is modern Doha, the city of 2000, whose elegance is often masked by construction sites and the dust of seemingly perpetual roadworks.
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

4.

The city	has changed rapidly in the time 50 years, a transformation brought about by the advent of oil wealth.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme



5a

In the late eighteenth century	Thani Bin-Mohammad, usually considered the founder of Qatar's present ruling family, left the northwest town of Zubara, which had for centuries been the seat of power in the country,
Theme: top Adju: Prep Phr Marked	Rheme

5b

and	$\phi$	moved down the east to Fuwairat.
text Conj: cord	top Subj: pron, ellip Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

6.

Fuwairat	is a tiny fishing village of perhaps 100 home, retaining no sign of its former prominence.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

7a

Thani's son, Mohammad Bin-Thani,	was born at Fuwairat,
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

7b

but later	$\phi$	moved to Bida, a fishing village halfway down the peninsula.
text Conj: cord	top Subj: pron, ellip Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

8a

As the population grew,	the original village gradually extended along the coast
Theme: top $\beta$ DP Cl Marked	Rheme

8b

and	ϕ	became known as Al-Doha-the extension.
text Conj: cord	top Subj: pron, ellip Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

9.

Bida	still retains some signs of the time-although this will not be true for much longer.	
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme	

10.

The district	covers the coastal strip west of the present Amiri palace, extending as far as Rumaila.	
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme	

11a

It	has a variety of old, small mud-built houses and more elegant stone-built villas-which became fashionable once the oil operators moved in-	
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme	

11b

and	ϕ	also provides direct access to the original dhow harbour.
text Conj: cord	top Subj: pron, ellip Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

12.

Doha's early development	can be traced through the names given to the various districts of the existing city.	
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme	

13a

Each district (fariq)	was named after the family group which inhabited that particular area,
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

13b

so	you	find Fariq Bin-Omran, Fariq Bin-Mahmoud, Fariq Salata, and so on.
text Conj: cord	top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

14.

Some areas- Al-Hitmi, Al-Najma, Al-Badi and Wadi Sail	have not yet succumbed to modern urbanisation.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

15.

There	you can see single-storey buildings with flat roofs and white gypsum-covered walls, reminders of the way most of the population lived before oil revenue changed their lives.
Theme: top Subj Unmarked	Rheme

16.

Before 1952	there was no electricity, no running water and only a few roads for the handful of cars belonging to the oil company and some wealthier families.
Theme : top Adju: Prep Phr Marked	Rheme

17.

Even where older housing has been removed to make way for modern buildings	the longer established areas of Doha are marked by the presence of abundant deciduous trees, which provide a pleasant contrast to the city's generally dusty appearance.
Theme: top $\beta$ DP CI Marked	Rheme

18.

Two of the capital's more impressive landmarks	also hark back to pre-oil days.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

19.

On the southeast point of the Bay of Doha	is the Qatar National Museum, a former Amiri palace rebuilt and restored as an exact replica of the original.
Theme: top Adju: Prep Phr Marked	Rheme

20.

The palace	was originally built by Shaik Abdulla Bin-Jassim al-Thani, ruler of Qatar from 1913-49.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

21.

It	contains three buyut (residences), the central one for the ruler, and the other two for his sons, Shaik Hamad Bin Abdulla- father of the present ruler-and Shaik Ali Bin-Abdulla.
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

22.

The architect	was the Bahraini builder Abdulla Bin Ali al-Mail, who also built the harbour at Bir Zikrit, the original landing stage for Bahrain dhows bringing fresh water, vegetables and equipment for oil operations in Dkuhan in the late 1940s
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

23.

Abdulla	moved from the old palace to the present one, in the heart of the existing town, in 1923.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

24.

It	had been the site of a fort used by Turkish forces during their domination of Qatar before 1915.
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

25.

Doha bay's shoreline	has changed dramatically in the time 30 years.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

26.

The waters of the Gulf	used to lap the walls of both the original and the present Amiri palaces.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

27.

In pre-oil days	access to the sea was a vital means of communication.
Theme: top Adju: Prep Phr Marked	Rheme

28.

In addition,	the west point of the bay where the Doha Sheraton and conference centre now dominate the skyline,	did not exist.
text Adju: conj	top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

29.

Beyond Bida	the semi-circumstanceular curve of the bay disappeared into an ill-defined evil-smelling morass of sabkhas (salt flats).
Theme: top Adju: Prep Phr Marked	Rheme

30.

One of the most impressive features of Doha's modern reconstruction programme	has been the reclamation of land from the sea, both to create an aesthetically pleasing coastline and to provide the site for the prestigious West Bay urban development area (see West Bay).
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

**The Corniche and port**

31.

With reclamation complete,	the corniche road has become an elegant focus both for affairs of state and for recreation.
Theme: top Adju: adv Marked	Rheme

32.

A protective sea wall	will, in the next two years, be lined with pleasant gardens and pavements dotted with open-air cafes.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

33.

Driving along the Corniche	you can see opposite Qatar National Museum a large shelter under which craftsmen, sponsored by the Amir, continue their traditional work of building dhows.
Theme: top $\beta$ NFT CI Marked	Rheme

34a

The dhows	are no longer essential to the economy,
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

34b

but	$\phi$	are used for traditional sports and celebrations such as the annual dhow race.
text Conj: cord	top Subj: pron, ellip Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

35.

Next	comes the modern port, where the latest equipment has been installed to deal with container traffic.
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

36.

Doha	handles mostly commercial cargoes destined for the city, while oil and industrial exports and imports are handled at Umm Said.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

37.

A major development programme	is continuing at the port to ensure its facilities will rival those found elsewhere in the Gulf.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

38.

Opposite the port	are the head offices of Qatar National Navigation & Transport Company, one of the country's largest and most successful private ventures (see Transport).
Theme: top Adju: Prep Phr Marked	Rheme

39.

Continuing along the Corniche	you come to the traditional fishing port, its tightly packed fleet of dhows interspersed with modern cabin cruisers, and with fishing nets hanging out along the roadside waiting for repair.
Theme : top $\beta$ NFT Cl Unmarked	Rheme

40.

Early risers	can visit this area at dawn to buy fresh fish at very reasonable prices.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

41.

On the landward side of the Corniche and continuing for its entire length	is a series of architecturally outstanding buildings representing the heart of commercial and financial activity.
Theme: top Adju: Prep Phr Marked	Rheme

42.

They	include the headquarters of many ministries and major commercial institutions, among them Qatar National Bank (QNB), Government House and Qatar Monetary Agency (QMA central bank authority).
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

43.

While the QNB and QMA buildings are modern concrete and glass structures,	Government House, the seat of the Finance & Petroleum Ministry, is much older.
Theme: top $\beta$ DP CI Marked	Rheme

44.

It	is undergoing a major facelift to make it blend in with modern style of the rest of the seafront architecture.
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

**Amiri palace**

45.

Returning once more to the Corniche	you go time the capital police headquarters to the central part of the city, opposite the Grand Mosque and dominated by the Amiri palace.
Theme: top $\beta$ NFT CI Marked	Rheme

46.

The square	also includes the National Development Museum and the Clock Tower.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme



47.

Major reconstruction	is underway at the Amiri palace to expand facilities to cope with the new demands of state administration, to build an entrance to the palace from the Corniche appropriate to the city of the future.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

48.

Close by	are several beautiful buildings including the Foreign Affairs Ministry, an outstanding example of a blend of modern and traditional Islamic architecture, the Interior Ministry and The British Bank of the Middle East.
Theme: top Adju: Prep Phr Marked	Rheme

### National Theatre

49.

Towards the northwest end of the Corniche before it turns on to the West Bay	is the Qatar National theatre and Information Ministry complex which opened in February 1982.
Theme : top Adju: Prep Phr Marked	Rheme

50.

The theatre, which includes a 500-seat auditorium	is sited in traditional Arab gardens with multiple arches and rose gardens.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

51.

If you turn left from the theatre	the road leads towards the television and radio station complex, which includes new automated studios to allow more programmes to be produced locally.
Theme: top $\beta$ If-clause Marked	Rheme

52.

Opposite the complex	is a row of commercial establishments including restaurants.
Theme: top Adju: Prep Phr Unmarked	Rheme

53.

Turning left at Television Station roundabout	you come to Fariq Bin Omran.
Theme : top $\beta$ NFT Cl Marked	Rheme

54.

This area	houses the US embassy, the Doha English-speaking junior school and kindergarten, the Doha Players Theatre, the Gulf Folklore Heritage Centre and the diplomatic guest villas.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

55.

Back towards the town centre	are, on the right, the Hamad hospital and the Women's hospital, now being built.
Theme: top Adju: Prep Phr Marked	Rheme

56a

The Hamad	is a referral hospital
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

56b

but	$\phi$	includes a 24-hour casualty unit.
text Conj: cord	top Subj: pron, ellip Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

57.

On the left	is the Rumaila hospital, opened in 1957 as the country's first general hospital and now used as a long-stay and rehabilitation hospital.
Theme: top Adju: Prep Phr Marked	Rheme

58.

Behind the Rumaila	is the polyclinic, where all bachelors are registered for primary health care as part of the new nationwide registration scheme.
Theme: top Adju: Prep Phr Marked	Rheme

**Airport and air travel**

59a

Qatar	is well served by international airlines
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

59b

and	ϕ	has daily flights to the UK, Europe and parts of the Indian subcontinent, as well as commuter flights to other Gulf states.
text Conj: cord	top Subj: pron, ellip Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

60a

Most major airlines	have offices in Doha,
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

60b

and	up-to-date information	can be obtained from them.
text Conj: cord	top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

61.

There	are also several reputable travel agents operating in Doha.
Theme: top Subj Unmarked	Rheme

62.

They	will give advice on and arrange foreign travel, package holidays, hotels and so on.
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

63.

All airline reservations	should be confirmed two days prior to travel and a note made of the computer booking reference where applicable.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

64a

Doha international airport	is six kilometers from the centre of the capital
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

64b

and	ϕ	has recently undergone extensive modernisation and improvement.
text Conj: cord	top Subj: pron, ellip Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

65.

Minimum check-in time	is 60 minutes before departure.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

66.

Snack bar facilities	are available at arrival and departure terminals, as well as after passport control in the departure terminal.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

67.

Holders of Qatari residence permits, or visitors who have stayed for more than one month,	require an exit permit.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

68.

This	can be obtained in a morning from the Immigration Department on completion of the appropriate form and provision of a letter from sponsor confirming permission to travel.
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

69.

Wives and children sponsored by their husband/father	do not require an exit permit (see practical guide).
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

**Taxis**

70a

All taxis	have yellow number plates
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

70b

and	some	have "taxi" on the roof or the drivers door.
text Conj: cord	top Subj: pron	Rheme
Theme		

71a

Meters	are not used
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

71b

and	the fare	should be negotiated before setting off.
text Conj: cord	top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

72.

Unless told otherwise	the driver will stop to pick up other fare-paying passengers on the way.
Theme : top $\beta$ DP CI Marked	Rheme

73a

Ladies	should always travel in the back
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

73b

and	$\phi$	should specify that there be no other passengers (for car hire see Practical Guide.)
top Conj: cord	top Subj: pron, ellip Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

**Hotels**

74.

Qatar	is now well served by first class hotels, with over 1,500 beds available in five-star hotels alone.
Theme Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

75.

Some hotels	face 50 per cent occupancy rates for much of the year, making advance booking a formality for businessmen and travellers.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

76.

There	are also several three and four-star hotels available which offer an acceptable standard of accommodation a reasonable price.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

77.

There	is no need to tip hotel staff because a 10 per cent service charge is added to the bill.
Theme: top Subj Unmarked	Rheme

**Restaurants**

78.

Eating out in Qatar	can range from the very elegant to the very basic.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

79.

The major restaurants	are those in the five-star hotels, of which undoubtedly the best is the Al-Shaheen Rooftop Restaurant in the Sheraton on West Bay.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

80a

All the other five-star hotels	maintain good restaurants,
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

80b

and	the Italian Restaurant at the Oasis	deserves a special mention.
text Conj: cord	top Subj: NG Unmarked	
Theme		

81a

The Ramada hotel	has Maxim's (French cuisine in sumptuous decor)
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

81b

and	the Lulua restaurant, which specialises in Arabic food,	as does the main restaurant at the Oasis hotel.
text Conj: cord	top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

82a

Buffet lunches	tend to be the rule at the hotels	
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme	

82b

but	excellent alternatives	can be found at the Oasis' Italian restaurant and the coffee shops at other hotels.
text Conj: cord	to Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

### Shops and supermarkets

83.

It is now possible	to buy most things in Doha, though it is still necessary on occasion to search diligently, and shortages of certain items do occur.	
Theme: top $\beta$ Themd Comnt Marked	Rheme	

### Food

84.

No street	is complete without its "cold store" or corner shop usually stocking the essentials and open all day, every day.	
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme	



**Bread**

85.

Arab bread	is available from all bakers.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

86.

European-style bread and cakes	can be bought from all supermarkets and direct from the Umm Said Bakery on Museum road, Arirang Bakery on Gulf street and Andalusia Bakery behind the B ring road.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

**Antiquities and museum**

87.

Qatar National Museum	At the eastern end of the Corniche.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

88.

Qatar National Museum	Open 0900-1200 and 1500-1800. Tuesday afternoons: ladies only.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

89.

Qatar National Museum	Closed Friday morning.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

90.

The Qatar National Museum	is acknowledged as one of the finest in the region.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

91.

It	is housed in a former Amiri palace, built at the turn of the century and recently restored.
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

92.

The museum	won the Aqa Khan award for restoration and rehabilitation of Islamic architecture in 1980.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

93.

The museum	contains sections on history, the traditional economy-pearl fishing, fishing, nomad textiles-the geology and developments of the oil industry, traditional perfumes, costumes, jewellery, firearms and furniture, as well as a collection of decorations presented by foreign governments to the state of Qatar.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

94.

The museum complex	also includes a large aquarium, displaying a cross-section of the marine life of the Gulf, and a lagoon in which a number of original dhows used during the pearling age are moored.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

95.

A visit to the museum	is essential for any visitor wishing to gain an insight into the character and culture of the people of Qatar.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

96.

National Development Museum Next to the Grand Mosque, by the Diwan al-Amiri.	Houses permanent displays of the major development plans under construction or planned for implementation by 2000.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

## APPENDIX B2

<b>Theme Analysis of Text 2 about Doha</b>
--

### History

1.

Evidence of early habitation in Qatar, that can be traced as far back as the 4th century BC,	appeared in many artifacts such as inscriptions, rock carvings and the fine examples of pottery which were uncovered by the different foreign expeditions.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

2.

Al-Thani	were among a tribal group which settled at Gebrin Oasis in southern Najd, for a long time, before their arrival in Qatar during the early 18th century.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

3.

Initially	they	stayed in the north of the peninsula before moving to Doha in the mid 19th century under the leadership of Mohammed Bin Thani.
Adju: conj Marked	top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

4.

The family of Al-Thani	is a branch of the Arab tribe Tamim, whose descent is traced back to Mudar Bin Nizar.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

5.

This tribe	inhabited the eastern parts of the Arabian peninsula.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

6.

The name of Al-Thani	is derived from that of the family's ancestor Thani Bin Mohammed, father of Mohammed Bin Thani who was the first Shaik to rule over the Qatar peninsula during the mid 19th century.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

### Location & Area

7.

The state of Qatar	is situated half-way along the west coast of the Arabian Gulf covering an area of 11,437 sq km, including a number of islands, the most important of which are Hawar Archipelago, Halul, the island of Jinan, Shar'ou and others.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

8.

The State of Qatar	generally consists of flat rocky surfaces.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

9.

However	it	includes some hills and sand dunes in the western and northern parts of the country.
text Adju: conj	top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

10.

Qatar	has a moderate desert climate of hot summer and, minimal rainfall, warm winter.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

11.

As from October to mid April	the weather is usually pleasant.
Theme: top Adju: Prep Phr Marked	Rheme

12.

The present population	is estimated at 500,000 inhabitants, most of whom reside in Doha, the capital city..
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

### Independence

13a

On the 3rd of September 1971	H.H. Shaik Khalifa Bin Hamad Al-Thani, the Emir, declared the independence of Qatar
Theme: top Adju: Prep Phr Marked	Rheme

13b

and	on the 22nd of February 1972	H.H. assumed leadership of the country.
text Conj: cord	Theme: top Adju: Prep Phr Marked	Rheme
Theme		

14.

On May 31st 1977	H.H. the Emir issued an Emiri Decree appointing H.H. Shaikh Hamad Bin Khalifa Al-Thani, Heir Apparent and Minister of Defence.
Theme: top Adju: Prep Phr Marked	Rheme

### Main Cities & Towns

**Doha:**

15.

Doha	is the capital city of Qatar.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

16.

It	is situated half-way down the east coast of the Qatar peninsula.
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

17.

It	is the seat of the government, housing government departments, ministries, financial and commercial institutions.
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

**Umm Said:**

18.

Umm Said	is the heart of Qatar's industry.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

19.

Its development	is integrally linked with the discovery of oil in the country.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

**Al-Khor:**

20.

It	is a coastal town, boasts of its fine beaches, mosques and its old tower.
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

21.

It	has its regional museum to house the historical valuable acquisitions of Al-Khor town.
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

**Al-Wakrah:**

22.

It	is a coastal town situated 15 km from Doha, half-way along the north east coast between Doha and Umm Said.
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

23.

The town	has a small old port in addition to mosques and a number of traditional houses which represent the old Islamic architecture.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

**Dukhan:**

24.

Dukhan	is situated on the west coast of the State of Qatar, 84 km from Doha.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

25.

It	gained it's importance when oil was discovered in the surrounding fields.
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

**Madinat Al-Shamal:**

26.

It	is situated on the northern tip of the Qatar peninsula, about 107 km from Doha.
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

27.

It	functions as an administrative centre for a number of coastal villages.
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

**Al-Zubarah:**

28.

It	is an important antiquity and historical town, situated in the north of the peninsula about 105 km from Doha.
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

29.

It	is well known for its old fort.
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

### The Important Forts

#### Al-Zubarah Fort:

30.

It	lies 105 km away from Doha on the north western part of Qatar peninsula.
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

31a

It	was built during the time of Shaik Abdullah Bin Qassim Al-Thani in 1938 by a group of local builders
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

31b

and	ϕ	was restored in 1987 to be a local museum.
text Conj: cord	Subj: pron, ellip Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

#### Al-Kout Fort:

32.

It	is one of Doha's old military fortresses, situated in the centre of the city.
Theme: top NG: pron Unmarked	Rheme

33.

It	was built in 1917 during the time of the late Shaikh Abdulla Bin Qassim Al-Thani.
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme



**Al Wajbah Fort**

34.

It	is situated in the western south part of Al-Rayan in Doha.
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

35.

It	was built in 1882.
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

36.

The fort	witnessed a famous battle in which the people of Qatar, under the leadership of Shaik Qassim Bin Mohammed Al Thani, the ruler of Qatar, won victory over the Ottoman forces in 1410 AH (1893 AD).
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

**Murwab Fort:**

37.

It	is situated 15 km north of Dukhan town.
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

38.

It	was built on the foundations of an older fort around which five grasps of buildings are scattered, making a total 250 houses, built during the Abbasid period.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

**Al-Thughb Fort:**

39.

It	is an old fort situated 8 km away in the north eastern part of Al-zubarah town.
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

**Al-Rakiyat Fort:**

40.

It	lies about 110 km away from Doha.
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

41a

It	was built during the late 19th century
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

41b

and	ϕ	restored in 1988.
text Conj: cord	top Subj, pron, ellip Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

**Umm Salal Mohammed Fort:**

42.

It	was built during the 19th century on the north eastern part of the country, about 20 km away from Doha.
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

43.

It	is residential fort which combines civil and military functions.
top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

**Burzan Tower:**

44.

It	is situated in Umm Salal Mohammed area.
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

45.

It	was built during the late 19th and early 20th centuries.
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

46.

Its unique watch towers	have no equal in the Gulf region.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

47.

It	is a rectangular construction of three levels with an external staircase leading to the top level.
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

48.

On the other hand,	many forts, in Qatar,	have been effaced or become ruins such as Al-Teeby, Al-Yousufia and Umm Al-Ma forts in addition to Al-Ghuwair Castle which lies about 85 km away from Doha.
text Adju: conj	Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

### Places of Interest

#### a-Museums:

##### 1. Qatar National Museum:

49.

It	is the main museum in Qatar lies opposite to Doha Corniche.
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

50.

It	was built in 1912 as a palace for ruler of Qatar.
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

51.

Shaik Hamad Bin Abdulla Al-Thani	was the first Emir to use it.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

52a

In 1972	H.H. the Emir, Shaik Khalifa Bin Hamad Al-Thani, commissioned the restoration and development of the palace as a national museum
Theme: top Adju: Prep Phr Marked	Rheme

52b

and	it	was officially opened in 1975.
text Conj: cord	Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

53.

The museum complex	consists of the following five sections; the old palace, the State Museum, the Lagoon, the Aquarium and the gardens.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

54.

Opening Hours:	(9 am to 12 noon except Friday. 3 pm to 6 pm in winter. 4 pm to 7 pm in summer. Saturday closed for maintenance).
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

55.

Al-Wakrah Museum: Opening Hours:	(8 am to 12 noon. 3 pm to 6 pm in winter. 4 pm to 7 pm in summer. Saturday closed).
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

56.

Al-Khor Museum: Opening Hours:	(9 am to 12 noon. 3 pm to 6 pm in winter. 4 pm to 7 pm in summer. Saturday closed).
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

57.

Al-Zubara Museum: Opening Hours:	(9 am to 12 noon. 3 pm to 6 pm in winter. 4 pm to 7 pm in summer. Saturday closed).
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

58.

Al-Kout Museum: Opening Hours:	(8 am to 12 noon. 3 pm to 6 pm in winter. 4 pm to 7 pm in summer. Saturday closed).
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

59.

Doha Ethnographic Museum: Opening Hours:	(8 am to 12 noon. 3 pm to 6 pm in winter. 4 pm to 7 pm in summer. Saturday closed).
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

**B-Beaches:****Fuwairt Beach:**

60.

It	lies about 90 km away from Doha on the north eastern coast of Qatar.
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

61.

This fine beach, together with Al-Jassasiya rocky hills	are considered an attractive site for visitors.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

**Dukhan Beach:**

62.

It	lies about 36 km away from Doha on the South eastern coast.
top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

**Umm Said Beach:**

63.

It	lies about 36 km away from Doha on the South eastern coast.
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

**Khor Al-Udeid:**

64.

It	lies about 78 away from Doha on the south eastern part of Qatar.
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

65.

It	is famous for its sand dunes which reach altitude of 40 metres above sea level in some places:
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

**The Palm Trees' Island:**

66.

It	is not far from Doha Corniche, looking upon Doha Sheraton Hotel and full of palm trees.
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

67.

Those who are fond of fishing	prefer to visit the island, by their boats for rest and enjoyment.
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

68.

On the island	there are some restaurants that can offer delicious fresh fish dishes in addition to a wonderful beach, public coffee and a special place for children to play and get fun.
Theme: top Adju: Prep Phr Marked	Rheme

69.

The Palm Trees' island	soon receive visitors.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

**Umm Said Camp:**

70.

This camp	Will include a high standard hotel and forty beach cabins along the marvelous sandy beach of Umm Said.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

**West Bay Residential Project:**

71.

This big residential project	is taking place on the west bay area.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

72a

It	consists of several residential sections around an artificial huge lake,
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

72b

φ	includes a big hotel and a special club, commercial center, entertaining center that includes parks and water sports, a mosque and many different restaurants.
Theme: top Subj: pron, ellip Unmarked	Rheme

**Al-Dohoul:**

73.

It	means caves that were formed through thousands of years underground because of the erosion of limestones by the rushing of the ground water.
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

74.

Some of these (Dohoul)	are: Dahl Al-Haman, Dahl Al-Misfer and Dahl Al-Modhlim.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

75.

These caves (Dohul)	are distinguished in their natural beauty and cold weather.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

**C-The Desert:**

76.

The deserts	are not the same in Qatar.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

77.

In the north and central parts of the State	there are many surface rain water-draining basins known as Al-Riyadh (the gardens) which are changed usually to green colour during spring time.
Theme: top Adju: Prep Phr Marked	Rheme

78.

In the south parts	desert includes some sand dunes while in west center, near the coast, there are series of calcic mountains.
Theme: top Adju: Prep Phr Marked	Rheme



## Amusing Places

### Shahaniyah Farm

79.

It	lies about 45 km away from Doha on an area of 12 sq km.
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

80.

It	was set up to protect the Arabian deer (Al-Maha, Al-Reem) from extinction, in addition to Al-Wabrah shelter, 40 km away from Doha, which includes different kinds of deer and descendants of rare origin.
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

### The Zoo:

81.

It	lies 20 km away from Doha on Salwa road.
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

### Doha Corniche:

82.

It	extends for more than 7 km along the city coast.
top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

### Women & Children Park:

83.

It	lies in Al-Muntazah area south Doha.
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

84.

It	is assigned only for women and children.
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

**Families' park:**

85.

It	lies in Al-Muntazah area south Doha.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

86.

It	is suitable place for families to enjoy their time with their children who can have the benefit of the several playing equipment available in the park.
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

87.

On special occasions, during the year,	the park presents different interesting shows to entertain and amuse the visitors.
Theme: top Adju: Prep Phr Marked	Rheme

**The Airport Park:**

88.

It	lies near the Airport buildings.
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

**Al-Wakrah Park:**

89.

It	lies in Al-Wakra.
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

90.

It	provides much entertainment and enjoyment, especially for children.
top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

**Al-Khor Park:**

91.

This park	is set up on a large area near Al-Khor city.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

92.

Many visitors	prefer to spend their weekend in this place.
Theme: top NG Subj Unmarked	Rheme

93.

Children	can find many playing equipment in addition to a cafeteria and other services.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

**Theatres & Cinemas:**

94.

Qatar National Theatre	is one of the biggest theatres in Doha.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

95.

It	is equipped with the most up-to-date techniques.
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

96.

Most of the works of Qatari theatrical groups	are staged on this theatre.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

97.

Players theatre	hosts foreign theatrical groups.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

98.

There	are also two other small theatres; the Ministry of education's theatre and the theatre of the General Organisation for Youth and Sports.
Theme: top Subj Unmarked	Rheme

99.

In Doha and Umm Said	the cinemas present the most up-to-date Arabic and Foreign films.
Theme: top Adju: Prep Phr Marked	Rheme

**Al-Addin's**

100.

Al-Addin's kingdom, as it is named,	lies on the west bay coast area.
Theme: top NG Subj Unmarked	Rheme

101.

It	is built on a 140,000 sqm over looking the bay offering a total of 18 rides suitable for all ages.
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

102a

The park	has two sections;
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

102b

one	is assigned for women and children under 8 years,
Theme:top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

102c

the other	is available for families.
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

103.

The park	includes a rest house, a mosque for men and another for women, an artificial lake, a theatre for a 1000 person and a cafeteria facing the bay in addition to many other services.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

104.

The park	is open from 4 pm to 11 pm. Except Saturdays.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

105.

The admission fee	is QR. 35.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

106.

Wednesdays	only women are allowed.
Theme: top Adju: Adv Marked	Rheme

### THE SOUQS (Markets)

107.

Most of the Souqs	lie in the middle of Souq Wakif area.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

108.

Many old small shops, standing along the small passways and narrow passages,	exhibit all sorts of garments, perfumes, spices and all tools of different crafts
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

### Diving After Pearls

109.

Diving after pearls before oil discovery	was the main work for those who lived near the coast.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

110.

Diving after pearls	needs a team work and collective effort from those who are working on the boat to succeed on their mission.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

111.

Diving time	is about five months: from April to September.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

### AL-Kolafa (Boats Calking):

112.

Al-Kolafa (Boats Calking)	is one of the oldest crafts on the Gulf shores.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

113.

The Chief material used in this craft	are red wood, teak wood, ropes and tar.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

114.

Later	iron nails were used instead of ropes.
Theme: top Adju: adv Marked	Rheme

115.

Some of these old boats	are; Al-Baqarah Boats, Al-Baghlan Al Bateel, Al-Galboot and Al-Boom.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

116.

The main centres for boats calking in Qatar	are, Al-Ruwais, Al-Wakra, Al-Khor and Doha.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

117.

Qatari sea-men	used these boats for commerce and transporting purposes, fishing and diving after pearls.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

### Architecture

118.

The old Qatari buildings	are distinguished by their carvings, ornaments and arabesque decorations which were carried out by the hands of local builders.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

119.

The Qatari architecture	is an extension of the famous Islamic Architecture.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

120a

The Qatari builder	knew the gypsum
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

120b

and	ϕ	used it in building houses, palaces, forts, towers and mosques.
text Conj: cord	top Subj: pron, ellip Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

121.

Gypsum rocks	were brought usually from Fuwairat and Al-Mafgar, north of the country, to Doha, Al-Rayyan and Al-Wakrah.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

### JEWELS & GARMENTS

122.

In most cases	women's jewels	are made of gold or silver inlaid with precious stones.
text Adju: conj	top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

123.

Women's jewels	have many and different shapes.	
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme	

124.

Some	are used for ears, for neck and for fingers like earring, necklaces and rings.	
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme	

125.

Some others	are put on wrists, arms, around waists, on the head or braided with the hair.	
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme	

126.

The traditional women's garments	are always loose and modes according to the Islamic teachings and Arabian traditions.	
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme	



127.

Women's garment	are made of wool, flax or cotton according to the season.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

128.

Some of these garments	are embroidered with golden or silver threads at the front upper and lower parts in addition to the wide sleeves of the dress.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

129.

Some of the most famous women's dresses in Qatar	are; Thawb Al-Nashel, Al-Darra'ah, Al-Serwal, Al-Higab, Al-Aba'ah and Battolah.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

### SPORTS

130 .

Qatar	have lately hosted several regional and international championships the latest of which were Qatar Rally championship, the Fifth Pan-Arab Equestrian Championship and the Qatar Open Tennis in addition to many tournaments which have taken place on Khalifa International Complex for Tennis & Squash.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

131.

In Qatar	there are Nine Sports Clubs in which a variety of sports are practiced in addition to many other cultural and scientific clubs.
Theme: top Adju: Prep Phr Marked	Rheme

132.

Youth Centers and Youth Societies	which comprise most of the international sports one of which are practiced in open air such as Baseball, Badminton, Basketball, Cricket, Golf, Hockey, Rugby, Horse Races (in horsemanship club at Rayyan), Diving, Water Skating and many other sports.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

133.

Some others	are practiced in closed halls, like Bowling (in the Bowling Center), Judo, Tokondo, Tennis, Squash and others.
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

**Sports Still Practiced:**

134.

Camel races sport	is of a great importance in Qatar.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

135.

It	is a sport of full excitement and competition.
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

136.

Annual camel races	are organised at Shahania racecourse, under the supervision of the Camel Race Committee,
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

137.

and	many prizes	are appropriated for this occasion.
text Conj: cord	top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

138a

Horse races sport	has the same interest
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

138b

and	many horse races	are organized by the horsemanship club in Rayyan, supervised by the Horsemanship Association.
Theme Conj: cord	top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

139.

One of the old sports still existing	is boats races which always take place offshore near Doha Corniche during national occasions and feasts.
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

140.

Falscon's hunting	is a seasonal sport, practiced by the Qatari people and others.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

141.

There	are many different kinds of falcons of which the best are; Al-Hor and Al-Shaheen which each may reach QR. 250,000 or more
top Subj Unmarked	Rheme

142.

Before sharing in hunting,	the Falcon must be well trained by his owner in order to be able to hunt Al-Habara, Pigeons, Rabbits and Deers.
Theme: top $\beta$ DP CI Marked	Rheme

### GENERAL INFORMATION

#### Rules of Entry:

143.

Visitors to Qatar	have to get a visa at one of Qatar's Embassies to the different countries, except those of CCASG and the United Kingdom.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

144.

The Qatri visas	are of four sorts: 1 Hours Visa: For businessmen who has urgent business with Qatari companies or corporations. 2 One week-Three Months Visa: for visitors who need more time to finish their work. They can get it through their agents in Qatar and they can not go past three months. 3 Residing visa: For those who are contracting to work in Qatar after practicing their work and it is renewed automatically. 4 Residing visa: For tourists and businessmen through the Qatar hotels.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

145.

Points of Entry	By land: Through the two main border points at Abu Samra and Sauda-Nathil By Air: Through Doha International Airport. By Sea: Through the ports of Doha and Umm Said.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

146.

Durations & Official Occasions:	-Government Dept.: 7 am to 1 pm -Companies & Corporations: 8 am to 12 noon 4 pm to 6 pm
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

147.

Friday	is the weekend holiday
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

148.

Feasts & Official Occasions:	-Eid Al-Fitr Al-Mubarak: in the 1 st of Shawal of the Hegira -22nd of February: The anniversary of H.H. the Emir's accession to rule. -The 3rd of September: The National Day
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

149a

Local Time:	-Greenwich Mean Time plus three hours
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

149b

Electricity:	240 Volts ± with a frequency of 50 hertz
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

**International Communications:**

150.

Qatar	has direct dialing with a total of 198 countries.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

**Post Services:**

151.

The Departments of Posts	is responsible for providing a variety of excellent postal services; Letters, Parcels and Mumtaz post.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

152.

There	are over 28 Post Offices in Doha and other cities.
Theme: top Subj Unmarked	Rheme

153.

Stamp's Fees:	25 Dirhams-inside the country 75 Dirhams-for CCASG 100 Dirhams for other Arab countries 200 Dirhams for foreign countries 200 Dirhams for East Asia, U.S.A. and Australia. Registered letter due more fees.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

154a

Currency Unit:	The Qatari Riyal, which divides into 100 Dirhams
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

154b

Paper Money:	1 Riyal, 5, 10, 50, 100 and 500 Riyals
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

155.

Metallic Money	-1 Dirham, 5, 10, 10, 25 and 50 Dirhams (1 US\$ = 3.65 QR.)
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

**Banks:**

156.

There	are 14 banks in Qatar of which 6 are national banks.
Theme: top Subj Unmarked	Rheme

## APPENDIX B3

<b>Theme Analysis of Text 3 about Doha</b>
--

**History**

1.

Recent excavations by a French archaeological mission	indicate that settlement in Qatar dates back to about 800 BC
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

2.

The flourishing period, from which over two hundred sites have already been located,	was the fifth millennium BC, with an economy depending mainly on fishing and hunting.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

3.

Grinding stones unearthed at Al-Da'sa and Al-Khor	may be considered as evidence that wild crops were gathered, while the existence of agriculture remains a question mark.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Theme

4.

Barter at that period	is ascertained by the presence of imported Ubaid pottery at Al-Da'sa and Al-Khor.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

5.

Except for a number of cairns and burials,	the period between Neolithic and Hellenistic has not yielded yet adequate information because of the lack of field work.
Theme: top Adju: adv Unmarked	Rheme

6.

The fishing village discovered at Ras Aburuk	dates back to the first centuries of our era.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

7.

Murwab	marks a turning point in the history of Qatar since it is the oldest known fort, going back to the early Islamic period, built on the ruins of an older fort destroyed by fire.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Theme

8.

Ruins of other forts and towers from later periods	are still evident at e.g. Al-Wajbah, Al-Huwailah, Zubara, Fuwairat, Umm El-Ma, Ruwayda, Al-Jumail, Abu Dhuluf, Umm Birkah.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

9.

The main function of these numerous fortified buildings	was to protect the wealth they housed, as pearl diving reached its peak at the periods in question, although the industry is known to have existed as far back as the Roman era and even earlier.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

10a

The Al-Thani	came to Qatar in the 18th century
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

10b

and	in 1868	Sheik Mohammed bin Thani became the first ruler.
text Conj: cord	top Adju: Prep Phr Marked	Rheme
Theme		



11.

The family	is a branch of Bani Tamim tribe who traced their descent back to Mudhar bin Nazar.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

12a

During August and the beginning of September 1971,	His Highness Sheik Khalifa bin Hamad al-Thani negotiated the end of the 1916 treaty with Britain
Theme: top Adju: Prep Phr Marked	Rheme

12b

and	on 3 September	announced full independence for Qatar.
text Conj: cord	top Adju: Prep Phr Marked	Rheme
Theme		

13.

Sheik Khalifa	assumed supreme authority on 22 February 1972 with the full support of the ruling family, the people of Qatar and the armed forces.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

14.

On 31 May 1977,	Sheik Khalifa issued an Amiri decree appointing H.H. Major General Sheik Hamad bin Khalifa al-Thani Her Apparent and Minister of Defence.
Theme: top Adju: Prep Phr Marked	Rheme

## Geography

15.

Qatar	is situated halfway along the western coast of the Arabian Gulf.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

16.

The country	consists of a peninsula projecting northwards about 160 km into the Gulf.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

17a

At its widest point,	the Qatar peninsula is about 80 km from coast to coast
Theme : top Adju: Prep Phr Marked	Rheme

17b

and	φ	covers an area of 11,437 square kilometres.
text Conj: cord	top Subj: pron, ellip Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

18.

The climate	is characterized by a mild winter with little rain (approx. 70 mm per annum) and a hot summer.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

19.

The weather	is generally pleasant during the months of April, May, October and November.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

20.

The population of Qatar	is about 230,000, eighty per cent of whom live in the capital, Doha.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

21a

Islam	is the country's official religion
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

21b

and	Islamic jurisprudence	is recognized as the basis of the legal system.
text Conj: cord	top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

22.

Arabic	is the official language although English is widely spoken.	
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme	

### Main Cities and Towns

23a

Doha: the capital and centre	is situated along Qatar's eastern coast	
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme	

23b

and	ϕ	houses the ministries, government departments and financial and commercial institutions.
text Conj: cord	top Subj: pron, ellip Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

24.

Villas of modern design and high-rise apartment blocks	form the skyline of the new residential areas.	
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme	

25a

Al-Rayyan, the largest and most important of the capital's suburbs	lies seven km from Doha	
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Theme	

25b

and	φ	is noted for its architecture, green areas and its stadium.
text Conj: cord	top Subj: pron, ellip Unmarked	Theme
Theme		

26.

Umm Said: (36 km from Doha) a town situated on the south east coast,	developed after the discovery of oil when a port for oil export from onshore fields of Dukhan was established.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

27.

It	has become Qatar's main industrial town following the establishment of a number of heavy industrial project, the most important of which are the iron and steel and petrochemical plants.
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

28.

Al-Khor: (57 km from Doha)	is an old Qatari town, famous for its traditional harbour, beaches, watchtowers and archaeological sites.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

29.

Al-Wakrah:	is a trading and fishing town halfway between Doha and Umm Said.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

30.

It	is well known for its traditional architecture.
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

31.

A traditional house under restoration	is being transformed into a regional museum.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

32.

Dukhan: (84 from Doha)	lies on the western coast of Qatar.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

33a

It	gained significance by the discovery of oil in adjacent onshore fields
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

33b

and	ϕ	is the headquarters of the onshore operations of the Qatar General Petroleum Corporation.
text Conj: cord	top Subj: pron, ellip Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

34.

It	is distinguished by its beautiful beaches, popular with visitors on weekends and publish holidays.
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

35.

Madinat al-Shamal: (107 km from Doha)	is a modern town on the extreme northern coast of the country.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

36.

It	was established as a service centre for a number of coastal villages.
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

37.

Al-Zubarah: (105 km from Doha) situated in the north,	is famous for its archaeological sites and old fort.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

38.

Umm Bab: (85 km from Doha)	lies to the south of Dukhan.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

39.

It	is the site of a large cement factory established in 1969 and an important junction for the pipeline which carries oil and gas from Dukhn to Umm Said.
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

40.

Umm Salal Mohammed: (21 km from Doha)	lies on the Doha-Al-Khor highway.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

41.

Distinguished by its forts,	it depends on trade for its livelihood.
Theme: top NFT CI Marked	Rheme

42.

Umm Salal Ali: (27 km from Doha)	lies halfway between Doha and Al-Khor.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

## Entry Requirements

43.

It is necessary	to have a valid passport before entering the country.
Theme: top Themd Comnt Marked	Rheme

44.

Three categories of entry visas	are obtainable from Qatari resident diplomatic missions:
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

45.

1-A 72 hour visa	is granted to businessmen provided they are sponsored by a local company.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

46.

2-Visitors visas for a maximum period of three months	must be sponsored by a government ministry or a local company.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

47.

3-Persons holding employment contracts to work in Qatar	are granted residence permits.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

48

Points of Entry	By land: through the two main border points at Abu Samra, frontier point with Saudi Arabia and Sauda-Nathil, frontier point with the United Arab Emirates By air: through Doha International Airport By sea: through the ports of Doha and Umm Said
Theme: top Sub: NG Unmarked	Rheme

49.

Government and Business Hours	6.00- 13.00 (Saturday through Thursday)
Theme: top Sub: NG Unmarked	Rheme

50.

Commercial Establishments	8.00-12.00 15.00-18.00
Theme: top Sub: NG Unmarked	Rheme

51.

Public Holidays	Anniversary of the accession of H.H. the Emir-22nd February Eid al-Fitr-Four days Eid al-Adha-Four days Independence Day-3rd September New Year's Day-1st of Muharram of every Hegira year Anniversary of the accession
Theme: top Sub: NG Unmarked	Rheme

### Places of Interest

52.

Qatar National Museum and Aquarium: Itself an old palace,	displaying the country's heritage, customs, and traditions and the underwater world of the Gulf.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

53.

Qatar National Development Exhibition:	Projects-under construction and planned exhibited in a restored traditional residence.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme



**The Souks:**

54a

No middle eastern city	is complete without a bazaar,
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

54b

and	Doha	is no exception.
text Conj: cord	top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

55.

Here	small stalls and shops are packed together in narrow passages and streets where you can buy almost anything from oriental handicrafts to the most modern electronic equipment.
Theme : top Adju: adv Marked	Rheme

**Doha Fort (Al Kout):**

56

Doha Fort (Al Kout):	An old fort in downtown Doha where visitors are offered the unique opportunity to buy genuine handwoven bedouin handicrafts.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

**The Windtower House:**

57a

The only remaining example of its type in Qatar,	this house has a windtower (Badgir) open on its four sides
Theme: top Adju: Compl Marked	Rheme

57b

and	φ	capable of providing both ventilation and cooling to the internal room within the house during the long hot summer season.
text Conj: cord	top Subj: pron, ellip Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

**Khalifa Stadium (7 km off Salwa Road):**

58

Khalifa Stadium	One of the most modern stadiums in the region, able to accommodate 45,000 people.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

**Rayyan Race Course:**

59

Much attention	is paid to breeding Arabian horses and camels.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

60

Race meetings	take place on Fridays and special occasions.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

**Khor al-Oudeid:**

61

Here in the most south-westerly point of the country	which rise around a bay to some 40 metres in height.
Theme: topic Adju: adv Unmarked	Rheme

62.

The best time to visit	is at sunrise or sunset when the sun casts dramatic shadows across this amazing landscape.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

63.

This	is also an area to observe wildlife and migratory birds.
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

**The Oryx Farm:**

64.

The state	takes much interest in the breeding and protection of the Arabian oryx (al-Wedaihi).
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

65.

The oryx farms in al-Shahaniyah and al-Zubara	comprise one of the largest of this rare herd in the world.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

**Al-Jassassiyah:**

66.

Al-Jassassiyah:	A chain of low rocky hills overlooking the blue waters of the Gulf.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

67.

Al-Jassassiyah:	A good place for a picnic, where one can look at the hundreds of prehistoric rockcarvings and enjoy a swim at neighbouring Fuwairat.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

**The Zoo (Salwa Road):**

68.

Besides the vast collection of animals,	the zoo comprises an information office, child care rooms and a cafeteria.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

**Traditional Crafts****Weaving**

69.

Weaving	is one of the oldest traditional crafts in the Gulf region.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

70.

The Bedu people	are distinguished as weavers of a special kind of textile from the exclusive use of the wool of their flocks.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

71.

The wool	is spun into yarn by the Bedu woman.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

72.

Then,	with the help of some very primitive tools	she weaves the yarn into those shapes and lengths required for the practical usages of the desert.
text Conj: cord	top Adju: adv Marked	Rheme
Theme		

## Jewellery

73.

Work in precious metals	is a very old Qatari tradition.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

74.

Gold, silver and various kinds of precious stones	are still used extensively.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

75a

The Qatari goldsmith	specializes mainly in ornaments worn by women,
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

75b

but,	he	often as well, works in the encrustation of swords and daggers.
text Conj: cord	top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

76a

Most of the decorations used	are inspired by Islamic patterns,
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

76b

but	ϕ	often incorporating local traditional designs.
text Conj: cord	top Subj: pron, ellip Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

**Traditional Dress**

77.

The Qatari dress	is centuries old.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

78.

It	was designed to fit the climatic conditions and to comply with Islamic rules that have firm roots in the Qatari traditions.
Theme: top, Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

**Women's Dress**

79.

Al-Bukhnouq:	The most popular among Qatari dresses.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

80.

It	is worn by young girls as headcover reaching the waist at the front and to the feet at the back.
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

81.

The material used	is usually transparent silk embroidered in gold (Zari).
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

**Al-Bushiyyeh (al-Ghushwah):**

82.

Al-Bushiyyeh (al-Ghushwah):	A cover considered as part of the veil, sewn usually in semi-transparent black cotton or silk.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

**Thobe Al-Nashl:**

83.

Thobe Al-Nashl:	A traditional dress in transparent silk usually of bright colours especially purple, and embroidered in gold.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

84.

Ad-Darra'a:	A woman's dress in dark blue silk embroidered in gold and silver and usually worn under the Thobe al-Nashl.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

85.

Many among Qatari women	Wear the Battulah, a traditional cover for the face embroidered with minute arabesques at the border.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

**Men's Wear**

86.

Men's clothes	are characterised by simplicity, consisting of a long thobe or dishdasha, usually white, and underneath a pair of long white trousers.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

87.

The headcover	consists of a white square cloth folded diagonally (Ghutrah) and a black double rope (Uqal) to fix the Ghutrah in its place.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

88.

Men's wear	is usually devoid of any embroidery.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

89.

The white colour favoured by Islam	helps also to reflect the hot sun rays during the long summer season.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

90.

In winter,	wool thobes of dark colour are worn by most Qataris.
Theme: top Adju: Prep Phr Marked	Rheme

91.

Both men and women	wear cloaks as part of the required dress.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

92.

Women's <i>cloaks</i>	are called <i>Abaya</i> and men's cloaks <i>Bisht</i> .
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

93

The <i>Abaya</i>	is usually in black silk while the <i>Bisht</i> is woven from camel hair coloured in black, brown, white or beige.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

94.

The <i>Abaya</i>	is worn by women almost all the time while men put on their <i>Bshut</i> (plural of <i>Bisht</i> ) on official visits or special occasions only.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

95.

Both types of cloaks	have embroidery on the border.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme



96.

This fine work which requires a lot of skill and patience	is done in six stages.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

**APPENDIX B4****Theme Analysis of Text 4 about Doha****Geography**

1.

The State of Qatar	is situated half-way along the western coast of the Arabian Gulf.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

2.

It	consists of a Peninsula projecting northwards approximately 160 kms. into the Gulf.
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

3.

At its widest point,	the Peninsula measures about 80 kms. across from coast to coast.
Them: top Adju: Prep Phr Marked	Rheme

4.

The total area of the country	is 11.437 square kms.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

5.

The capital	is Doha.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

6.

Local time in Qatar	is GMT - 3 hours
Them: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

**The Climate**

7.

The climate	is characterised by a mild winter and a hot summer with high levels of humidity.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

8.

The weather	is generally pleasant during the period from October to May.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

9.

Occasionally, text Adju: Modal	during winter Theme: top Adju: Prep Phr Marked	heavy rainfall and thunderstorms may occur. Rheme
Theme		

**Population**

10.

The present population of Qatar	is estimated at approximately 372.00.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

11.

The majority of the population	is centred in and around Doha.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

**Language**

12.

The official language in Qatar	is Arabic.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

13a

English	is also widely understood	
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme	

13b

and	ϕ	spoken in the country.
text Conj: cord	top Subj: pron, ellip Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

14.

A number of useful courtesy expressions in Arabic	is given on page 38.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

**Religion**

15a

Islam	is the religion of Qatar,	
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme	

15b

and	the Holy Koran	is the Moslem Holy book.
text Conj: cord	top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

16a

This	is the belief that there is only one God and Mohammed is His prophet	
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme	

16b

and	Mohammed	is His prophet
text Conj: cord	top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

17.

Moslems	must cleanse and pray five times a day, before dawn, at midday, in the latter part of the afternoon, at sunset and in the evening.	
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme	

18.

The worshippers	face towards Mecca.	
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme	

19.

Moslems	must give 2.5% of their property in charity to the poor annually.	
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme	

20.

Moslems who are of responsible age, in fairly good health and financially capable	must make the pilgrimage (Hajj) to Mecca once in life time.	
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme	

## The GOVERNMENT

21.

The Government	is headed by H.H. Sheik Khalifa bin Hamad Al-Thani, the Emir of the State of Qatar, who assumed full powers as Head of State on 22nd February, 1972.	
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme	

22.

H.H. Sheik Hamad bin Khalifa Al-Thani	is the Heir Apparent, Minister of Defence, and Commander-in-Chief of the Armed forces.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

23.

The advisory Council, composing notable senior members of Qatari society,	was convened for the first time on 15th May, 1972.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

24.

The Council	reviews and advises on proposals related to State affairs and legislation.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

### Currency and Banking

25.

The currency in Qatar	is the Qatari Riyal (QR.) which has full international monetary fund backing.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

26.

At present	there are no restrictions on money transfers into or out of Qatar
Theme: top Adju: Prep Phr Marked	Rheme

27.

and	it is normally possible	to effect remittances in any currency.
text Conj: cord	Theme: top Themd Comnt Marked	Rheme
Theme		

28.

Bank notes	are in circulation in denominations of 500 riyals, 100 riyals, 50 riyals, 10 riyals, 5 riyals and one riyal (one riyal = 100 dirhams).
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

29.

There	are coins of 50 dirhams, 25 dirhams, 10 dirhams, 5 dirhams and one dirham. (US\$ = QR 3.65 approximately).
Theme: top Subj Unmarked	Rheme

### OTHER PLACES OF INTEREST

30.

The following	are places of interest that you may wish to visit during your stay in Qatar.
Theme : top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

### Qatar National Museum

31.

Qatar National Museum for which the Department of Tourism and Antiquities is responsible,	is unique in the region and one of the finest projects of its kind in the Arab world.
Theme : top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

32.

The old palace which forms the nucleus of the museum complex,	is a fine example of the style of architecture and the way of life of the Qatari people in the pre-oil era.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

33.

The various rooms	contain displays of clothing and utensils used in daily life.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

34.

The new building	houses a detailed presentation of the country's history and development through sections which include archaeological finds, a bedouin tent, a natural history section and an illustrated explanation of the oil industry in Qatar.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

35.

The lagoon	houses a new open tank, which will enable Visitor to look at big fish (i.e. sharks and sting rays) through a tower area and a walkway built in the lagoon.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

36.

Also	in the lagoon,	you can see a traditional dhow of the type used for pearl-diving and trade.
text Adju: conj	top Adju: Prep Phr Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

37.

The aquarium, popular with Visitor and residents alike,	contains many types of fish and marine life found in the waters around Qatar.
Theme: top Subj: NG	Rheme

38a

This section	also tells the story of Qatar's links with the sea over the ages
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

38b

and	there	are some beautiful pearls on display.
text Conj: cord	top Subj Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		



**Doha Fort & Windtower House**

39.

Two ancient architectural structures which still exist in Qatar	are the windtower and Doha Fort.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

40.

The Windtower	is open on its four sides which provides both ventilation and a cooling effect to the rooms inside the house throughout the summer.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

41.

Doha Fort, an old building in downtown Doha,	offers the visitor the chance to buy genuine handwoven bedouin handicraft
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

**Parks**

42.

There	are several parks in Doha, such as Al-Muntazah Park and the Airport Garden, with lawn, shaded rest areas, fountains, restaurants, and children's playgrounds.
Theme: top Subj Unmarked	Rheme

43a

Also	the area along the Corniche	has been nicely landscaped with lawns and palm trees,
text Adju: conj	top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

Theme

43b

and	$\phi$	is popular for jogging, walking and small family outings.
text Conj: cord	top Subj: pron, ellip Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

**The Zoo**

44.

Situated just outside Doha,	the zoo houses a wide variety of animals and birds from various parts of the world.
Theme: top $\beta$ NFT CI Marked	Rheme

45.

It	also comprises an information office, child care rooms and a restaurant.
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

**Al-Wakrah**

46.

Al Wakra	is a trading and fishing town halfway between Doha and Umm Said.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

47.

Wakrah museum	is situated near the old harbour in a traditional house which has been restored.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

48a

It	houses many interesting artifacts from a bygone era
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

48b

and	ϕ	is well worth a visit.
text Conj: cord	top Subj: pron, ellip Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

**Al-Khor**

49.

Al-Khor	is an old Qatari town in the north, famous for its traditional harbour.	
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme	

50.

Look out	for the 2 watchtowers at the end of the Corniche.	
Theme: top Imperative Unmarked	Rheme	

51.

Al-Khor museum	is situated in the Old Customs House just off the picturesque habroun, where you can watch the fishermen drying their catches in the sun	
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme	

52.

Al-Khor gardens	are located a few kilometers past the turnoff for the town of Khor on the North Road.	
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme	

53.

It	is well sign-posed.	
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme	

54.

There	are green lawns, a pond, children's play area, restaurants and barbecue facilities
Theme: top Subj Unmarked	Rheme

55a

Families	are encouraged to picnic
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

55b

but	φ	are requested to throw their litter in the many bins provided.
text Conj: cord	top Subj: pron, ellip Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

**Zubarah**

56.

Zubarah fort	is located in the North (turn left at the police post on the North Road).
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

57.

Zubarah	is also the site of a previous town of which still some of the foundations are still visible.
Theme : top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

**Khoral-Udeid**

58.

Khoral-Udeid ("The Inland Sea"): Here in the most south-easterly part of the country	are Qatar's most impressive sand dunes which rise around a bay to some 40 metres in height.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

59.

At sunrise or sunset	the sun casts dramatic shadows across the amazing land-scape.
Theme: top Adju: Prep Phr Marked	Rheme

60.

For a visit to Khoral-Udeid,	a 4-wheel drive car is necessary.
Theme: top Adju: adv Marked	Rheme

61.

This	is also a good area to observe wild life and migratory birds.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

## APPENDIX B5

<b>Theme Analysis of Text 5 about Doha</b>
--

**Information for the Visitor**

1.

Qatar	is one of the smaller Arab Gulf States in terms of geographical area and population.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

2.

However,	the role played by Qatar in promoting greater understanding of the Arab World in the West, coupled with the example it has set in drawing up and implementing a comprehensive yet balanced domestic development plan,	have, in recent years, enhanced the political stature and image of the young state.
text Adju: conj	top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

**QATAR**

3.

The peninsula of Qatar	is a small State, jutting northwards into the Gulf at a length of about 160 Kms.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

4a

Its maximum width	reaches 85 kms
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

4b

and	ϕ	covers an area of 11'437, including may islands.
text Conj: cord	top Subj: pron, ellip Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

5.

Its population	is nearly 500,000 of which the majority live in and around Doha, administrative centre and capital.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

6.

Qatar, with territory on both the country's East and West coast,	enjoys a refreshing range of a variety of landscapes, and some of the most beautiful picnic areas.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

7.

The desert	is one of the most popular areas in the country.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

8a

Qatar	values its traditions
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

8b

and	ϕ	has taken care to preserve many elements of its history.
text Adju: cord	top Subj: pron, ellip Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

9.

Both government and its people	are firmly attached to the present with a sharp eye upon planning for the future.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

10.

In less than 40 years	this small nation has grown, from dependence upon a dwindling pearling and trading economy, to become an oil-rich country which was then furthered by the finds of natural gas.
Theme: top Adju: adv Marked	Rheme

**GOVERNMENT**

11.

The State of Qatar	proclaimed its independence, from the 1916 Anglo-Qatari treaty, and thus from the British domination over the Gulf countries and Qatar, on September 03, 1971.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

12a

The Emir Sheik Khalifa bin Hamad Al-Thani	took up the reigns of power on February 22, 1972 with the support of the people,
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

12b

and	ϕ	has since led the country's development.
text Adju: cord	top Subj: pron, ellip Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

13.

In May 1977	H.H. The Emir decreed the appointment of H.H. Sheik Hamad bin Khalifa Al-Thani as Heir apparent, Minister of Defence and Commander in Chief of the armed forces.
Theme : top Adju: Prep Phr Marked	Rheme



## CLIMATE

14.

Qatar	has a "moderate desert" climate, i.e. one in which the seasonal and day temperature extremes of inland desert regions are moderated by the Gulf's sea breezes.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

15.

The fact that Qatar is so flat in profile	results in low levels of precipitation (5 to 7 cm per year) and moderate humidity compared to some of the other Gulf countries.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

16.

When it does rain, generally around December-January,	rain showers can be very heavy and are sometimes accompanied by hail.
Theme: top $\beta$ DP Cl Marked	Rheme

17.

In winter	the weather tends to be sunny and quite pleasant in the day, with noticeably cooler nights.
Theme: top Adju: Prep Phr Marked	Rheme

18.

The average January temperature	is 7 C.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

19.

This	contrast sharply with the almost unbearable heat of the mid-summer when the nights are only just cool enough, at around 22 C. to bring much relief from the searing daytime heat which can go as high as 52C.
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

20.

Even at this time,	however, northerly winds tend to moderate the air temperature and in the process lower humidity levels.
Theme: top Adju: Prep Phr Marked	Rheme

21a

However,	air-conditioning	is a very common thing
text Adju: cord	top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

Theme

21b

and	all buildings, offices, stores and cars	are equipped with this.
text Adju: cord	top Subj: NG Unmarked	

Theme

22a

The sea temperature in winter	is usually around 20/22 C.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

22b

and	it	can get as low as 15 C in coastal shallows, thus ideal for watersports all year around.
text Conj: cord	top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

Theme

**HERITAGE**

23.

DOHA	has expanded into a charming modern city full of palaces, mosques, fountains and souqs, where the old and contemporary architecture blend in perfect harmony.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

24.

The Grand Mosque, with its multiple domes and majestic chandeliers and the new Abu Bakr Al-Siddiq and Umar Ibn Al-Khattab mosques, built in traditional Islam style	are worth a visit.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

25.

The Qatar National Library	houses a rich collection of books, rare volumes and manuscripts.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

26.

The National Museum, located in an Old Palace which forms the nucleus of the museum complex,	is a fine example of architecture and the way of the life of the Qatari people in the pre-oil era.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

27.

The various rooms	contain displays of clothing and utensils used in daily life.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

28.

The new building	houses a detailed presentation of the country's history and development through sections which include archaeological finds, a bedouin tent, a natural history section and an illustrated explanation of the oil industry in Qatar.
Theme : top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

29.

The aquarium and lagoon	contain many types of fish and marine life found in the waters around Qatar.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

30.

Needless to say	ϕ	worth a visit.
int Adju: Modal	top Subj: pron , ellip Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

31.

Doha	has a beautiful Corniche which stretches along the edge of the bay.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

32.

There	are several Parks, ideal for family ventures.
Theme: top Subj Unmarked	Rheme

33.

Doha Zoo	offers visitors the opportunity to see a wide variety of animals and birds from all over the world.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

34.

The Arabian horse stables, at the Rayyan Racetrack,	are of interest as there are many purebred and halfbreeds stabled there.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

35.

And	of course,	during the season ,	a visit to the tracks are fun.
text Conj: cord	int Adju: Modal	top Adju: Prep Phr Marked	Rheme
Theme			

36.

Two ancient architectural structures which still exist in Qatar	are the windtower (badgir) open on its four sides which provides both ventilation and a cooling effect to the rooms inside the house throughout the summer.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

37.

The Doha Fort, an old fort in downtown Doha,	offers the chance to buy genuine hand-woven bedouin handicrafts.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

38.

Some other places of interest	are Wakra; situated halfway between Doha and Umm Said, a trading and fishing town.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

39a

The museum, displaying many artifacts from the past and well worth a visit,	is housed in a restored, traditional, local house
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

39b

and	ϕ	can be found near the old harbour.
text Conj: cord	top Subj: pron, ellip Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

40.

Al Khor, in the north of Qatar,	has preserved many features of local architecture.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

41

φ	Famous for its harbour and the two ancient watchtowers at the end of the attractive new Corniche.
Theme: top Subj: pron, ellip Unmarked	Rheme

42.

Also	famed for the garden, found a few kilometres past the turnoff for the town Al- Khor on the North Road)	it is an ideal venue for restaurants.
text Adju: conj	top NFT Cl Marked	Rheme
Theme		

43.

Barbecue facilities	are available.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

44a

The town of Zubara	has long since been deserted
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

44b

but	visible foundations	indicate a little of the pre-oil.
text Conj: cord	top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

45a

Zubara Fort	is a fine example of the rich cultural heritage of Qatar's yesteryears.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

45b

(turn	left at the Police Post on the North Road).
Theme: top Imperative Unmarked	Rheme

46.

Khoral-Udeed-The inland Sea-	is in the most South Easterly area of Qatar.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

47.

The bay of water	is surrounded by sand dunes which rise as high as 40 meters.
Theme top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

48.

Sand dunes	indeed are an attraction in themselves.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

49.

Qatar	has some of the most picturesque sand desert and dune wilderness, running inland in great billows of sand from the West Coast.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

50.

There	are areas of pure dunes, like the challenging sands near Umm Said which are so popular.
Theme: top Subj Unmarked	Rheme

51.

The sand	is fine, fading from a pale cream color near the coast to deep orangy red more inland.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

52a

The dunes	are short and steep, a challenge to adventurous desert drivers
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

52b

and	φ	offer the ultimate excitement to dune drivers.	
text Conj: cord	top Subj: pron ,ellip Unmarked	Rheme	
Theme			

53.

The thrill of driving through virgin desert and golden sands	is an experience not to miss.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

54a

Novices to the sport	are advised always to travel in convoys
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

54b

and	it is easy	to get stuck in the soft sand	
text Conj: cord	top β Themd: Comnt Marked		
Theme			

54c

and	there	are no roadside telephones to ring for aid.	
text Conj: cord	top Subj Unmarked	Rheme	
Theme			

55a

Even experts	can easily become stuck		
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme		

55b

and	often	the only way out	is a tow from another vehicle.
text Conj: cord	inter Adju: Modal	top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme
Theme			



56.

Camping in the desert or dunes	has become popular pastimes for residents and tourists, following the footsteps of the Bedouin of long ago.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

57.

As an offshoot of these desert safaris,	a new sport was born, sand skiing.
Theme : top Adju: adv Marked	Rheme

58.

A lot of fun	can be had by skiing and surfing down the dunes, using a 4-wheel drive to ferry the skiers back to the summit.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

59.

Western-style sports and leisure activities	have become very popular.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

60.

This	is not due only to the large influx of expatriates, but also to the great interest shown by the local population.
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

61.

The major hotels,	are all equipped with extensive recreational club facilities and private beaches.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

62.

The climate	is ideal for out-door sports such as windsurfing, waterskiing, sailing, jet-skiing to name but a few.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

63.

Dhow, the traditional fishing boats,	are for hire by the half day, day or evening.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

64a

Barbecues on the beach	are a favourite alternative to a party indoors,
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

64b

and	fishing trips in search of delicious Hammour and red snapper or even some fair-sized fish	are an exciting to spend a day.
text Adju: cord	top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

65.

One activity not offered by the hotels, but nonetheless available	is horse riding.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

66a

The Qatar Equestrian Club	branched out in this field some years ago
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

66b

and	it	has become a very popular activity with both experienced riders and novices, particularly children.
text Conj: cord	top Subj: pron Unmarked	
Theme		

67.

Trained instructors	are on hand to give lessons.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

68.

Common to nearly all clubs, at hotels and others,	is tennis and squash, the perfect social games for all ages.
Theme: top Adju: complement Marked	Rheme

69a

Professional coaching	is available
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

69b

and	there	are many tournaments and competitions for all levels of ability, of which the A.T.P. Qatar Open Tennis Tournament is the most famous.
text Conj: cord	top Subj Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

70.

Also,	the Qatar International Squash Championship	is becoming world renowned.
text Adju: conj	top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

71.

Not all facilities	are based in the hotels, however.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

72.

There	are many clubs for different activities such as bowling, billiards, diving, golf, martial arts, massage, and gymnastics.
Theme: top Subj Unmarked	Rheme

**Religion**

73a

The official religion	is Islam
Theme : top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

73b

and	most Qataris	are Sunni Moslems.
text Conj: cord	top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

74a

The State	lives by the laws of the Holy Quran
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

74b

and	ϕ	instills religious principles into the people.
text Conj: cord	top Subj: pron, ellip Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

75a

Moslems	pray five times a day
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

75b

and	ϕ	fast from dawn to dusk during the holy month of Ramadan when non-moslems are also expected to refrain from eating, drinking and smoking in public.
text Conj: cord	top Subj: pron, ellip Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

76.

Moslems	are required to donate one-fortieth of their property to the poor, Zakat, and to endeavour to make the pilgrimage Haj, to the holy city of Mecca, at least once during their lifetime if their means permit them to do so.
Theme : top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

## EXPATRIATE SCHOOLS

77.

In addition to the local Arabic Schools,	Qatar offers several English Speaking Schools styled on the British National Curriculum.
top Adju: Prep Phr Marked	Rheme

78.

Schools specialising in American, Indian Egyptian, French, Japanese, Filipino, and Pakistan Syllabus'	can also be found.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

## SHOPPING

79.

Qatar	has several department stores and a plethora of souqs where everything (except banned substances or foodstuffs) can be bought.
Theme : top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

**PROHIBITED IMPORTS**

80.

Qatar Customs	will not allow the following items into the country: Weapons and ammunition Fireworks Obscene pictures or magazines Narcotics and dangerous drugs Counterfeit coins and/or banknotes Alcohol Pork products
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

**PETS**

81.

Expatriates	are allowed to bring their pets to Qatar.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

82.

A valid health certificate issued by a veterinarian registered with the Public Health Authorities in the country of departure	must be produced for pets imported into Qatar.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

83.

Although there is no known rabies in the country,	all imported animals must be immunised against this disease.
Theme: top $\beta$ DP CI Marked	Rheme

84.

The Government-run Veterinary Centres'	Are augmented by private clinics in and around the capital.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

85.

There	is one private veterinary clinic which offers boarding facilities for pets.
Theme: top Subj Unmarked	Rheme

**DRESS RESTRICTIONS**

86a.

Qatar	is an Islamic State
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

86b

and	as a courtesy to our hosts,	expatriates should wear modest clothing.
text Conj: cord	Theme: top β Themd Comnt Marked	Rheme
Theme		

87.

Women in particular	are advised not to shop in vest-top or shorts although this is perfectly acceptable for the poolside or club.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

**Holidays**

88.

Friday	is the Moslem day of rest and all offices and most large shops are closed.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

89.

The major holidays observed in Qatar	are the Eid al-fitr and Eid aladha which both last about three days.
Theme : top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

90a

The Eid al Fitr	follows the end of the fasting month of Ramadan which comes forward about ten days each year
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

90b

and	Id aladha	occurs about ten weeks later.
text Conj: cord	top Subj: NG Unmarked	
Theme		

91.

It is not possible	to give exact dates as these are dependent on the lunar calendar
Theme: top $\beta$ Themd: Comnt Marked	Rheme

92.

Independence Day, 3rd September	is also a fixed national one day holiday.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

### Entry Points and Regulations

93.

There	are three points of entry to Qatar: by air through Doha International Airport; and by sea through the ports of Doha and Umm Said.
Theme: top Subj Marked	Rheme

94.

Entry by land	is made through the two main border points at Abu Samra, frontier point with Saudi Arabia, and Soda Nathil on the joint border with the United Arab Emirates.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme



95.

To enter the country	it is necessary to have a valid passport and an entry visa issued either by the Ministry of interior in Doha or by a Qatari resident diplomatic mission abroad.
Theme: top $\beta$ Adju: NFT C1 Marked	Rheme

96.

Persons holding employment contracts to work in Qatar	are granted Residence permits
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

97a

7-day visas	are granted to businessmen provided they are sponsored by a local company,
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

97b

and	visitor visas for up to three months	are obtained upon application by a sponsor residing in Qatar.
text Conj: cord	top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

98.

The Qatar Chamber of Commerce (Tel: 425131), the embassies and banks	will all provide useful information on commercial and business affairs.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

### Hours of Business

99.

Government offices	are open from 06.00 to 13.00 daily from Saturday to Thursday.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

100.

Banks	are open from 07.30 to 11,30.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

101.

Commercial offices	normally open 07.30 to 12.30 and between 14.30 and 15.30 to 18.00.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

102.

Information business discussions	often extend into the evening.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

**Currency/Measures**

103.

The unit of currency	is the Qatar Riyals which is divided into 100 Dirhams.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

104.

Currency	is issued by the Qatar Monetary Agency.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

105.

Denominations	are issued as follows: Qatar riyals: 1, 5, 10, 50, 100 and 500 Dirhams: 1, 5, 10, 25 and 50.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

106.

The metric system	is in general use in Qatar.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

107.

The electricity supply	is 240 volts AC.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

108.

50 Hz Plugs	are usually 13 Amp. although 5 and 15 Amp. sockets are found in older buildings.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

109.

For airconditioners,	15 and 20 Amp. plugs are used in older buildings while flex outlets are required in newer constructions.
Theme: top Adju: adv	Rheme

### Medical facilities

110.

Free medical and dental treatment	is available for everyone, resident or visitor.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

111a

Treatment by general practitioners	is provided at the clinics mentioned below
Theme : top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

111b

and	hospital treatment	is available at Hamad Medical corporation (Tel: 446446).
text Conj: cord	top Subj: NG Unmarked	

Theme

112.

Maternity and gynaecological cases	are seen at the Women's Hospital (Tel: 466466).
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

113.

There	are also a number of doctors and dentists in private practice in Doha.
Theme: top Subj Unmarked	Rheme

114.

The address and telephone numbers of the duty pharmacy, which is open all night,	are published each week in the Gulf Times.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

**APPENDIX B6****Theme Analysis of Text 6 about Doha**

1a

Take	a wide gently curving bay, clear blue seas and a multimillion dollar development programme
Theme: top Imperative Unmarked	Rheme

1b

and	you	have the ingredients for modern Doha, the capital of Qatar.
text Conj: cord	top Subj, pron Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

2.

Once a small but important fishing and trading town along the southern shores of the Gulf,	today it is the showpiece city of an important oil state.
Theme: top Adju: adv Marked	Rheme

3.

The recently opened Qatar National Museum with its traditional Islamic architecture and lagoon, which provides sanctuary for the traditional fishing dhow,	is a focal point along the dual carriage-wayseafont corniche.
Theme : top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

4.

Modern styles of architecture	are evident in the multi-storey government ministry buildings, many of which also stand along the waterfront.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

5a

Doha	has a population of over 130,000 people, and is fast expanding.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

5b

and	$\phi$	is fast expanding
text Conj: cord	top Subj: pron, ellip Unmarked	
Theme		

6a

Accounting for more than half the country's population,	the city has doubled in only five years
Theme: top $\beta$ NFT CI Marked	Rheme

6b

and	efforts to meet current and predicted demand	creates an impression of a gigantic building site.
text Conj: cord	top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

7.

The city	already provides all the services to be expected of any capital.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

8.

$\phi$	Modern luxury hotels, hospitals and schools.
Theme: top Subj: pron, ellip Unmarked	Rheme

9.

φ	A new souq and shopping facilities for local residents and international travellers alike.
Theme: top Subj: pron, ellip Unmarked	Rheme

10.

In the suburbs	is Khalifa Town, comprising free or low-cost housing which is both a model of the country's welfare services and an example of how the housing problem is being tackled with a sense of urgency and determination.
Theme: top Adju: Prep Phr Marked	Theme

11.

Only a few minutes from the city centre	is Doha International Airport, providing easy communications with the other capitals of the world and well served by the major airlines.
Theme: top Adju: adv Marked	Rheme

12.

There	are also air conditioned cinemas, a National Theatre and a 40.000-seat turfed stadium.
Theme: top Subj Unmarked	Rheme

13.

In addition to the existing parks,	a zoological and botanical garden is planed.
Theme: top Adju: Prep Phr Marked	Rheme

14a

Plans for future expansion	are ambitious
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Theme

14b

and	$\phi$	include the West Bay project which will almost provide a completely new town on reclaimed land.
text Conj: cord	top Subj: pron, ellip Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

15.

It	is to include the University of the Lower Gulf and a giant pyramid-shaped hotel and conference complex.
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

16.

When completed	They must surely provide one of the most impressive cities on the Gulf.
Theme: top $\beta$ DP CI Marked	Rheme



## APPENDIX B7

<b>Theme Analysis of Text 7 about Doha</b>
--

### QATAR IN BRIEF

#### Head of State

1.

His highness Sheik Khalifa bin Hamad Al-Thani, Emir of the state of Qatar,	acceded on 22nd February 1972.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

2.

In 1977,	the Emir appointed his eldest son Sheikh Hamad bin Khalifa Al-Thani as Heir Apparent, Minister of Defence and commander-in-chief of armed forces.
Theme: top Adju: Prep Phr Marked	Rheme

#### Flag

3.

The flag of the State of Qatar	is maroon and white with a nine point zigzag interlock.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

#### Language

4a

Arabic	is the official language
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

4b

but	English	is widely spoken and understood.
text Adju: cord	top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

**Religion**

5a

Islam	is the official religion of the state	
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme	

5b

and	the Islamic law	is the principal source and the foundation of the legal system.
text Adju: cord	top Subj: Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

**Climate**

6.

Qatar	has a desert climate of hot summer and relatively warm winter.	
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme	

7.

In the summer,	the weather temperature ranges between 25 and 46 degrees centigrade.	
Theme: top Adju: Prep Phr Marked	Rheme	

8a

Rainfall in the winter	is minimal	
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme	

8b

and	on average	ϕ	does not exceed 75.2 mm per year.
text Conj: cord	int Adju: Modal	top Subj: pron, ellip Unmarked	Rheme
Theme			

**Currency**

9a

The Qatari riyal	is the unit of currency
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

9b

and	ϕ	is divided into 100 dirhams.
text Conj: cord	top Subj: pron, ellip Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

10a

Qatari Riyals:	1,5,50,100 & 500
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

10b

Dirhams:	10, 25 & 50 U.S.\$ 1+ QR 3.65
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

**Electricity**

11.

The electricity supply	is 240/215 volts AC, 50 Hz.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

**Geography**

12.

Qatar	is situated halfway along the western coast of the Arabian Gulf.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

13.

The country	is a peninsula covering an area of 11,437 square km, jutting northwards into the sea.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

14.

Its highest altitude	is 40 meters above sea level.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

**Entry Regulations**

15

All visitors to Qatar	should possess a valid passport.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

16

Visa requirements	should be checked well in advance.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

17.

The Qatar government	allows four types of visa. 14 days transit visa. A 7 day visa granted to visitors for business purposes A visitor visa for up to 3 months obtained only upon application by a sponsor residing in Qatar. A residence visa renewable from 1 to 3 years granted to persons holding employment contracts to work in Qatar.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

**MAIN TOWNS**

18a

DOHA: Capital of the country and the seat of the Government,	situated in the middle of the eastern coast of Qatar,
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

18b

and	in it	Are Ministries and Government Departments and Commercial corporations.
text Conj: cord	top Adju: Prep Phr Marked	Rheme
Theme		

19a

<b>Umm Said:</b>	Situated on the coast, in the south-eastern side of the country;	
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked		

19b

its establishment	was connected with the emergence of oil in the State of Qatar where oil export terminal was established, to export the petroleum from onshore fields in Dukhan;	
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme	

19c

and	ϕ	is about 36 kilometers from Doha.
text Conj: cord	top Subj: pron, ellip Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

20a

<b>Al-Khor:</b>	One of the old towns, famous of its fold sea port where fishing dhows and small boats anchor and of its tourists shores;	
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme	

20b

the town	is about 57 km from Doha.	
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme	

21a

<b>Al-Shamal:</b> Situated on the north coast, (far north of the country)	is a new town built to be a center for a number of coastal village in the area,
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

21b

and	ϕ	is about 107 kilometres from Doha
text Conj: cord	top Subj: pron, ellip Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

22a

<b>Wakra:</b>	Situated halfway between Doha and Umm Said;
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

22b

residents	are engaged in trading and fishing.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

23.

<b>Wakrah town</b>	has a small harbour, and monumental old houses.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

24.

<b>The town</b>	is about 15 kilometers from Doha.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

25.

<b>Dukhan:</b>	Situated on the western coast of the State of Qatar.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

26a

The town	attained great attention since the discovery of oil in the ashore wells around it,
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

26b

and	ϕ	have become a centre of the onshore operation, Qatar General Petroleum Corporation.
text Adju: cord	top Subj: pron, ellip Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

27.

Dukhan	is about 84 kilometers from Doha.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

28a

Umm-Bab:	Located south of Dukhan town,
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

28b

oil and gas pipeline accumulator which carry the crude oil and gas to Umm Said for export	is also found there.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

29.

Umm Bab	is about 85 kilometers from Doha.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

30a

Umm Slal Mohammed:	Fall on the main road between Doha and Al-Khor,
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

30b

The town	is about 21 kilometers from Doha.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

31a

<b>Umm Slal Ali:</b>	Situated nearly half way between Doha and Khor,
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

31b

this town	almost forms one town with Umm Slal Mohammed,
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

31c

and	that	due to the fast architectural spread in both town and as the distance between them does not exceed few kilometers.
text Conj: cord	top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

**Places of Interest****Qatar National Museum**

32a

Qatar National Museum	is unique in the region
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

32b

and	ϕ	one of the finest projects of its kind in the Arab world.
text Conj: cord	top Subj: pron, ellip Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		



33

The museum	was established on the wishes of H.H. the Emir Sheik Khalifa bin Hamad Al-Thani, who made the official opening in 1975.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

**WHAT TO SEE**

34.

The old palace, which forms the nucleus of the museum complex,	is a fine example of the style of architecture and the way of life of Qatari people in the preoil era.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

35.

The various rooms	contain displays of clothing and utensils in daily life.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

36.

A detailed presentation of the country's history and development through sections	which include archaeological finds, a Bedouin tent, a natural history section and illustrated explanation of oil industry in Qatar.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

37.

The lagoon	was actually a natural extension of the sea, where from water is pumped through pipes below the corniche.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

38a

Floating there	are natural size models of dhows
Theme: top Adju: Compl Marked	Rheme

38b

and	the aquarium, popular with visitors and residents alike,	contains many types of fish and marine life found in waters around Qatar.
text Conj: cord	top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

39.

This section	also tells the story of Qatar's links with the sea over the ages.	
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme	

**BARAZAN TOWER**

40.

This tower	is situated in Umm Salal Mohammed to the west of Al-Shamal Road, and at a distance of 20 kilometers from Doha town.	
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme	

41a

There	is a unique kind of watch towers and residence in the Gulf area, as it takes rectangular shape	
Theme: top Subj Unmarked	Rheme	

41b

and	ϕ	is formed of three levels
text Conj: cord	top Subj: pron, ellip Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

41c

and	ϕ	has staircase from outside for reaching the upper level and, of which is decorated with dentated terraces;
text Conj: cord	top Subj: pron, ellip Unmarked,	Rheme
Theme		

41d

the tower	is built of stones, mud and gypsum.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

**DOHA ETHNOGRAPHIC MUSEUM (The Windtower House)**

42.

This	is the only wind tower house of its kind remaining in Doha.
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

43.

It	was built in 1935.
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

44.

It	is of the badgir type: a square structure with opening on all four sides to ensure a continuous airflow which, in turn, provides the inner rooms of the house with both ventilation and cooling during the summer season.
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

**AL-KOUT FORT**

45.

AL-KOUT FORT	One of the Doha's fortresses situated in the centre of the city.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

46.

It	was built in 1880.
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

**AL-WAJJBAH FORT**

47.

Al-Wajbah fort	is considered the oldest fort in Qatar, built during the 19th century.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

48.

The fort	witnessed a famous battle in which the people of Qatar under the leadership of Sheik Qassim bin Mohammed Al-Thani, the ruler of Qatar, won victory over the Ottoman forces in 1310 A.H. (1893 A.D.)
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

**Khor Museum**

49.

This museum	is situated in the old customs house just off the picturesque habroun, where you can watch the fishermen drying their catches in the sun.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

**AI-ZUBARAH FORT**

50.

AI-UBARAH FORT	lies 105 km away from Doha on the north western part of Qatar.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

51a

It	was built during the time of Sheik Abdullah bin Qassim Al-Thani by a group of local builder's.
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

51b

And	φ	is known for its high thick walls that end in battlements.
text Conj: cord	top Subj: pron, ellip Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

**WAKRAH MUSUM**

52.

WAKRAH MUSUM	is a traditional house which has been restored.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

53.

It	is too close to the old harbour.
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

54.

It	houses many interesting artifacts from a bygone era.
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

**POPULAR CRAFTS****SADW CRAFT:**

55.

Sadw craft	is one of the popular crafts that 'Badw' women are famous for.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

56.

After dyeing the sadw cloth, which is spun from lambs wool and camels' hair, with bright and beautiful colors, derived from the nature around the manufacturer,	It is usually woven by simple spindles and looms.
Theme: top β DP Cl Marked	Rheme

57.

The woven cloth	is used for manufacturing carpets, rugs, tents and abas (bishoot).
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

58.

This craft	was about to be effaced had it not been for the great efforts of the Gulf countries to support this craft by encouraging the manufacturers and saving, for them its complete needs to ensure its duration, in order to be a good witness for the creative talents of the desert human being.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

**BOATS CALKING 'KOLAFI':**

59.

Boats calking	is one of the oldest crafts inherited from fathers and grandfathers.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

60.

It	had begun as early as the beginning of inhabiting the Arabian Gulf shores.
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

61.

The chief materials used in this craft	are usually wood and ropes.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

62a

At the beginning,	palm leaves and ropes were the chief materials of this craft
Theme: top Adju: Prep Phr Marked	Rheme

62b

but,	later, and afterwards	red wood and teak wood, (one of the best kinds of wood).
text Conj: cord	top Adju: adv Marked	Rheme
Theme		

63.

The main centers for boats calking	are Al Rewis, Al Wakrah, Al Khour and Doha where the most of sea-people are centering.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

**POPULAR GARMENT 'MEBOROIDERY:**

64.

This craft	is an old craft that Qatar was famous for.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

65.

It	depends, usually, on embroidering garments with golden and silvery threads.
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

66.

The woman's dress	is always embroidered by covering the front and lower parts with these threads in a vertical way, in addition to the wide sleeves, the back and some other parts of the dress.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

67.

The front part of the Aba (Bisht), the man's dress,	is also embroidered with the same threads.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

68.

Some of the most famous women's dresses in Qatar	are: El Nashel, El Tawoose and El Darra'ah dresses, that have bright colors and are decorated with attractive artistic ornaments.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

**GOLD FORMATION:**

69.

This	was well known in all the gulf countries.
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

70.

It	was transferred, like many other crafts, from India to all the Gulf countries including Qatar.
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

71.

The Qatari goldsmith	has proved great skill in forming and decorating the gold works with designs derived from the nature around him with which he was deeply effected.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

72.

He	used the Turkish golden and silvery 'Lira', in addition to precious jewels in this craft.
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

73.

Some of the most famous women's jewelry	are: Al Merte'isha, Al Kaff, Al Khiwass and Al Shamilat which are made of gold and, silver and sometimes precious stones are added.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme



## APPENDIX B8

<b>Theme Analysis of Text 8 about Doha</b>
--

1a

The State of Qatar	is a Muslim Arab Country
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

1b

and	ϕ	is an active member of the Co-operation Council for the Arab States of the Gulf, the Arab League and the United Nations.
text Adj: cord	top Subj: pron, ellip Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

**GEOGRAPHY**

2.

Qatar	is situated halfway along the western coast of the Arabian Gulf.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

3.

The country	is a peninsula covering an area of 11,437 square km. jutting northwards into the sea.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

4.

Its highest altitude	is 40 metres above sea level.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

5.

The landscape of Qatar	is generally flat and low lying except for some modest hills and higher ground to the northwest, such as Dukhan, the rocky outcrops in the north and some scattered sandstone hills in Umm Said and southeast of the Peninsula.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

6.

Green areas	have been increasing in the past few years due to agricultural activities and landscaping sponsored by the government.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

**HEAD OF STATE**

7.

His Highness Sheik Khalifa Bin Hamad Al-Thani, Emir of the State of Qatar,	acceded on 22nd February 1972.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

8.

In 1977,	the Emir appointed his eldest son Sheik Hamad Bin Khalifa Al-Thani as Heir Apparent, Minister of Defence and Commander-in-Chief of the Armed Forces.
Theme: top Adju: Prep Phr Marked	Rheme

**FLAG**

9.

The flag of the State of Qatar	is maroon and white with a nine point zigzag interlock.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

**THE PEOPLE**

10.

Qatar being a part of the Arabian peninsula,	its people are descendants of ancient Arab origins.
Theme: top NFT Cl Marked	Rheme

11.

The present population of Qatar	is about 427,333 inhabitants, the majority of whom live in the capital city of Doha.
Theme : top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

12.

The highest population density of Doha and its suburbs	stems from the fact that the city is the country's financial and commercial centre.
Theme : top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

13.

Recent national planning	has encouraged more people to settle in the surrounding cities and towns.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

**LANGUAGE**

14a

Arabic	is the official language
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

14b

but	English	is widely spoken and understood.
text Conj: cord	top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

15.

French and Urdu	are also spoken.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

16.

The ability to speak a little Arabic and know the normal greetings	is highly appreciated.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

**CLIMATE**

17.

Qatar	has a desert climate with a long hot summer and mild winter with little rain.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

18.

Due to Qatar's land altitude,	the average humidity especially in the inland is lower compared with neighbouring regions in the Arabian Gulf.
Theme: top Adju: adv Marked	Rheme

19.

In April, May, October and November,	the weather is generally pleasant.
Theme: top Adju: Prep Phr Marked	Rheme

20.

The hottest time of the year	is between June and September.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

**CURRENCY**

21a

The Qatari Riyal	is the unit of currency
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

21b

and	ϕ	is divided into 100 dirhams.
text Adju: cord	top Subj: pron, ellip Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

22.

Currency	is issued by Qatar Monetary Agency.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

23.

Denominations	are issued as follows: Qatar Riyals: 1, 5, 10, 50, 100 & 500. Dirhams: 1, 5, 10, 25 & 50.(Us 1\$= 3.65)
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

**WEIGHTS AND MEASURES**

24.

The metric system	is in general use in Qatar.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

**ELECTRICITY**

25.

The electricity supply	is 240/215 volts AC, 50 Hz.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

**HOLIDAYS**

26..

The major holidays observed in Qatar	are as follows:  The Emir's Accession Day      22nd Feb. Eid al-Fitr                              about 4 days Eid al-Adha                              about 4 days Independence Day                      3rd September Hijri New Year                              1st. Muharram
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

**BUSINESS HOURS**

27.

Government offices	are open from 6 am to 1 pm (Saturday to Thursday), whilst commercial offices normally open from 7,30 am to 12,30 pm and then from 2 to 6 pm.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

**DOHA TIME**

28.

<b>DOHA TIME</b>	GMT+3 hours
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

**MEDICAL FACILITIES**

29.

Free medical and dental treatment	is available to all residents and visitors, through the many Health Centres in Qatar.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

30.

There	are also a number of doctors and dentists in private practice.
Theme: top Subj Unmarked	Rheme

31.

The telephone number and location of the duty pharmacy, which is open all night,	is published in the local newspaper Gulf Times.
Theme : top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

32a

Hamad General Hospital	446446
Theme : top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

32b

Rumailah Hospital	420555
Theme : top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

32c

Women's Hospital	429126
Theme : top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

32d

AL Sadd Children's Clinic	429126
Theme : top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

32e

Veterinary Clinic	853083
Theme : top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

## TRANSPORTATION

### 1.Buses:

33.

Doha's public bus service	Provides transportation to and from the neighbouring towns.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

### 2.Taxis:

34a

They	are easy to obtain
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

34b

and	ϕ	are distinguished by their orange and white color, in addition to yellow & black number plates.
text Conj: cord	top Subj: pron, ellip Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

35a

Meters	are used in all taxis
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

35b

and	the rates	vary according to the time of the day.
text Conj: cord	top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		



**CAR HIRE**

36.

Air conditioned cars	are available for hire from local Car Rental firms at a daily rate of approximately QR.100.00 for a medium size car and QR. 150.00 for a big car.
Theme : top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

37.

Insurance	is arranged by the Car Rental firm.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

**ENTRY REGULATIONS**

38.

All visitors to Qatar	should possess a valid passport.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

39.

Visa requirements	should be checked well in advance.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

40.

The Qatar government	allows four types of visas.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

41a

φ	A 48 hour transit visa.
Theme: top Subj: pron, ellip Unmarked	Rheme

41b

φ	A 7 day visa granted to visitors for business purposes.
Theme: top Subj: pron, ellip Unmarked	Rheme

41c

φ	A visitor's visa for up to 3 months obtained only upon application by a sponsor residing in Qatar.
Theme: top Subj: pron, ellip Unmarked	Rheme

41d

φ	A residence visa renewable from 1 to 3 years granted to persons
Theme: top Subj: pron, ellip Unmarked	Rheme

42.

<b>ENTRY POINTS</b>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. By land through two main border points at Abu Samra, frontier point with Saudi Arabia, and Sauda Nathil on the joint border with U.A.E.</li> <li>2. By air through Doha International Airport.</li> <li>3. By sea through the port of Doha and Umm Said.</li> </ol>
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

**CUSTOM REGULATIONS**

43.

Alcoholic beverages	are prohibited.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

44.

Up to 1lb. of tobacco	is allowed.
Theme: top Adju: adv Marked	Rheme

45.

There	is no limit to the amount of currency brought into or taken out.
Theme: top Subj Unmarked	Rheme

**HEALTH REGULATIONS**

46.

Vaccination and inoculation certificates against smallpox and cholera	are not compulsory.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

**Sightseeing Tours**

47a

Recent excavations	indicate that settlement in Qatar dates back to about 800 BC
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

47b

and	a long-term plan for developing Qatar's archaeological sites	Is under study by the Tourism and Antiquities Department of the Ministry of Information.
text Conj: cord	top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

48.

Many sites	are well signposted.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

49a

UMM SALAL MOHAMED	lies on the Doha-Khor highway
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

49b

and	φ	is distinguished by its old forts
text Conj: cord Unmarked	top Subj: pron, ellip Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

50a

UMM SALA ALI	is situated just beyond Umm Salal Mohamed
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

50b

and,	like its neighbouring town,	its economy depends on trade.
text Conj: cord	top Adju: adv Marked	Rheme
Theme		

**KHOR AL-OUDEID:**

51.

Here in the most southeasterly part of the country	is Qatar's most impressive sand dunes which rise around a bay to some 40 metres in height.
Theme: top Adju: adv Marked	Rheme

52.

The best time to visit	is at sunrise or sunset when the sun casts dramatic shadows across the amazing landscape.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

53.

This	is also a good area to observe wildlife and migratory birds.
Theme: top Subj Unmarked	Rheme

54.

AL KHOR	is an old Qatar town, famous for its traditional harbour.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

55.

Look out	for the 2 watchtowers at the end of the attractive new Corniche.
Theme: top Imperative Unmarked	Rheme

56.

AL WAKRAH	is a trading and fishing town halfway between Doha and Umm Said.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

57.

It	is well known for its traditional architecture.
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

58.

Two ancient architectural structures which still exist in Qatar	are the wind tower and Doha Fort.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

59.

The wind tower house	has a wind tower (badgir) open on its four sides which provides both ventilation and a cooling effect to the rooms inside the house throughout the summer.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

60.

Doha Fort, an old fort in downtown Doha,	offers the visitor the chance to buy genuine handwoven bedouin handicrafts.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

61.

The Department of Tourism and Antiquities	was created in 1974 as the need arose to assert and strengthen the Qatari character of society with its Arab-Islamic traditions alongside the introduction of modern technology and civilisation.
Theme : top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

62.

Qatar National Museum, for which the Department is responsible,	is unique in the region and one of the finest project of its kind in the Arab world.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

63.

The museum	was established on the wishes of H.H. the Emir, Sheik Khalifa Bin Hamad Al-Thani, who made the official opening in 1975.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

64a

It	has recently undergone extensive renovations
Theme : top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

64b

and	visitors to Qatar and residents alike	should go along and admire this notable landmark on the Corniche.
text Conj: cord	top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

**WHAT TO SEE**

65.

The old palace, which forms the nucleus of the museum complex,	is a fine example of the style of architecture and the way of life of the Qatari people in the pre-oil era.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

66.

The various rooms	contain displays of clothing and utensils used in daily life.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

67.

The new building	houses a detailed presentation of the country's history and development through sections which include archaeological finds, a bedouin tent, a natural history section and an illustrated explanation of the oil industry in Qatar.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

68.

The lagoon, which has recently been drained,	now houses a new open tank project, which will enable visitors to look big fish (i.e. sharks and sting rays) through a tower area and a walkway built in the lagoon.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

69.

And	you	can see a traditional dhow of the type used for pearl-diving and trade in the lagoon.
text Conj: cord	top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

70.

The aquarium, popular with visitors and residents alike,	Contains many types of fish and marine life found in the water around Qatar.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

71a

This section	also tells the story of Qatar's links with the sea over the ages
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

71b

and	there	are some beautiful pearls on display.
text Conj: cord	top Subj Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

**OPENING HOURS**

72.

OPENING HOURS	9 am to 12 noon (except Friday and Saturday) 4 pm to 6 pm (except Saturday) Tuesday afternoon for families only.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

**AL KHOR GARDENS**

73.

You	will find Al Khor Gardens 2 km past the turnoff for the town of Khor on the North Road.
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

74.

It	is well signposted.
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

75.

There	are green lawns, a pond, children's play area, restaurants and barbecue facilities.
Theme: top Subj Unmarked	Rheme

76a

Families	are encouraged to picnic
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

76b

but	ϕ	are requested to throw their litter in the many bins provided.
text Conj: cord Unmarked	top Subj: pron, ellip Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		



**KHOR MUSEUM**

77.

This museum	is situated in the Old Customs House just off the picturesque harbour, where you can watch the fishermen drying their catches in the sun.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

**WAKRA MUSEUM**

78.

Wakra Museum	is a traditional house which has been restored.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

79a

It	opened recently
Theme : top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

79b

and	it	is to be found near the old harbour.
text Conj: cord	top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

80a

It	houses many interesting artifacts from a bygone era
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

80b

and	φ	is well worth a visit.
text Conj: cord	top Subj: pron, ellip Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

81.

Opening hours:	Same as Qatar National Museum
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

**ZUBARAH FORT**

82.

If you turn off the North Road just past the Police Post	you will eventually come to Zubarah and the old fort.
Theme: top $\beta$ If-clause Marked	Rheme

83.

As this fort is now a museum,	it would be worthwhile to go along and see it.
Theme : top DP CI Unmarked	Rheme

**AIRPORT GARDEN**

84.

This garden	was officially opened in February 1985.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

85.

It	includes lawns, shaded rest areas, fountains, a restaurant, and a children's playground.
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

## APPENDIX B9

<b>Theme Analysis of Text 9 about Doha</b>
--

**GEOGRAPHY AND POPULATION****Location**

1.

The State of Qatar	is situated half-way along the west coast of the Arabian Gulf east of the Arabian peninsula, between latitudes (27 to 24, and 10 to 26 degrees north) and longitudes (45 and 40 to 51 degrees east.)
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

2.

The State of Qatar	is a peninsula that extends northward covering an area of 11, 437 sq. km.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

3.

The territory of the State of Qatar	includes a number of islands in the coastal waters of the peninsula.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

4.

The most well known of these islands	are the Hawar Archipelago, Halul, which is the main export terminal for the offshore oil fields, Shar ouh, Al Bashiriya, and others.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

**Topography**

5.

The State of Qatar	generally consists of flat rocky surfaces.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

6.

However	it	includes some hills and sand dunes which reach an altitude of 40 metres above sea level in the areas of Dukhan, and Jebel Fuwairt in the western and northern parts of the country.
text Adju: conj	top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

7.

The surface of Qatar	is characterized by a number of geographical phenomena which are peculiar to the west coast of the Arabian Gulf.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

8.

Such phenomena	include coves and inlets together with depressions and surface rainwater-draining basins known as Al-Riyadh (the gardens) found mainly in the north and central parts of the State, the most important of which are Al-Majida, Al-Shahaniyah and Al-Sulaimi.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

9.

Because of their fertile land, natural and seasonal vegetation,	the northern and central regions of the country are considered the most suitable areas for development and expansion of agricultural enterprises.
Theme: top Adju: adv Marked	Rheme

10.

These regions	have attracted heavy investments from both the public and private sectors in support of agricultural projects accomplishing a satisfactory degree of self-sufficiency in that field.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

**The Climate**

11.

Qatar	has a desert climate of hot summer and relatively warm winter.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

12.

In the summer,	the weather temperature range is between 25 and 46 degree centigrade.
Theme : top Adju: Prep Phr Marked	Rheme

13a

Rainfall in the winter	is minimal
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

13b

and	on average	ϕ	does not exceed 75.2 mm. per year.
text Conj: cord	int Adju: Modal	top Subj: pron, ellip Unmarked	Rheme
Theme			

**The Population**

14.

The people of Qatar	are the descendants of ancient Arabian lines of kinship.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

15.

This	is particularly due to the geographical location and proximity to the Arabian Peninsula, on the one hand and to the close historical and cultural heritage which the State shares with the rest of the states in the Arabian Peninsula, on the other.
Theme : top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

16.

The Arab tribes, who migrated from the neighbouring areas, mainly Najd, al-Ihsa and Oman at various periods during the seventeenth and eighteenth centuries A.D.	Form the basis for the composition of the present population.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

17.

The tribal migration	continued into the early parts of the nineteenth century.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

18.

The present population of Qatar	is estimated at 400,000 inhabitants, most of whom reside in Doha, the capital city.
Theme : top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

19.

The rest of the population,	however, lives in a number of towns and villages, including Dukhan, Umm Said, al-Wakrah, al-Khor, Medinat al-shamal and other modern residential centres.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

## Religion

20a

Islam	is the official religion of the State
Theme : top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

20b

and	the Shari'a (Islamic Law)	is the principal source of legislation in the country.
text Conj: cord	top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

## Qatar National Museum

21.

It	was built in 1912 as a palace for the ruler of Qatar.
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

22.

Sheik Hamad Bin Abdullah Al-Thani	was the first Emir to use it.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

23a

The Emir, Sheik Bin Khalifa Bin Hamad Al-Thani,	commissioned the restoration and development of the palace as a national museum in 1972,
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

23b

and	it	was officially opened in 1975.
text Conj: cord	top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

24.

The Museum complex	consists of the following five sections: The old palace, the State Museum, the lagoon, the Aquarium and the gardens.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

## Al-Kout Fort

25

Al-Kout Fort	One of Doha's old forts situated in the centre of the city.
Theme : top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

26a

It	was built in 1880
Theme : top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

26b

and	ϕ	restored in 1978 to function as a centre for displaying traditional handicrafts.
text Conj: cord	top Subj: pron, ellip Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

### The Windtower House

27.

This	is the only windtower house of its kind remaining in Doha.
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

28.

It	was built in 1935.
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

29.

It	is of the badagir type: a square structure with openings on all four sides to ensure a continuous airflow which, in turn, provides the inner rooms of the house with both ventilation and cooling during the summer season.
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

### Al-Jassasiya (Jabal Al-Jassasiya)

30.

Al-Jassasiya	is composed of a number of rocky hills overlooking the north eastern coast of the country.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme



31.

These hills	are famous for their numerous shone carvings and engravings, some of which date back to prehistoric times.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

32.

Al-Jassasiya together with the fine beaches of the neighbouring Fuwairat	are considered on attractive site for weekend recreation.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

**Murwab Fort**

33.

Murwab fort	is situated about 4 km from the coast and 15 km north of Dukhan town.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

34.

It	was built during the Abbasid period in the 3rd century A.H. (9th century A.D.)
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

35.

The fort	was built on the foundations of an older fort, around which five groups of buildings are scattered, making a total of 250 houses and two mosques.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

**Al-Zubarah Fort**

36.

Al-Zubarah fort	lies 105 km away from Doha on the north western part of Qatar peninsula.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

37.

It	was built during the time of Sheik Abdullah Bin Qassim Al-Thani in 1938 by a group of local builders.
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

38.

The fort	is square-shaped with three round towers and one rectangular tower.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

39.

The fort	is known for its high thick walls which end in battlements.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

**AL-Rakiyat Fort**

40.

This fort	lies about 110 km away from Doha.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

41.

It	was built during the late19th and early 20th centuries. A rectangular construction of mud and stone with three rectangular comer towers and one round tower.
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

42.

This type of building	is an example of the military architectural style in the Gulf.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

**Al-Thughb Fort**

43.

Al-Thughb fort	was built during the late 19th and early 20th centuries.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

44.

It	represents a simplified example of military architecture in the Gulf region.
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

**Al-Ghuwair Castle**

45.

The ruins of Al-Ghuwair castle	lie about 85 km from Doha.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

46.

It	was built during the early 19th century.
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

47.

The castle	is rectangular in shape with crenellations and thick walls (130 cms wide) of stone and mud.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

48.

Al-Ghuwair castle	is a unique example of other castles in the Qatar peninsula.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

**Burzan Tower**

49.

Burzan tower	is situated in Umm Salal Mohammed area.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

50.

It	was built during the late 19th and early 20th centuries.
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

51.

Its unique watch towers	have no equal in the Gulf region or the Arab world at large.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

52.

It	is a rectangular construction of three levels with an external staircase leading to the top level.
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

53.

Its thick high walls	end in decorative battlements.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

**Umm Salal Mohammed Fort**

54.

This	is a residential fort which combines civil and military functions.
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

55.

It	has high thick walls with an impressive facade.
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

56.

The fort	contains varied examples of architectural and decorative elements.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

**Al-wajbah Fort**

57.

Al-Wajbah fort	is considered the oldest fort in Qatar, built during the 19th century.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

58.

The fort	witnessed a famous battle in which the people of Qatar under the leadership of Sheik Qassim Bin Mohammed Al-Thani, the ruler of Qatar, won victory over the Ottoman forces in 1310 A.H. (1893 A.D.).
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

## APPENDIX B10

<b>Theme Analysis of Text 10 about Doha</b>
---

**Doha**

1.

Within a few years,	Doha has been transformed from a sleepy fishing village into a spacious, well-planned modern city which has nonetheless kept its links with the past.
Theme: top Adju: adv Marked	Rheme

2a

Something of the old village atmosphere	remains,
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

2b

and	a sense of continuity with Arab and Islamic culture	has been preserved.
text Conj: cord	top Subj: NG Marked	Rheme
Theme		

3.

The new Doha	has a refined look.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

4.

The architecture of its public buildings	is of a high standard.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

5.

The ministries along the Corniche	have been designed as a collective whole.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

6.

None	is high enough to break the sweep of the eyes.
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

7.

Each	attractively combines the modern with the traditional.
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

8.

The new city	is built around a series of ring roads which spread out in a half circle from the centre.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

9.

They	are wide double carriage ways with tree-lined central reservations which in turn are connected by a series of roads radiating out from the centre.
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

10.

Once this pattern has become familiar	the city is easy to travel around.
Theme: top $\beta$ DP Cl Marked	

11.

The heart of modern Doha	is the pink and white Clock Tower and the vast new Emiri Palace alongside.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

12.

Behind	is the Grand Mosque whose tall slim minaret serves as a useful landmark.
Theme : top Adju: adv Marked	Rheme

13.

From here	the wide boulevards lead to rows of enormous villas surrounded by purdah walls which the richer Qataris have built for themselves.
Theme: top Adju: Prep Phr Marked	Rheme

14

The spaciousness of outer Doha	contrast with the narrow streets of the old centre which are not so well maintained
Theme : top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

15.

Traffic congestion	is a problem in central Doha.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

16.

The National Museum (Corniche Road East), the first of its kind in the Gulf when it opened in the spring of 1975,	gives a record of the old way of life in Qatar as it was before the oil revolution.
Rheme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

17.

It	has reconstructed scenes from traditional Bedouin life and a display of Bedouin ornaments and weapons.
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

18.

The museum	is in a building which was the home of the Amir's father and grandfather, known as the Old Amiri Palace, or the Salatah Palace.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme



19a

It	had fallen into very poor condition when the idea of a museum was conceived in 1972
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

19b

and	restoration	began
Theme: top Conj: cord	top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

20a

It	overlooks the old harbour site,
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

20b

and	the sea	was a good deal nearer its walls before land reclamation pushed it back.
text Conj: cord	top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

21.

An attempt	has been made to 'bring back' the water by making a sort of pool-lagoon, the far side of which roughly simulates the old shoreline.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

22.

On this lagoon	replicas of the old pearling and trading dhows, built in the old way with the old tools by Qatari craftsmen, ride at anchor.
Theme: top Adju: Prep Phr Marked	Rheme

23.

Close to the museum	is aquarium where a variety of fish, including a shark, swim in water from the lagoon.
Theme: top Adju: Prep Phr Marked	Rheme

24.

Near the Clock Tower	is the recently-opened National Development Exhibition tracing Qatar's rapid economic expansion.
Theme: top Adju: Prep Phr Marked	Rheme

25.

It	is housed in a building where the present Amir was brought up.
Rheme : top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

26.

A "new Doha"	is being constructed at the north end of the corniche in West Bay.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

27.

Houses, shops, offices, a hotel and conference centre	are being built in a circular area three kilometres in diameter.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

28.

Over the next 25 years	a quarter of the total growth of Doha should be located in the West Bay.
Theme: top Adju: Prep Phr Marked	Rheme

***Post Office***

29.

The main post office	is opposite Government House .
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

30.

Hotels	will sell stamps.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

31.

Air mail letter to Europe	take 307 days.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

32.

Surface mail	should be avoided because of port delays.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

33.

Mail delivery	is generally quick and reliable.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

## Telephone

34.

Direct- dial call	can now be made to other Gulf countries and to Western Europe.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

35a

Other international calls	have to be booked
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

35b

but	φ	are not usually subject to much delay
text Conj: cord	top Subj: pron ,ellip Unmarked	Rheme

Theme
-------

**Telex**

36.

The main hotels	have telexes.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

37.

Telex messages	can also be sent from the Cable and Wireless Building in Musarib Street.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

**Shops**

38.

The Doha Centre	is the Gulf's first superstore.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

39.

Built by Shaik Ghanim bin Ali Al-Thani, a member of the ruling family,	it has become known as Shaik Ghanim's soug.
Theme: top $\beta$ NFT Cl Marked	Rheme

40.

It	has a Western-style department store, selling most things except furniture and furnishings, and a large supermarket of mostly American food products, including fresh meat flown in from the US West Coast.
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

41.

Inevitably	prices	are high.
text Adju: Modal	top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

### Sougs Close to the Clock Tower

42.

Sougs	Close to the Click Tower.
Theme: top Sub: NG Unmarked	Rheme

43.

The main soug	mainly sells imported modern goods.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

44.

The fish market	has the traditional atmosphere of haggling and bargaining which has not changed for centuries.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

45.

It	is at its best in the early morning.
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

46.

The vegetable and fruit stores	have an excellent range of produce.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

47.

There	is an area of small shops selling copper pots, brass bowls and other small antiques.
Theme: top Subj Unmarked	Rheme

**Social clubs**

48.

Several companies (like Shell and QAFCO in Umm Said)	have social clubs which admit guests accompanied by members.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

49.

The Doha Club	is the most exclusive in Qatar, its membership being reserved for top government employees.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

50.

But	guests signed in by members	are admitted.
text Conj: cord	top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

**Leisure/sport**

51.

Facilities	are limited.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

52.

The largest sporting amenity	is the city's new Khalifa stadium, which is mainly reserved for soccer matches.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

53.

The Doha Club	has the best sporting facilities (see above).
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

54.

Some companies	have their own tennis courts.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

55.

The Rugby Club	plays on a sand pitch scattered with saw dust.
Theme Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

56.

The Beach Club at the Oasis Hotel	has facilities for sailing and a squash court.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

57.

The marina at the Gulf Hotel	hires out small boats and dhows mainly for people wanting to fish.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

58.

A special dhow for fishermen	leaves the marina early every Friday morning.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

59.

Local fishermen	sometimes take out groups for week-end fishing trips.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

60.

Qatar	has many fine beaches, giving ample opportunities for swimming.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

61a

There	is a race course
Theme: top Subj Unmarked	Rheme

61b

and	occasionally	camel races	are held privately.
text Conj: cord	int Adju: Modal	top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme
Theme			

**Bookshops**

62.

The Family Bookshop, Khabara Street,	has the best selection of foreign newspapers, periodicals and books.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

63.

Arabian Library, Abdullah Bin-Thani Street (Tel: 324416),	also sells foreign newspapers and magazines.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

64.

The Gulf Hotel	has a bookshop.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

65.

The Rumailah Hospital (Tel: 26251)	is the main centre for emergency treatment.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

66.

A new general hospital	is nearing completion.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme



**Outside Doha**

67.

The countryside outside the capital	can be explored by using the country's four main roads, which are all fast and of a high standard.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

68.

A round trip taking in all four roads	can be done comfortably in one day.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

69.

The roads radiating from Doha	are: the Ruwais road (to the north); the Dukhan road (to the west coast); the Salwa road (southwest to the Saudi Arabian border); and the Umm Said road (to the new industrial town on the southeast coast).
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

70.

All the roads	connect at roundabouts to the outer 'C' ring road in Doha.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

**The Ruwais Road**

71.

Beyond the roundabout at Madinat Khalifa, approximately two kilometres on the right,	is the site of the new Gulf University, being built with precast concrete.
Theme: top Adju: Prep Phr Marked	Rheme

72.

Further along to the left	are a series of small villages the most notable being Umm Salal Mohammad, which has three large forts.
Theme: top Adju: Prep Phr Marked	Rheme

73.

The first, now a noble but decaying ruin,	is sited away from the village on a by-road.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

74.

The other two, standing close to each other and surrounded by newer houses,	are still occupied.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

75.

Adjacent to one of the forts	is one of the largest date palm groves in Qatar.
Theme: top Adju: Prep Phr Marked	Rheme

76.

Forty kilometres north of Doha on the main road	is the turnoff (right to the coastal town of Al Khor.
Theme: top Adju: adv Marked	Rheme

77.

Once a major centre of the pearl fishing industry,	Al Khor is at present undergoing redevelopment.
Theme : top Adju: adv Marked	Rheme

78a

Many of the older buildings facing the dhow harbour	have been demolished
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

78b

and	ϕ	are yet to be replaced.
text Conj: cord	top Subj: pron, ellip Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

79.

Desert roads, going northwards across the sabka (salt flats),	lead to some popular beaches, about 10 kilometres along the coast.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

80.

It is advisable	to have more than one vehicle here because soft sand, especially after rainfall, can make parts of the sabka impassable.
Theme: top β Themd Comnt Marked	Rheme

81.

Sixty-five kilometres up the Ruwais road from Doha	is a turnoff (left) to Zubara, an important town in the 18th century.
Theme: top Adju: adv Unmarked	Rheme

82.

Now	virtually all that remains is a fort used by the police.
Theme: top Adju: adv Marked	Rheme

83a

Much of the land in this area	has sweet fertile soil, supporting bushy outcrops of foliage,
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

83b

and	φ	is a popular place for falconry.
text Conj: cord	top Subj: pron, ellip Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

84.

One kilometre from the junction with the Ruwais road (on the left)	is a Government Experimental Farm.
Theme: top Adju: adv Marked	Rheme

85.

A permit	can be obtained from the Doha Municipality Officer to visit it.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

86.

Approximately 30 kilometres from Ruwais,	a turning (right) leads to the small village of Fuwairat and the adjacent Djebel.
Theme: top Adju: adv Unmarked	Rheme

87.

This	was one of the earliest settlements in Qatar, dating to the 18th century.
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

88.

It	was the site of a battle between warring factions of Bahrain's ruling Khalifa family in the mid-19th century.
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

89.

Djebel Fuwairat, an adjacent large rock outcrop descending to an eroded coastline,	is a popular weekend beach, with soft sand and remarkable coral and marine life.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

90.

The old town of Ruwais	faces a large bay and a causeway leading to a dhow jetty.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

91.

Dhows, sailing to and from Bahrain,	use a deep water channel blasted out of the coral reef to reach the jetty.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

### The Dukhan Road

92.

About three kilometres from Doha,	this road passes through Al-Rayyan, a wealthy residential satellite to Doha with many large villas and mansions, invariably surrounded by high enclosing walls.
Theme: top Adju: Prep Phr Marked	Rheme

93.

On the left of the road (20 kilometres from Doha) ,	there is a small village dominated by a large fort, below which is a depression in the ground, known as the Wajbah depression.
Theme: top Adju: Prep Phr Marked	Rheme

94.

Here	a battle was fought in 1893 between the local people, led by Shaik Jassim, and Turkish forces, headed by the Wali of Basra, Nafiz Pasha.
Theme: top Adju: adv Marked	Rheme

95

This battle	ended the Turkish domination of Qatar.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

96.

Beyond Wajbah	the landscape remains flat and arid, until about 10 kilometres from Dukhan (to the right) where a 25-metre-high plateau edged with eroded cliffs rises up, creating a dramatic outline in the evening sun.
Theme: top Adju: Prep Phr Marked	Rheme

97.

These cliffs	continue northwards up a peninsula for about 10 kilometres, with a desert track running along their western side to some pleasant beaches.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

98.

Dukhan, a town based on the industry,	is dominated by gas flares which look particularly spectacular at night.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

99.

The town	lies between the sea, with a stretch of beaches, and a range of hill skirting the coast as far as Salwa.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

### The Salwa Road

100.

Immediately on the right beyond the 'C' Ring Road	is the camel market, where trading in goats and camels is at its most brisk at about seven o'clock in the morning.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

101a

Four kilometres on the left	is a new wholesale market complex,
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

101b

and	a further three kilometres on the right	is the Khalifa Stadium.
text Conj: cord	top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

102.

Around 35 kilometres from Doha (on the left)	is the satellite tracking station giving Qatar telephone and media communications throughout the world.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

103.

From here	the road travels through typical sparsely-vegetated desert to the western coast, where it cuts through a natural break in range of hills stretching down from Dukhan.
Theme: top Adju: Prep Phr Marked	Rheme

104.

The hills	look spectacular at this point, erosion having exposed horizontal strata of many different colours.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

105.

Beyond these hills	there is a fine view of the sea, sweeping in a great curve round to Salwa.
Theme: top Adju: Prep Phr Marked	Rheme

106.

Salwa itself	is only a border post.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

**The Umm said Road**

107.

This road	goes south past the International Airport at Doha to the town of Al-Wakra (10 kilometres away).
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

108.

Once as important a town as Doha,	most of old Al-Wakra is now in a state of ruin, though some of the traditional buildings still stand.
Theme: top Adju:adv Marked	Rheme

109.

New buildings	are going up on the landside of the main road and the road leading west to Al-Wakir.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

110.

Beyond Al-Wakir	is a remote and sparsely-populated desert area, with tow small oasis farms at its extremity.
Theme: top Adju: Prep Phr Marked	Rheme

111.

The road	goes through a spectacular range of sand dunes (about 20 kilometres from Al-Wakra) which are a popular picnic spot.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

112a

About 20 metres high,	the dunes produce an unearthly resonant sound,
Theme: top Adju: adv Marked	Rheme



112b

so	φ	are known as the "singing dunes".
text Conj: cord	top Subj: pron, ellip Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

113.

From Al Wakra,	the main road continues south across the salt plains to Umm Said, 30 kilometers from Doha.
Theme: top Adju: Prep Phr Marked	Rheme

114.

Umm Said	is a new town, built to accommodate workers manning a number of adjacent industrial plants.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

## GENERAL INFORMATION

### How to get there BY AIR (outside Gulf):

115.

With the exception of a good service to and from London,	Qatar has poor air connections with Europe.
Theme: top Adv: Prep Phr Marked	Rheme

116.

There	are daily flights from London (on the average two daily).
Theme: top Subj Unmarked	Rheme

117.

Otherwise	there	are only a few weekly flights from Paris and Amsterdam.
text Adju: conj	top Subj Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

118.

There	are weekly flights from Bombay, Karachi, Tokyo, Hong Kong, Delhi, Dacca, Colombo, and Brunei.
Theme: top Subj Unmarked	Rheme

119.

Several flights a week	go from Beirut and Cairo to Doha and less frequent ones from Amman, Damascus, Sanaa and Taiz.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

**BY AIR (inter-Gulf):**

120.

There	are several flights a day from Bahrain, which is the main transit point for passengers to Qatar.
Theme: top Subj Unmarked	Rheme

121.

There	are also daily flights from Abu Dhabi and Dubai.
Theme: top Subj Unmarked	Rheme

122a

Several flights a week	go to and from Sharjah, Shiraz, and Muscat
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

122b

and	there	are less frequently weekly flights from Baghdad, Ras al-Khaimah, Riyadh, Kuwait and Dhahran.
text Conj: cord	top Subj Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

## Visas

123

Visas	are required by all except nationals of Bahrain, Kuwait, Oman, Saudi Arabia, and the United Arab Emirates and holders of British passports in which their national status is described as 'British Subject' Citizen of the United Kingdom and their place of birth or country of residence as the united Kingdom (for a stay not exceeding 30 days).
Theme : top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

124.

Transit visas	are not required by those who continue their journey to a third country by the same or first connecting aircraft within 24 hours.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

125.

But	they	must hold tickets with reserved seats and documents for their onward journey.
text Conj: cord	top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

126

Business and company representatives	may be issued with a 72-hour visa provided that their passports are endorsed for Qatar and they hold onward tickets with confirmed bookings.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

127a

They	must be in a possession of valid proof of identity from the company
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

127b

and	φ	be met at the airport by a commercial representative of the company being dealt with.
text Conj: cod	top Subj: pron, ellip Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

128.

Nationals of Albania, Bulgaria, Czechoslovakia, East Germany, Hungary, North Korea, Pakistan, China, Poland, Rumania, U.S.S.R., Vietnam	require a visa at all times.
Theme : top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

**Language**

129.

The official language	is Arabic.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

130.

English	is widely spoken in business circles.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

**Religion**

131.

Qatar	is a Wahhabi Muslim state.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

**Official holidays**

132a

The holidays marked with an asterisk *	are dependent on the Moslem calendary
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

132b

and	φ	may differ by one or two days from the dates given.
text Conj: cord	top Subj: pron, ellip Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

133a

The Muslim year	has 354 or 355 days,	
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme	

133b

so	Muslim dates and holidays	fall 10 to 11 days earlier each year on the Gregorian calendar.
text Conj: cord	top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

134.

Businessmen	are advised to avoid visits to Qatar during the month of Ramadan which is the month preceding the Id al-Fitr.	
Theme : top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme	

135a

Id aladha	11-13 November	
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme	

135b

Independence Day	3 September 1979	
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme	

135c

Id al-Fitr (end of Ramadan)*	22-24 August 1979	
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme	

135d

Time	GMT + 3.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

135e

Electric current	220-240, 50 cycles AC.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

136.

Smallpox vaccination certificates	are required by all visitors.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

**Currency**

137.

The unit of currency	is the Qatar Riyal (QR) divided into 100 dirhams.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

138.

The following denominations	are in circulation: Notes: Qatar Riyal 1, 5, 10, 100, 500. Coins: Dirhams 1, 5, 10, 25, 50.
Theme : top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

**Currency Regulations**

139.

There	are no restrictions on the import or export of currency.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

**Alcohol**

140.

Visitors	are allowed to bring 1 lb. of tobacco and perfumes up to the value of QR 20.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

141.

The import of alcohol	is prohibited.
Theme Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

142.

Alcohol Visitors	may have difficulty in obtaining alcohol because of severe restrictions on its sale.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

143a

The Gulf Hotel	is the only public place that has a bar
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

143b

but	it	is only open to hotel guests.
text Conj: cord	top Subj: pron, ellip Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

144.

Residents	can obtain permits from the British embassy allowing them to buy alcohol from a restricted number of licensed syndicates (mainly run by British companies).
Theme : top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

145.

Company clubs	are also allowed to buy and sell liquor.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

146.

With the exception of canned beer,	alcohol bought with a permit tends to be cheaper than in Europe.
Theme: top Adju: adv Marked	Rheme

**Useful Advice**

147.

During the hot and humid summer months between April and September,	light cotton clothing is best for comfort.
Theme :top Adju: adv Marked	Rheme

148a

Qataris	are strict Wahhabi Muslim,
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

148b

so	women	should dress very modestly with long-sleeved dresses.
text Conj: cord	top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

Theme

149

In December/January,	sweaters may be needed as a protection against cold weather.
Theme : top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

150a

Men	should not wear shorts
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme



150b

or	ϕ	go round shirtless.
text Conj: cord	top Subj: pron, ellip Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

## **Appendices to Doha: C1-C10**

### **Analysis of Topical Themes and Transitivity**

## APPENDIX C1

## Analysis of Topical Themes and Transitivity in Text 1 about Doha

No	Domain	Topic	Sub-topic		Transitivity	Inter
			Marked	Unmarked		
1a	Reader	visitor		PRAL	Process	✓
1b	Reader	visitor		2nd prsn	Senser	✓
2	Space	place		location	Goal	
3	Space	place		location	Identified	
4	Space	place		location	Actor	
5a	Time	history	temporal		Circumstance	
5b	Space	[DFP]		[FP]	[Actor]	
6	Space	place		location	Carrier	
7a	Space	DFP		FP	Actor	
7b	Space	[DFP]		[FP]	[Actor]	
8a	Time	history	event		Circumstance	
8b	Space	[place]		[location]	[Identified]	
9	Space	place		location	Carrier	
10	Space	place		location	Carrier	
11a	Space	place		location	Carrier	
11b	Space	[place]		[location]	[Carrier]	
12	Time	history		event	Goal	
13a	Space	place		location	Target	
13b	Reader	visitor		2nd prsn	Senser	✓
14	Space	place		location	Actor	
15	Space	place	location		Circumstance	
16	Time	history	temporal		Circumstance	
17	Space	place	location		Circumstance	
18	Space	DFP		culture	Carrier	
19	Space	place	location		Attribute	
20	Space	place		location	Goal	
21	Space	place		location	Carrier	
22	Space	DFP		FP	Identified	
23	Space	DFP		FP	Actor	
24	Space	place		location	Identified	
25	Space	place		location	Actor	
26	Space	DFP		nature	Carrier	
27	Time	history	temporal		Circumstance	
28	Space	place		location	Existent	
29	Space	place	location		Circumstance	
30	Time	history		event	Identified	
31	Time	history	event		Circumstance	
32	Space	place		location	Carrier	
33	Reader	visitor	PRAL		Circumstance	✓

34a	Space	DFP		culture	Carrier	
34b	Space	[DFP]		[culture]	[Goal]	
35	Space	place		location	Actor	
36	Space	place		location	Actor	
37	Time	CFP		event	Actor	
38	Space	place	location		Attribute	
39	Reader	visitor	PRAL		Circumstance	✓
40	Reader	visitor		3rd prsn	Actor	✓
41	Space	place	location		Attribute	
42	Space	place		location	Identified	
43	Space	place	location		Circumstance	
44	Space	place		location	Goal	
45	Reader	visitor	PRAL		Circumstance	✓
46	Space	place		location	Identified	
47	Space	place		location	Carrier	
48	Space	place	location		Attribute	
49	Space	place	location		Attribute	
50	Space	place		location	Carrier	
51	Reader	visitor	PRAL		Circumstance	✓
52	Space	place	location		Attribute	
53	Reader	visitor	PRAL		Circumstance	✓
54	Space	place		location	Carrier	
55	Space	place	location		Attribute	
56a	Space	place		location	Carrier	
56b	Space	[place]		[location]	[Carrier]	
57	Space	place	location		Attribute	
58	Space	place	location		Attribute	
59a	Space	place		location	Carrier	
59b	Space	[place]		[location]	[Carrier]	
60a	Space	services		travel	Carrier	
60b	Space	services		travel	Goal	
61	Space			Exist There	Existent	
62	Space	services		travel	Actor	
63	Reader	visitor		act	Goal	✓
64a	Space	place		location	Carrier	
64b	Space	[place]		[location]	[Actor]	
65	Reader	visitor		act	Identified	✓
66	Space	services		subsistence	Carrier	
67	Reader	visitor		3rd prsn	Carrier	✓
68	Reader	visitor		regulations	Goal	✓
69	Reader	visitor		3rd prsn	Carrier	✓
70a	Space	services		travel	Carrier	
70b	Space	services		travel	Carrier	
71a	Space	services		travel	Goal	
71b	Space	services		travel	Goal	
72	Reader	visitor	PRAL		Circumstance	✓

73a	Reader	visitor		3rd person	Actor	✓
73b	Reader	[visitor]		[3rd prsn]	[Sayer]	✓
74	Space	place		location	Carrier	
75	Space	services		subsistence	Carrier	
76	Space			Exist There	Existent	
77	Space			Exist There	Existent	
78	Reader	visitor		act	Carrier	✓
79	Space	services		subsistence	Identified	
80a	Space	services		subsistence	Carrier	
80b	Space	services		subsistence	Carrier	
81	Space	services		subsistence	Carrier	
82a	Space	services		subsistence	Identified	
82b	Space	services		subsistence	Phenomenon	
83	Writer	comment		viewpoint	Themd Comnt	*
84	Space	place		location	Carrier	
85	Space	services		subsistence	Carrier	
86	Space	services		subsistence	Goal	
87	Space	place		location	Carrier	
88	Reader	visitor		regulations	Carrier	✓
89	Reader	visitor		regulations	Carrier	✓
90	Space	place		location	Identified	
91	Space	place		location	Carrier	
92	Space	place		location	Actor	
93	Space	place		location	Carrier	
94	Space	place		location	Carrier	
95	Reader	visitor		act	Carrier	✓
96	Space	place		location	Carrier	

## APPENDIX C2

## Analysis of Topical Themes and Transitivity in Text 2 about Doha

No	Domains	Topic	Sub-topic		Transitivity	Inter
			Marked	Unmarked		
1	Time	history		event	Carrier	
2	Space	DFP		FP	Carrier	
3	Space	DFP		FP	Actor	
4	Space	DFP		FP	Carrier	
5	Space	DFP		FP	Actor	
6	Space	DFP		FP	Goal	
7	Space	place		location	Carrier	
8	Space	place		location	Carrier	
9	Space	place		location	Identified	
10	Space	place		location	Carrier	
11	Time	CS	temporal		Circumstance	
12	Space	DFP		people	Goal	
13a	Time	history	temporal		Circumstance	
13b	Time	history	temporal		Circumstance	
14	Time	history	temporal		Circumstance	
15	Space	place		location	Identified	
16	Space	place		location	Carrier	
17	Space	place		location	Identified	
18	Space	place		location	Identified	
19	Space	place		event	Carrier	
20	Space	place		location	Carrier	
21	Space	place		location	Carrier	
22	Space	place		location	Carrier	
23	Space	place		location	Carrier	
24	Space	place		location	Carrier	
25	Space	place		location	Actor	
26	Space	place		location	Carrier	
27	Space	place		location	Carrier	
28	Space	place		location	Carrier	
29	Space	place		location	Carrier	
30	Space	place		location	Actor	
31a	Space	place		location	Goal	
31b	Space	[place]		[location]	[Goal]	
32	Space	place		location	Carrier	
33	Space	place		location	Goal	
34	Space	place		location	Carrier	
35	Space	place		location	Goal	
36	Space	place		location	Senser	
37	Space	place		location	Carrier	

38	Space	place		location	Goal	
39	Space	place		location	Carrier	
40	Space	place		location	Carrier	
41a	Space	place		location	Goal	
41b	Space	[place]		[location]	[Goal]	
42	Space	place		location	Goal	
43	Space	place		location	Carrier	
44	Space	place		location	Carrier	
45	Space	place		location	Goal	
46	Space	place		location	Carrier	
47	Space	place		location	Carrier	
48	Space	place		location	Carrier	
49	Space	place		location	Identified	
50	Space	place		location	Goal	
51	Space	DFP		FP	Identified	
52a	Time	history	temporal		Circumstance	
52b	Space	place		location	Goal	
53	Space	place		location	Identified	
54	Reader	visitor		regulations	Carrier	✓
55	Reader	visitor		regulations	Carrier	✓
56	Reader	visitor		regulations	Carrier	✓
57	Reader	visitor		regulations	Carrier	✓
58	Reader	visitor		regulations	Carrier	✓
59	Reader	visitor		regulations	Carrier	✓
60	Space	place		location	Carrier	
61	Space	place		location	Carrier	
62	Space	place		location	Carrier	
63	Space	place		location	Carrier	
64	Space	place		location	Carrier	
65	Space	place		location	Carrier	
66	Space	place		location	Carrier	
67	Reader	visitor		3rd prsn	Senser	✓
68	Space	place	location		Circumstance	
69	Space	place		location	Actor	
70	Space	place		location	Carrier	
71	Space	place		location	Actor	
72a	Space	place		location	identified	
72b	Space	[place]		[location]	Identified	
73	Space	place		location	Identified	
74	Space	place		location	Identified	
75	Space	place		location	Carrier	
76	Space	place		location	Carrier	
77	Space	place	location		Circumstance	
78	Space		location		Circumstance	
79	Space	place		location	Carrier	
80	Space	place		location	Goal	

81	Space	place		location	Carrier	
82	Space	place		location	Carrier	
83	Space	place		location	Carrier	
84	Space	place		location	Carrier	
85	Space	place		location	Carrier	
86	Space	place		location	Carrier	
87	Time	CS	temporal		Circumstance	
88	Space	place		location	Carrier	
89	Space	place		location	Carrier	
90	Space	place		location	Actor	
91	Space	place		location	Carrier	
92	Reader	visitor		3rd prsn	Senser	✓
93	Reader	visitor		3rd prsn	Senser	✓
94	Space	place		location	Identified	
95	Space	place		location	Carrier	
96	Space	DFP		recreation	Goal	
97	Space	place		location	Actor	
98	Space			Exist There	Existent	
99	Space	place	location		Circumstance	
100	Space	place		location	Carrier	
101	Space	place		location	Goal	
102a	Space	place		location	Carrier	
102b	Space	place		location	Carrier	
102c	Space	place		location	Carrier	
103	Space	place		location	Identified	
104	Space	place		location	Identified	
105	Reader	visitor		regulations	Carrier	✓
106	Reader	visitor	regulations		Attribute	✓
107	Space	place		location	Carrier	
108	Space	place		location	Actor	
109	Time	history		event	Identified	
110	Reader	visitor		act	Actor	✓
111	Reader	visitor		act	Carrier	✓
112	Space	DFP		culture	Identified	
113	Space	DFP		culture	Identified	
114	Time	history	temporal		Circumstance	
115	Space	DFP		culture	Identified	
116	Space	place		location	Identified	
117	Space	DFP		people	Actor	
118	Space	place		location	Carrier	
119	Space	DFP		culture	Carrier	
120a	Space	DFP		people	Senser	
120b	Space	[DFP]		[people]	Actor	
121	Space	DFP		culture	Goal	
122	Space	DFP		culture	Goal	
123	Space	DFP		culture	Carrier	



124	Space	DFP		culture	Goal	
125	Space	DFP		culture	Goal	
126	Space	DFP		culture	Carrier	
127	Space	DFP		culture	Carrier	
128	Space	DFP		culture	Carrier	
129	Space	DFP		culture	Identified	
130	Space	place		location	Actor	
131	Space	place	location		Circumstance	
132	Space	place		location	Carrier	
133	Space	DFP		recreation	Goal	
134	Space	DFP		recreation	Carrier	
135	Space	DFP		recreation	Carrier	
136	Space	DFP		recreation	Goal	
137	Space	DFP		recreation	Goal	
138a	Space	DFP		recreation	Carrier	
138b	Space	DFP		recreation	Goal	
139	Space	DFP		recreation	Identified	
140	Space	DFP		recreation	Carrier	
141	Space			Exist There	Existent	
142	Space	DFP		culture	Circumstance	
143	Reader	visitor		3rd prsn	Actor	✓
144	Reader	visitor		regulations	Identified	✓
145	Reader	visitor		regulations	Carrier	✓
146	Reader	visitor		regulations	Carrier	✓
147	Space	DFP		culture	Identified	
148	Space	DFP		culture	Identified	
149a	Reader	visitor		regulations	Identified	✓
149b	Space	DFP		NTF	Identified	✓
150	Space	place		location	Carrier	
151	Space	place		location	Carrier	
152	Space			Exist There	Existent	
153	Space	DFP		NTF	Carrier	✓
154a	Space	DFP		NTF	Identified	✓
154b	Space	DFP		NTF	Identified	✓
155	Space	DFP		NTF	Identified	
156	Space			Exist There	Existent	

## APPENDIX C3

## Analysis of Topical Themes and Transitivity in Texts 3 about Doha

No	Domain	Topic	Sub-topics		Transitivity	Inter
			Marked	Unmarked		
1	Time	history		event	Carrier	
2	Time	history		event	Identified	
3	Space	DFP		culture	Identified	
4	Space	DFP		culture	Phenomenon	
5	Space	DFP	culture		Circumstance	
6	Space	place		location	Carrier	
7	Space	place		location	Identified	
8	Space	place		location	Carrier	
9	Space	DFP		culture	Identified	
10a	Space	DFP		FP	Actor	
10b	Time	history	temporal		Circumstance	
11	Space	DFP		FP	Identified	
12a	Time	history	temporal		Circumstance	
12b	Time	history	temporal		Circumstance	
13	Space	DFP		FP	Actor	
14	Time	history	temporal		Circumstance	
15	Space	place		location	Carrier	
16	Space	place		location	Carrier	
17a	Space	place	location		Circumstance	
17b	Space	[place]		[location]	[Carrier]	
18	Space	DFP		nature	Identified	
19	Space	DFP		nature	Carrier	
20	Space	DFP		people	Identified	
21a	Space	DFP		culture	Identified	
21b	Space	DFP		culture	Identified	
22	Space	DFP		culture	Identified	
23a	Space	place		location	Carrier	
23b	Space	[place]		[location]	[Carrier]	
24	Space	place		location	Identified	
25a	Space	place		location	Carrier	
25b	Space	[place]		[location]	[Carrier]	
26	Space	place		location	Actor	
27	Space	place		location	Identified	
28	Space	place		location	Carrier	
29	Space	place		location	Carrier	
30	Space	place		location	Carrier	
31	Space	place		location	Goal	
32	Space	place		location	Carrier	

33a	Space	place		location	Carrier	
33b	Space	[place]		[location]	[Identified]	
34	Space	place		location	Carrier	
35	Space	place		location	Carrier	
36	Space	place		location	Goal	
37	Space	place		location	Carrier	
38	Space	place		location	Carrier	
39	Space	place		location	Identified	
40	Space	place		location	Carrier	
41	Space	place		attributive	Circumstance	
42	Space	place	location		Carrier	
43	Writer	comment	viewpoint		Themd Comnt	
44	Reader	visitor		regulations	Carrier	✓
45	Reader	visitor		regulations	Goal	✓
46	Reader	visitor		regulations	Goal	✓
47	Reader	visitor		regulations	Beneficiary	✓
48	Reader	visitor		regulations	Carrier	✓
49	Reader	visitor		regulations	Carrier	✓
50	Reader	visitor		regulations	Carrier	✓
51	Space	DFP		culture	Carrier	
52	Space	place		location	Senser	
53	Space	place		location	Carrier	
54a	Space	place		location	Carrier	
54b	Space	place		location	Carrier	
55	Space	place	location		Circumstance	
56	Space	place		location	Carrier	
57a	Space	place		attributive	Circumstance	
57b	Space	place		location	Carrier	
58	Space	place		recreation	Identified	
59	Space	DFP		recreation	Goal	
60	Space	DFP		recreation	Actor	
61	Space	place	location		Attribute	
62	Reader	visitor		act	Identified	✓
63	Space	place		location	Carrier	
64	Space	DFP		people	Actor	
65	Space	place		location	Identified	
66	Space	place		location	Carrier	
67	Space	place		location	Carrier	
68	Space	DFP	recreation		Circumstance	
69	Space	DFP		culture	Identified	
70	Space	DFP		people	Carrier	
71	Space	DFP		culture	Goal	
72	Space	DFP	culture		Circumstance	
73	Space	DFP		culture	Carrier	
74	Space	DFP		culture	Goal	
75a	Space	DFP		people	Actor	

75b	Space	DFP		people	Actor	
76a	Space	[DFP]		[culture]	[Carrier]	
76b	Space	DFP		culture	[Carrier]	
77	Space	DFP		culture	Carrier	
78	Space	DFP		culture	Goal	
79	Space	place		location	Identified	
80	Space	DFP		culture	Goal	
81	Space	DFP		culture	Carrier	
82	Space	DFP		culture	Carrier	
83	Space	DFP		culture	Carrier	
84	Space	DFP		culture	Carrier	
85	Space	DFP		people	Actor	
86	Space	DFP		culture	Identified	
87	Space	DFP		culture	Carrier	
88	Space	DFP		culture	Carrier	
89	Space	DFP		culture	Actor	
90	Time	CS	temporal		Circumstance	
91	Space	DFP		people	Actor	
92	Space	DFP		culture	Identified	
93	Space	DFP		culture	Carrier	
94	Space	DFP		culture	Goal	
95	Space	DFP		culture	Carrier	
96	Space	DFP		culture	Goal	

## APPENDIX C4

## Analysis of Topical Themes and Transitivity in Texts 4 about Doha

No	Domain	Topic	Sub-topics		Transitivity	Inter
			Marked	Unmarked		
1	Space	place		location	Carrier	
2	Space	place		location	Carrier	
3	Space	place	location		Circumstance	
4	Space	place		location	Identified	
5	Space	place		location	Identified	
6	Space	DFP		nature	Identified	
7	Space	DFP		nature	Identified	
8	Space	DFP		nature	Carrier	
9	Time	CS	temporal		Circumstance	
10	Space	DFP		people	Identified	
11	Space	DFP		people	Carrier	
12	Space	DFP		culture	Identified	
13	Space	DFP		culture	Phenomenon	
14	Space	DFP		culture	Goal	
15a	Space	DFP		culture	Identified	
15b	Space	DFP		culture	Identifier	
16a	Space	DFP		culture	Identifier	
16b	Space	DFP		culture	Identified	
17	Space	DFP		people	Actor	
18	Space	DFP		people	Actor	
19	Space	DFP		people	Actor	
20	Space	DFP		people	Actor	
21	Space	DFP		people	Goal	
22	Space	DFP		FP	Identified	
23	Space	DFP		people	Goal	
24	Space	DFP		people	Actor	
25	Space	DFP		NTF	Identified	
26	Time	CS	temporal		Circumstance	
27	Writer	comment	viewpoint		Themd Comnt	*
28	Space	DFP		NTF	Carrier	
29	Space			Exist There	Existent	
30	Space	place		location	Identified	
31	Space	place		location	Carrier	
32	Space	place		location	Carrier	
33	Space	place		location	Carrier	
34	Space	place		location	Carrier	
35	Space	place		location	Carrier	
36	Space	place	location		Circumstance	
37	Space	place		location	Carrier	

38a	Space	place		location	Sayer	
38b	Space			Exist There	Existent	
39	Space	place		location	Identified	
40	Space	place		location	Carrier	
41	Space	place		location	Actor	
42	Space			Exist There	Existent	
43a	Space	place		location	Carrier	
43b	Space	[place]		[location]	[Carrier]	
44	Space	place	attributive		Circumstance	
45	Space	place		location	Identified	
46	Space	place		location	Carrier	
47	Space	place		location	Carrier	
48a	Space	place		location	Carrier	
48b	Space	[place]		[location]	[Carrier]	
49	Space	place		location	Carrier	
50	Reader	visitor		PRAL	[Process]	✓
51	Space	place		location	Carrier	
52	Space	place		location	Carrier	
53	Space	place		location	Carrier	
54	Space			Exist There	Existent	
55a	Reader	visitor		3rd prsn	Beneficiary	✓
55b	Reader	[visitor]		[3rd prsn]	[Beneficiary]	✓
56	Space	place		location	Carrier	
57	Space	place		location	Identified	
58	Space	place	location		Attribute	
59	Space	DFP	nature		Circumstance	
60	Reader	visitor	act		Circumstance	
61	Space	place	location		Carrier	✓

## APPENDIX C5

## Analysis of Topical Themes and Transitivity in Texts 5 about Doha

No	Domain	Topic	Sub-topic		Transitivity	Inter
			Marked	Unmarked		
1	Space	place		location	Identified	
2	Time	history		event	Actor	
3	Space	place		location	Carrier	
4a	Space	place		location	Carrier	
4b	Space	[place]		[location]	[Carrier]	
5	Space	DFP		people	Carrier	
6	Space	place		location	Carrier	
7	Space	place		location	Identified	
8a	Space	place		location	Senser	
8b	Space	[place]		[location]	[Senser]	
9	Space	DFP		people	Carrier	
10	Time	CS	temporal		Circumstance	
11	Space	place		location	Sayer	
12a	Space	DFP		FP	Actor	
12b	Space	[DFP]		[FP]	[Actor]	
13	Time	history	temporal		Circumstance	
14	Space	place		location	Carrier	
15	Space	DFP		nature	Carrier	
16	Time	CS	temporal		Circumstance	
17	Time	CS	temporal		Circumstance	
18	Space	DFP		nature	Identified	
19	Space	DFP		nature	Carrier	
20	Time	CS	temporal		Circumstance	
21a	Space	DFP		NTF	Carrier	
21b	Space	place		location	Carrier	
22a	Space	DFP		nature	Carrier	
22b	Space	DFP		nature	Carrier	
23	Space	place		location	Actor	
24	Space	place		location	Carrier	
25	Space	place		location	Carrier	
26	Space	place		location	Carrier	
27	Space	place		location	Carrier	
28	Space	place		location	Carrier	
29	Space	place		location	Carrier	
30	space	place		location	Carrier	
31	Space	place		location	Carrier	
32	Space			Exist There	Existent	
33	Space	place		location	Actor	
34	Space	place		location	Carrier	

35	Time	CS	temporal		Circumstance	
36	Space	place		location	Identified	
37	Space	place		location	Actor	
38	Space	place		location	Identified	
39a	Space	place		location	Carrier	
39b	Space	[place]		[location]	[Phenomenon]	
40	Space	place		location	Actor	
41	Space	place		location	Carrier	
42	Space	place		location	Carrier	
43	Space	services		leisure	Carrier	
44a	Space	place		location	Carrier	
44b	Space	place		location	Actor	
45a	Space	place		location	Carrier	
45b	Reader	visitor		PRAL	[Process]	✓
46	Space	place		location	Identified	
47	Space	DFP		nature	Carrier	
48	Space	DFP		nature	Carrier	
49	Space	place		location	Carrier	
50	Space			Exist There	Existent	
51	Space	DFP		nature	Carrier	
52a	Space	DFP		nature	Carrier	
52b	Space	[DFP]		[nature]	[Actor]	
53	Reader	visitor		act	Carrier	✓
54a	Reader	visitor		3rd person	Beneficiary	✓
54b	Writer	comment	view point		Themd Comnt	
54c	Space			Exist There	Existent	
55a	Reader	visitor		3rd person	Carrier	✓
55b	Writer	comment	viewpoint		Themd Comnt	
56	Reader	visitor		act	Carrier	✓
57	Space	DFP	nature		Circumstance	
58	Space	DFP		recreation	Attribute	
59	Space	DFP		recreation	Carrier	
60	Space	DFP		recreation	Carrier	
61	Space	services		subsistence	Carrier	
62	Space	DFP		nature	Carrier	
63	Space	DFP		recreation	Carrier	
64a	Space	DFP		recreation	Carrier	
64b	Space	DFP		recreation	Carrier	
65	Space	services		leisure	Identified	
66a	Space	services		leisure	Actor	
66b	Space	[services]		[leisure]	[Carrier]	
67	Space	services		leisure	Carrier	
68	Space	services	leisure		Attribute	
69a	Space	services		leisure	Carrier	
69b	Space			Exist There	Existent	
70	Space	DFP		recreation	Carrier	



71	Space	services		leisure	Carrier	
72	Space			Exist There	Existent	
73a	Space	DFP		culture	Identified	
73b	Space	DFP		people	Carrier	
74a	Space	DFP		location	Actor	
74b	Space	DFP		people	[Actor]	
75a	Space	DFP		people	Behaver	
75b	Space	[DFP]		[people]	[Behaver]	
76	Space	DFP		people	Actor	
77	Space	DFP	NTF		Circumstance	
78	Space	DFP		NTF	Phenomenon	
79	Space	place		location	Carrier	
80	Reader	visitor		regulations	Actor	✓
81	Reader	visitor		3rd person	Actor	✓
82	Reader	visitor		regulations	Goal	✓
83	Space	DFP	NTF		Circumstance	
84	Space	DFP		NTF	Carrier	
85	Space			Exist There	Existent	
86a	Space	place		location	Carrier	
86b	Writer	comment	viewpoint		Themd Comnt	
87	Reader	visitor		3rd prsn	Range	✓
88	Space	DFP		culture	Identified	
89	Space	DFP		culture	Identified	
90a	Space	DFP		culture	Identified	
90b	Space	DFP		culture	Identified	
91	Writer	comment	viewpoint		Themd Comnt	
92	Space	DFP		culture	Carrier	
93	Space			Exist There	Existent	
94	Reader	visitor		regulations	Carrier	✓
95	Reader	visitor	PRAL		Circumstance	✓
96	Reader	visitor		3rd prsn	Beneficiary	✓
97a	Reader	visitor		regulations	Goal	✓
97b	Reader	visitor		regulations	Goal	✓
98	Space	DFP		NTF	Actor	
99	Space	DFP		NTF	Carrier	
100	Space	DFP		NTF	Carrier	
101	Space	DFP		NTF	Carrier	
102	Space	DFP		NTF	Carrier	
103	Space	DFP		NTF	Identified	
104	Reader	visitor		regulations	Goal	
105	Reader	visitor		regulations	Goal	
106	Space	DFP		NTF	Carrier	
107	Reader	visitor		regulations	Identified	
108	Space	DFP		NTF	Identified	
109	Space	DFP	NTF		Circumstance	
110	Space	DFP		NTF	Carrier	

111a	Space	DFP		NTF	Goal	
111b	Space	DFP		NTF	Carrier	
112	Space	DFP		NTF	Phenomenon	
113	Space			Exist There	Existent	
114	Space	DFP		NTF	Goal	

## APPENDIX C6

## Analysis of Topical Themes and Transitivity in Text 6 about Doha

No	Domain	Topic	Sub-topic		Transitivity	Inter
			Marked	Unmarked		
1a	Reader	visitor		PRAL	Process	✓
1b	Reader	visitor		2nd prsn	Actor	✓
2	Space	place	attributive		Circumstance	
3	Space	place		location	Carrier	
4	Space	DFP		culture	Carrier	
5a	Space	place		location	Carrier	
5b	Space	[place]		[location]	[Actor]	
6a	Space	place	attributive		Circumstance	
6b	Time	CFP		event	Actor	
7	Space	place		location	Actor	
8	Space	[place]		[location]	[Actor]	
9	Space	[place]		[location]	[Actor]	
10	Space	place	location		Attribute	
11	Time	CS	temporal		Attribute	
12	Space			Exist There	Existent	
13	Space	place	location		Circumstance	
14a	Time	CFP		event	Carrier	
14b	Time	[CFP]		[event]	[Carrier]	
15	Space	place		location	Carrier	
16	Time	CFP	event		Attribute	

## APPENDIX C7

## Analysis of Topical Themes and Transitivity in Text 7 about Doha

No	Domain	Topic	Sub-topic		Transitivity	Inter
			Marked	Unmarked		
1	Space	DFP		FP	Actor	
2	Time	history	temporal		Circumstance	
3	Space	DFP		NTF	Identified	
4a	Space	DFP		culture	Identified	
4b	Space	DFP		culture	Goal	
5a	Space	DFP		culture	Identified	
5b	Space	place		culture	Identified	
6	Space	place		location	Carrier	
7	Time	CS	temporal		Circumstance	
8a	Space	DFP		nature	Carrier	
8b	Space	DFP		nature	Carrier	
9a	Reader	visitor		regulations	Identified	✓
9b	Reader	visitor		regulations	Carrier	✓
10a	Reader	visitor		regulations	Identified	✓
10b	Reader	visitor		regulations	Identified	✓
11	Reader	visitor		regulations	Identified	
12	Space	place		location	Carrier	
13	Space	place		location	Carrier	
14	Space	DFP		nature	Carrier	
15	Reader	visitor		3rd prsn	Carrier	✓
16	Reader	visitor		regulations	Goal	✓
17	Reader	visitor		regulations	Actor	✓
18a	Space	place		location	Carrier	
18b	Space	place	location		Attribute	
19a	Space	place		location	Carrier	
19b	Space	place		location	Carrier	
19c	Space	[place]		[location]	[Carrier]	
20a	Space	place		location	Identified	
20b	Space	place		location	Carrier	
21a	Space	place		location	Carrier	
21b	Space	[place]		[location]	[Carrier]	
22a	Space	place		location	Carrier	
22b	Space	DFP		people	Actor	
23	Space	place		location	Carrier	
24	Space	place		location	Carrier	
25	Space	place		location	Carrier	
26a	Space	place		location	Carrier	
26b	Space	[place]		[location]	[Carrier]	
27	Space	place		location	Carrier	

28a	Space	place		location	Carrier	
28b	Space	RB		RB	Phenomenon	
29	Space	place		location	Carrier	
30a	Space	place		location	Carrier	
30b	Space	place		location	Carrier	
31a	Space	place		location	Carrier	
31b	Space	place		location	Actor	
31c	Space	place		location	Carrier	
32a	Space	place		location	Carrier	
32b	Space	[place]		[location]	[Identified]	
33	Space	place		location	Goal	
34	Space	place		location	Carrier	
35	Space	place		location	Carrier	
36	Space	DFP		culture	Carrier	
37	Space	place		location	Carrier	
38a	Space	place	attributive		Attribute	
38b	Space	place		location	Carrier	
39	Space	place		location	Sayer	
40	Space	place		location	Carrier	
41a	Space			Exist There	Existent	
41b	Space	[place]		[location]	[Carrier]	
41c	Space	[place]		[location]	[Carrier]	
41d	Space	place		location	Goal	
42	Space	place		location	Identified	
43	Space	place		location	Goal	
44	Space	place		location	Identified	
45	Space	place		location	Identified	
46	Space	place		location	Goal	
47	Space	place		location	Carrier	
48	Space	place		location	Senser	
49	Space	place		location	Carrier	
50	Space	place		location	Carrier	
51a	Space	place		location	Goal	
51b	Space	[place]		[location]	[Carrier]	
52	Space	place		location	Carrier	
53	Space	place		location	Carrier	
54	Space	place		location	Actor	
55	Space	place		location	Identified	
56	Space	DFP		culture	Attribute	
57	Space	DFP		culture	Goal	
58	Space	DFP		culture	Goal	
59	Space	DFP		culture	Identified	
60	Space	DFP		culture	Actor	
61	Space	place		culture	Carrier	
62a	Time	history	temporal		Circumstance	
62b	Time	history	temporal		Circumstance	

63	Space	place		location	Identified	
64	Space	DFP		culture	Carrier	
65	Space	DFP		culture	Actor	
66	Space	DFP		culture	Carrier	
67	Space	DFP		culture	Carrier	
68	Space	DFP		culture	Identified	
69	Space	DFP		culture	Carrier	
70	Space	DFP		culture	Goal	
71	Space	DFP		people	Actor	
72	Space	DFP		people	Actor	
73	Space	DFP		culture	Identified	

## APPENDIX C8

## Analysis of Topical Themes and Transitivity in Text 8 about Doha

No	Domain	Topic	Sub-topic		Transitivity	Inter
			Marked	Unmarked		
1a	Space	place		location	Carrier	
1b	Space	[place]		[location]	[Carrier]	
2	Space	place		location	Carrier	
3	Space	place		location	Carrier	
4	Space	DFP		nature	Identified	
5	Space	DFP		nature	Carrier	
6	Space	DFP		nature	Actor	
7	Space	DFP		FP	Actor	
8	Time	history	temporal		Circumstance	
9	Space	DFP		culture	Identified	
10	Space	place	attributive		Attribute	
11	Space	DFP		people	Identified	
12	Space	DFP		people	Carrier	
13	Time	history		event	Actor	
14a	Space	DFP		culture	Identified	
14b	Space	DFP		culture	Range	
15	Space	DFP		culture	Range	
16	Reader	visitor		act	Phenomenon	✓
17	Space	place		location	Carrier	✓
18	Space	DFP	nature		Circumstance	
19	Time	CS	temporal		Circumstance	
20	Space	DFP		nature	Identified	
21a	Reader	visitor		regulations	Identified	
21b	Reader	[visitor]		[regulations]	[Goal]	
22	Reader	visitor		regulations	Goal	
23	Reader	visitor		regulations	Goal	
24	Space	DFP		NTF	Carrier	
25	Reader	visitor		regulations	Identified	
26	Space	DFP		culture	Identified	
27	Space	DFP		NTF	Carrier	
28	Reader	visitor		regulations	Identified	✓
29	Space	DFP		NTF	Carrier	
30	Space			Exist There	Existent	
31	Space	DFP		NTF	Goal	
32a	Space	DFP		NTF	Identified	✓
32b	Space	DFP		NTF	Identified	
32c	Space	DFP		NTF	Identified	✓
32d	Space	DFP		NTF	Identified	✓
32e	Space	DFP		NTF	Identified	✓

33	Space	services		travel	Actor	
34a	Space	[services]		[travel]	[Carrier]	
34b	Space	[services]		[travel]	[Carrier]	
34a	Space	services		travel	Goal	
35	Space	services		travel	Actor	
36	Space	services		travel	Carrier	
37	Space	services		travel	Goal	
38	Reader	visitor		3rd person	Actor	✓
39	Reader	visitor		regulations	Goal	✓
40	Reader	visitor		regulations	Actor	✓
41a	Reader	[visitor]		[regulations]	[Carrier]	✓
41b	Reader	[visitor]		[regulations]	[Carrier]	✓
41c	Reader	[visitor]		[regulations]	[Carrier]	✓
41d	Reader	[visitor]		[regulations]	[Carrier]	✓
42	Reader	visitor		regulations	Identified	✓
43	Reader	visitor		regulations	Carrier	✓
44	Reader	visitor		regulations	Carrier	✓
45	Space			Exist There	Existent	
46	Reader	visitor		regulations	Carrier	✓
47a	Time	history		event	Carrier	
47b	Time	CFP		event	Carrier	
48	Space	place		location	Carrier	
49a	Space	place		location	Carrier	
49b	Space	[place]		[location]	[Carrier]	
50a	Space	place		location	Carrier	
50b	Space	place	location		Circumstance	
51	Space	place	location		Attribute	
52	Reader	visitor		act	Identified	✓
53	Space	place		nature	Carrier	
54	Space	place		location	Carrier	
55	Reader	visitor		PRAL	Process	✓
56	Space	place		location	Carrier	
57	Space	place		location	Carrier	
58	Space	place		location	Identified	
59	Space	place		location	Carrier	
60	Space	place		location	Actor	
61	Space	place		location	Goal	
62	Space	place		location	Carrier	
63	Space	place		location	Goal	
64a	Space	place		location	Goal	
64b	Reader	visitor		3rd prsn	Actor	✓
65	Space	place		location	Carrier	
66	Space	place		location	Carrier	
67	Space	place		location	Carrier	
68	Space	place		location	Carrier	
69	Reader	visitor		2nd prsn	Senser	✓



70	Space	place		location	Carrier	
71a	Space	place		location	Sayer	
71b	Space			Exist There	Existent	
72	Reader	visitor		regulations	Identified	✓
73	Reader	visitor		2nd prsn	Senser	✓
74	Space	place		location	Carrier	
75	Space			Exist There	Existent	
76a	Reader	visitor		3rd prsn	Target	✓
76b	Reader	[visitor]		[3rd prsn]	[Target]	✓
77	Space	place		location	Carrier	
78	Space	place		location	Carrier	
79a	Space	place		location	Actor	
79b	Space	place		location	Phenomenon	
80a	Space	place		location	Carrier	
80b	Space	[place]		[location]	[Carrier]	
81	Reader	visitor		regulations	Identified	✓
82	Reader	visitor	PRAL		Circumstance	✓
83	Space	place	location		Circumstance	
84	Space	place		location	Goal	
85	Space	place		location	Carrier	

## APPENDIX C9

## Analysis of Topical Themes and Transitivity in Texts 9 about Doha

No	Domains	Topic	Sub-topic		Transitivity	Inter
			Marked	Unmarked		
1	Space	place		location	Carrier	
2	Space	place		location	Carrier	
3	Space	place		location	Carrier	
4	Space	place		location	Identified	
5	Space	place		location	Carrier	
6	Space	place		location	Carrier	
7	Space	DFP		nature	Identified	
8	Space	DFP		nature	Carrier	
9	Space	DFP	nature		Circumstance	
10	Space	place		location	Actor	
11	Space	place		location	Carrier	
12	Time	CS	temporal		Circumstance	
13a	Space	DFP		nature	Carrier	
13b	Space	[DFP]		[nature]	[Actor]	
14	Space	DFP		people	Identified	
15	Space	DFP		people	Carrier	
16	Space	DFP		people	Identified	
17	Time	history		event	Actor	
18	Space	DFP		people	Identified	
19	Space	DFP		people	Actor	
20a	Space	DFP		culture	Identified	
20b	Space	DFP		culture	Identified	
21	Space	place		location	Goal	
22	Space	DFP		FP	Identified	
23a	Space	DFP		FP	Actor	
23b	Space	place		location	Goal	
24	Space	place		location	Carrier	
25	Space	place		location	Identified	
26a	Space	place		location	Goal	
26b	Space	[space]		[location]	[Goal]	
27	Space	place		location	Identified	
28	Space	place		location	Goal	
29	Space	place		location	Carrier	
30	Space	place		location	Carrier	
31	Space	place		location	Carrier	
32	Space	place		location	Carrier	
33	Space	place		location	Carrier	
34	Space	place		location	Goal	
35	Space	place		location	Goal	

36	Space	place		location	Carrier	
37	Space	place		location	Goal	
38	Space	place		location	Carrier	
39	Space	place		location	Carrier	
40	Space	place		location	Carrier	
41	Space	place		location	Goal	
42	Space	place		location	Carrier	
43	Space	place		location	Goal	
44	Space	place		location	Identified	
45	Space	place		location	Carrier	
46	Space	place		location	Goal	
47	Space	place		location	Carrier	
48	Space	place		location	Carrier	
49	Space	place		location	Carrier	
50	Space	place		location	Goal	
51	Space	place		location	Carrier	
52	Space	place		location	Carrier	
53	Space	place		location	Actor	
54	Space	place		location	Carrier	
55	Space	place		location	Carrier	
56	Space	place		location	Carrier	
57	Space	place		location	Identified	
58	Space	place		location	Senser	

## APPENDIX C10

## Analysis of Topical Themes and Transitivity in Text 10 about Doha

No	Domains	Topic	Sub-topic		Transitivity	Inter
			Marked	Unmarked		
1	Time	CS	temporal		Circumstance	
2a	Space	DFP		culture	Actor	
2b	Space	DFP		culture	Goal	
3	Space	place		location	Carrier	
4	Space	DFP		culture	Carrier	
5	Space	place		location	Goal	
6	Space	place		location	Carrier	
7	Space	place		location	Carrier	
8	Space	place		location	Goal	
9	Space	place		location	Carrier	
10	Time	CS	temporal		Circumstance	
11	Space	place		location	Identified	
12	Space	place	location		Attribute	
13	Space	place	location		Circumstance	
14	Space	place		location	Carrier	
15	Space	services		travel	Carrier	
16	Space	place		location	Actor	
17	Space	place		location	Carrier	
18	Space	place		location	Carrier	
19a	Space	place		location	Actor	
19b	Time	history		event	Actor	
20	Space	place		location	Senser	
21	Time	history		event	Goal	
22	Space	place	location		Circumstance	
23	Space	place	location		Attribute	
24	Space	place	location		Attribute	
25	Space	place		location	Carrier	
26	Space	place		location	Goal	
27	Space	place		location	Goal	
28	Time	CFP	temporal		Circumstance	
29	Space	place		location	Carrier	
30	Space	services		subsistence	Actor	
31	Space	services		NTF	Actor	
32	Space	services		NTF	Goal	
33	Space	services		NTF	Carrier	
34	Space	services		NTF	Goal	
35a	Space	services		NTF	Goal	
35b	Space	[services]		[NTF]	[Carrier]	
36	Space	services		subsistence	Carrier	

37	Space	services		NTF	Goal	
38	Space	place		location	Identified	
39	Space	place	attributive		Circumstance	
40	Space	place		location	Carrier	
41	Space	services		subsistence	Carrier	
42	Space	place		location	Carrier	
43	Space	place		location	Actor	
44	Space	place		location	Carrier	
45	Space	place		location	Carrier	
46	Space	place		location	Carrier	
47	Space			Exist There	Existent	
48	Space	services		leisure	Carrier	
49	Space	services		leisure	Identified	
50	Reader	visitor		3rd prsn	Goal	✓
51	Space	services		leisure	Carrier	
52	Space	services		leisure	Identified	
53	Space	services		leisure	Carrier	
54	Space	services		leisure	Carrier	
55	Space	services		leisure	Actor	
56	Space	services		leisure	Carrier	
57	Space	services		leisure	Actor	
58	Space	DFP		recreation	Actor	
59	Space	DFP		people	Actor	
60	Space	place		location	Carrier	
61a	Space			Exist There	Existent	
61b	Space	DFP		recreation	Goal	
62	Space	place		location	Carrier	
63	Space	place		location	Actor	
64	Space	place		location	Carrier	
65	Space	place		location	Identified	
66	Space	place		location	Carrier	
67	Space	place		location	Goal	
68	Reader	visitor		act	Goal	✓
69	Space	place		location	Identified	
70	Space	place		location	Actor	
71	Space	place	location		Attribute	
72	Space	place	location		Attribute	
73	Space	place		location	Carrier	
74	Space	place		location	Goal	
75	Space	place	location		Attribute	
76	Space	place	location		Attribute	
77	Space	place	attributive		Circumstance	
78a	Space	place		location	Goal	
78b	Space	[place]		[location]	[Goal]	
79	Space	place		location	Actor	
80	Writer	comment	viewpoint		Themd Comnt	*

81	Space	place	location		Attribute	
82	Time	CS	temporal		Circumstance	
83a	Space	place		location	Carrier	
83b	Space	[place]		[location]	[Carrier]	
84	Space	place	location		Attribute	
85	Reader	visitor		regulations	Goal	✓
86	Space	place	location		Circumstance	
87	Space	place		location	Identified	
88	Space	place		location	Identified	
89	Space	place		location	Carrier	
90	Space	place		location	Carrier	
91	Space	DFP		culture	Actor	
92	Space	Place	location		Circumstance	
93	Space	place	location		Circumstance	
94	Space	place	location		Circumstance	
95	Time	history		event	Actor	
96	Space	place	location		Circumstance	
97	Space	DFP		nature	Carrier	
98	Space	place		location	Carrier	
99	Space	place		location	Carrier	
100	Space	place	location		Attribute	
101a	Space	place	location		Attribute	
101b	Space	place	location		Attribute	
102	Space	place	location		Attribute	
103	Space	place	location		Circumstance	
104	Space	DFP		nature	Carrier	
105	Space	place	location		Circumstance	
106	Space	place		location	Carrier	
107	Space	place		location	Actor	
108	space	place	attributive		Circumstance	
109	Space	place		location	Actor	
110	Space	place	location		Attribute	
111	Space	place		location	Actor	
112a	Space	DFP	nature		Circumstance	
112b	Space	[DFP]		[nature]	[Carrier]	
113	Space	place	location		Circumstance	
114	Space	place		location	Carrier	
115	Space	services	travel		Circumstance	
116	Space			Exist There	Existent	
117	Space			Exist There	Existent	
118	Space			Exist There	Existent	
119	Space	services		travel	Actor	
120	Space			Exist There	Existent	
121	Space			Exist There	Existent	
122a	Space	services		travel	Actor	
122b	Space			Exist There	Existent	

123	Reader	visitor		regulations	Carrier	✓
124	Reader	visitor		regulations	Carrier	✓
125	Reader	visitor		3rd prsn	Actor	✓
126	Reader	visitor		3rd prsn	Beneficiary	✓
127a	Reader	visitor		3rd prsn	Carrier	✓
127b	Reader	[visitor]		[3rd prsn]	[Goal]	✓
128	Reader	visitor		3rd prsn	Actor	✓
129	Space	DFP		culture	Identified	
130	Space	DFP		culture	Range	
131	Space	place		location	Carrier	
132a	Space	DFP		culture	Carrier	
132b	Space	[DFP]		[culture]	[Carrier]	
133a	Space	DFP		culture	Carrier	
133b	Space	DFP		culture	Carrier	
134	Reader	visitor		3rd prsn	Target	✓
135a	Space	DFP		culture	Identified	
135b	Space	DFP		culture	Identified	
135c	Space	DFP		culture	Identified	
135d	Reader	visitor		regulations	Identified	✓
135e	Reader	visitor		regulations	Identified	✓
136	Reader	visitor		regulations	Goal	✓
137	Reader	visitor		regulations	Identified	
138	Reader	visitor		regulations	Carrier	
139	Space			Exist There	Existent	
140	Reader	visitor		3rd prsn	Goal	✓
141	Reader	visitor		regulations	Carrier	✓
142	Reader	visitor		3rd prsn	Actor	✓
143a	Space	services		subsistence	Identified	
143b	Space	services		subsistence	Carrier	
144	Reader	visitor		3rd prsn	Beneficiary	✓
145	Space	services		leisure	Beneficiary	
146	Reader	visitor	regulations		Circumstance	✓
147	Time	CS	temporal		Circumstance	
148a	Space	DFP		people	Carrier	
148b	Reader	visitor		3rd prsn	Behaver	✓
149	Time	CS	temporal		Circumstance	
150a	Reader	visitor		3rd prsn	Material	✓
150b	Reader	visitor		3rd prsn	Behaver	✓

## **Appendices to Liverpool: D1-D10**

### **The Original Versions of Texts**



## APPENDIX D1

<b>Text 1 about Liverpool</b>
-------------------------------

**BUDGET GUIDE BRITAIN**, Antonia Hebbert. Hampshire: Automobile Association (1991).

**Liverpool** Depending on your viewpoint, Liverpool means the Beatles, or football, or good art collections, or urban dereliction-it's a mixture of all those things, and well worth a visit if you don't mind a city that shows more wear and tear than usual.

The city prospered as a transatlantic port at the mouth of the River Mersey from the 16th century onwards, and it has some impressive 19th and 20<sup>th</sup> century architecture, including two cathedrals.

Even locals get confused by the city centre one-way system, so if you want to drive into the city, you're advised to park and then walk or use buses to get around. There are plenty of buses, buses to get around, and most of the main 'sights' are within a square mile. For information on all bus, train and ferry travel on Merseyside, consult one of the Mersey travel shops, at Williamson Square or Clayton Square in the city centre, or at Pier Head. The city isn't ideal for cyclists .

A tour bus sets off from Clayton Square every day at 1 pm for a one-hour rip round the main city landmarks. Guided walks start here every Thursday in summer also there are also maritime walks on summer Saturdays. The Beatles Magical History Tour is a two-hour bus trip round sights such as Penny Lane and Strawberry Fields, starting at Clayton Square at 2.33 pm daily.

The Walker Art Gallery has one of England's best art collections outside London- it's especially good for early Italian and Flemish paintings, and pre-Raphaelite pictures. There's also an award-winning sculpture gallery (free).

Next door is the Liverpool Museum, with artefacts from far afield; admission free, except for the Planetarium. There's no charge for the Natural History Centre on the second floor. The Museum of Labour History on the other side of the Walker is about Merseyside people; admission free.

Liverpool Cathedral is Britain's largest, an early 20th-century Gothic-style structure. Admission is free but donations are welcome, and you have to pay to climb the tower, for huge views. In contrast, the Metropolitan cathedral has a very modern look. It was completed in 1967 and rises to a crown of tall pinnacles.

Pier Head is the departure point for ferries-and it's the best place to see the waterfront skyline formed by the Cunard Building, the Port of Liverpool Building and the Royal Liver Building, unmistakable with its 'Liver Birds' on the twin towers. The Birds are mythical creatures, and are said to have given Liverpool its name. ('Liver' rhymes with 'diver'). Part of the ground floor is open to the public.

You can use the Mersey ferry to reach Wallasey and Birkenhead on the other side, or ask for a 'Stay Aboard Return'. The 'Ferry' cross the Mersey' Cruise is a 50-minute round trip. All boats have refreshments.

South of Pier Head around Albert Dock is a huge quadrangle of restored warehouses. The Maritime Museum includes a reconstruction of an emigrant's ship, ship models and real boats, among other things. It also has events, and ticket holders qualify for a free boat ride. Some areas are closed from November to April. The other big museum is the Tate Gallery Liverpool, which puts on exhibitions from the national collection of modern art at the Tate in London (admission free). There are shops and eating places round the dock; also here is the Beatles Story, a 'sixties experience'. You're warned to beware of pickpockets at Albert Dock.

Entertainment needn't cost the earth cheapest tickets for the Playhouse start at around 1 pound for a matinee performance, and the highest prices aren't very high. Other venues include the Empire for major touring productions, the Everyman, Bluecoat Arts Centre and Unity for innovative shows-and there are others, in and near the city.

The Philharmonic Hall is the home of the Royal Liverpool Philharmonic Orchestra; the Royal Court has rock.

**Speke Hall** Speke Hall is a half-timbered Elizabethan manor house, south of Liverpool beside the Mersey. Run by the National Trust, it's open from April to October (closed Monday except bank holidays). Public transport takes you only as far as the airport half a mile away: take the train to Garston (about 10 minutes from Liverpool Central train station on the Northern Line, and then the airport bus (short ride).

### **Southport and Coastal Nature Reserves**

The National Trust runs 470 acres of dunes and pinewoods at Rormby as a nature reserve. It's a pretty place to walk, and you'll almost certainly see red squirrels. Admission is free; there is a charge for parking. It's just under a mile from Freshfield train station about half an hour from Liverpool Central station on the Northern Line.

Southport is a leafy resort to the north of Liverpool (40 minutes from Liverpool train station on the Northern Line). Lord Street in the middle of town is wide and tree-lined with delicate wrought-iron canopies above the shops. The Atkinson Art Gallery is worth a leisurely visit (closed Sunday, admission free), as are the Botanic Gardens on the northern edge of town (admission free). Southport has lots of resort amusements, and miles of sandy beach. The sea is often invisible, but beware a fast-moving tide if you walk out in search of it. Bathing isn't recommended anyway.

Martin Mere is a Wildfowl and Wetland Trust centre, with wild birds from all over the world among pools, marshes and garden, plus thousands of migrant waterfowl in winter. A nature trail runs between bird-watching hides. The centre is 10 miles east of Southport: public transport is by train from Southport to Burscough Bridge and from there by bus.

**APPENDIX D2****Text 2 about Liverpool**

***TOURING GUIDE TO ENGLAND***, Russell Beach (ed.) London: Automobile Association (1974).

Liverpool is an important shipping, university, and cathedral city situated on the Mersey estuary. A settlements has existed here for some time-the north bank of the Mersey bore a community as long ago as the 1st-c AD. This had grown into a thriving fishing village by 1200, and was granted a charter by King John. Much later the town expanded with the onset of heavy trade with the West Indies, and also became connected with the slave trade. However, it was not until the introduction of steamships in the 1840's that Liverpool began to take on its present form.

The famous dockside frontage extends for 7m and forms one of the finest systems to be found anywhere. The landing stage is the largest floating quay in the world, and stretches for half a mile on floating pontoons. Leeds and Liverpool Canal terminates here. The 17-storey Royal Liver building rises to 295 ft, and displays two towers surmounted by legendary liver birds. It is flanked by the Cunard building and the dock Board offices, and the three buildings combine to form an impressive waterfront.

The new Anglican Cathedral by Sir Giles Gilbert Scott was begun in 1904 and displays notable stained glass and a fine organ. In striking contrast is the new RC Cathedral of Christ the King, designed by Sir F Gibberd in 1959 and consecrated in 1967. Features of the latter include a stained-glass tower and a central white-marble altar. Sir Edwin Lutyens conceived and planned for this building in 1933, but the only part of his design to reach fruition was the remarkable crypt which is of particular note.

Restored Bluecoat Chambers are situated in School Lane and date from 1714. St George's Hall of 1854 was designed by Harvey Lonsdale Elwes, at the age of 24. John Wood of Bath designed the town hall in 1749, which was later enlarged by James Wyatt. The restored museum and Walker Art Gallery are also notable. The old

parish church of St Nicholas was rebuilt in 1952, except for the tower of 1815, and stands in a memorial garden facing Pierhead. Several good Georgian houses can be seen in the town.

Gladstone was born at 62 Rodney Street, and Felicia Hemans at 118 Duke Street. The Queensway road tunnel of 1934 runs under the Mersey, and was duplicated by the Kingsway tunnel in 1971. Both link with Birkenhead. Liverpool has two leading football teams and is traditionally the home of comedians and other entertainers. The airport lies SE near Speke.

**APPENDIX D3****Text 3 About Liverpool**

***TREASURES OF BRITAIN AND TREASURES OF IRELAND.***  
London: Drive Publications Limited (1968).

**LIVERPOOL**

The city holds a charter granted by King John in 1207. It had a Norman castle (on the site of the present Queen Victoria memorial) the ruins of which were removed in 1725. At the time of the first Stuarts the population was only 1000, but by the early 18th century the town had a thriving trade mainly connected with the slave trade. The coming of the railways altered Liverpool entirely, and it was from this port that the first ocean steamship line operated across the Atlantic in 1840.

Sudley Gallery, an early 19th-century merchant's house, supplements the treasures of the Walker Art Gallery. The Picton, Hornby and Brown libraries together have more than 200,000 volumes. Liverpool University originated with university College (1881), which was raised by royal charter in 1903 to full university status. The city has two cathedrals, Anglican and Roman Catholic.

**ANGLICAN CATHEDRAL** The red sandstone cathedral of Liverpool was begun in 1903 by Sir Giles Gilbert Scott. More than half a century later the cathedral is still incomplete; the west end and one bay of the nave have still to be built. Although the style is Classical Greek, Scott's design is essentially original, dominant feature being the large central tower. In 1925 Scott himself laid the last stone of the 173 ft high tower, which has double transepts on either side. The first part of the cathedral to be finished was the Lady Chapel, which was consecrated in 1910. It is estimated that completion will be in the 1970's.

**BLUECOAT CHAMBERS** An example of Queen Anne architecture, built in 1717, the house was acquired in 1927 as a centre for painters, sculptors, musicians and the arts generally under the supervision of the Bluecoat Society of Arts. (By appointment.)

**CITY MUSEUM** The original building, designed by John Weightman, was destroyed by fire in 1941. Phase one of the rebuilding, opened in 1966, includes some of the museum's treasures, an aquarium and items of local history. (See p. 279.)

**HORNBY LIBRARY POEMS** by Johnson and Cowper, letters from Nelson, Byron, Gladstone and Verdi, and signatures of many British monarchs, are part of the autograph collection in this extensive library. The book collection contains about 8000 rare books, and there are many manuscripts, book illustrations (the collection is especially rich in French illustrated books, prints and examples of bookbinding and printing).

**ROMAN CATHOLIC CATHEDRAL** The Circumstanceular cathedral was consecrated in 1967; its dominant feature is the central lantern tower with slender, spiky pinnacles, some 290 ft high, above an aluminum roof. This lantern, with stained glass by John Piper and Patrick Reyntiens, (who also worked on Coventry Cathedral) illuminates the interior of the cathedral with a pool of light over the central altar. Radiating from the walls are chapels of various shapes, with stained glass windows and austere ornament. At the west is a wedge-shaped belfry-cum-porch, 90 ft high, forming the principal entrance. (See P. 277.)

**ST GEORGE'S HALL** Liverpool possesses one of the great Victorian Classical buildings-St George's Hall, masterpiece of the young architect, Harvey Lonsdale Elmes. He began work on it in 1842, but died at the age of 34 in 1847, long before the project was finished. The great vault was the work of Sir Robert Rawlinson, to Elmes's designs, and C. R. Cockerell completed the exterior and the interior decoration. St George's Hall, inaugurated in 1854, stands in the centre of the city. The Hall is of Classical Greek design; the facade has a great portico of Corinthian columns, and is further decorated with partly free-standing square piers of the same

order. There is another, smaller portico of columns at the south end of the hall, while the north end is semi Circumstanceular.

**SPEKE HALL** One of the finest Elizabethan half-timbered houses in the country. It was built around a courtyard in 1530-98 and was formerly moated. Internally it is like a maze, with secret chambers and hideaways. The great hall contains elaborated 16th- and 17th-century plaster work, and in the great parlour is a representation of a local giant, reputed to have been nearly 10 ft tall. The house was built by the Norris family, who owned it until 1797. Between 1720 and 1797 it was rented to local farmers, but was restored and refurnished by 1812.

**TOWN HALL** The present building was completed in 1754 to the design of John Wood of Bath. The original building was largely destroyed by fire in 1795; immediate rebuilding on the original idea was begun, a council chamber being added in 1811. On a newly devised dome, Felix Rossi's statue of Minerva was mounted in 1802.

**WALKER ART GALLERY** Named after Sir Andrew Barclay Walker, who donated the money for its construction. It has a notable collection of European and English paintings, including work by the Pre-Raphalelites; there are 20th-century paintings and sculptures.



## APPENDIX D4

## Text 4 about Liverpool

*ILLUSTRATED GUIDE TO BRITAIN.* London: Drive Publications Ltd. (1976).

The northern bank of the River Mersey was first settled in the 1st century AD. By 1200 there was a fishing village on the Mersey, which was granted a charter by King John in 1207. Trading with the West Indies, and the slave trade, led to a surge of expansion in the late 17th and early 18th centuries, but it was not until the coming of the steamships in the 1840's that Liverpool began to take on its modern form. The steamships were introduced just as the Irish potato famine caused millions of Irishmen to emigrate. Tens of thousands got only to Liverpool.

Two tunnels under the Mersey connect Liverpool to Birkenhead. There is also a passenger ferry from the Pier Head landing stage in Liverpool to Bierkenhead and Seacombe, and the best view of Liverpool's 7 miles of water-front is obtained from one of these ferries. Dominating the busy scene is the Liver (pronounced Lie-ver) Building-the offices of the Royal Liver Friendly Society. Its two main towers are topped by "Liver" birds, mythical birds from which the city is said to have taken its name. Underneath is the largest floating landing stage in the world, stretching for half a mile on 200 pontoons. The central docks are used by vessels bound for Ireland. Gladstone Dock, further north, commemorates the Victorian statesman who was born in Liverpool at 62 Rodney Street, which still had fine Georgian houses.

Liverpool's two modern cathedrals, both on high ground overlooking the city, are examples of two distinct kinds of ecclesiastical architecture. The Anglican Liverpool Cathedral, begun in 1904 by Sir Giles Gilbert Scott but still not completed, is built of red stone in Gothic style. It was damaged by bombs in the Second World War, and its fine peal of bells was first rung in 1951. Its aisles are unusual in being built as tunnels through the walls, and there is much fine stained glass. The Roman Catholic Metropolitan cathedral was designed by Sir Fredrich Gibberd and consecrated in

1967. The glass was designed by John Piper and Patrick Reyntiens. The building was originally designed by Sir Edwin Lutyens as a huge Classical domed building, but the war and soaring costs dictated the change of plan to a more contemporary design.

Liverpool is famed for its enlightened patronage of the arts. The Walker Art Gallery has a fine collection of European and English paintings, which includes Pre-Paphaelites. The Royal Liverpool Philharmonic Orchestra plays in the Philharmonic Hall, which was bought for the orchestra by the city. The University of Liverpool is expanding rapidly, and the Mossley Hill area will eventually become a university "village" accommodating nearly 1500 students. Liverpool's poets, artists, writers and entertainers have made a lasting mark on the cultural life of the nation, particularly since the emergence of the Liverpool-born Beatles to international fame in the 1960's.

The city is famous for its sport, too. Goodison Park, Everton's ground, is one of the biggest football stadiums in Britain. Anfield, Liverpool's ground, has the famous "Kop", where chanting fans pack the steep terraces behind one of the goals. Aintree Racecourse is the scene of the Grand National in the spring.

A semicircle of industrial towns, including Crosby, Bootle, Kirkby, St Helens and Widnes, lies between Liverpool and the low-lying agricultural region beyond. This was marshland until it was reclaimed in the late 17th and early 18th centuries; now it is fertile farming land ideal for potato-growing.

**APPENDIX D5****Text 5 about Liverpool**

**BOOK OF BRITISH TOWNS**, Philip Llewellyn and Ann Saunders. London: Drive Publications Limited (1976).

**LIVERPOOL Merseyside****A busy port and city on the Lancashire coast**

There was a settlement on the north bank of the River Mersey in the 1st century, close to a muddy creek, or "lifrugpool". By 1200 a fishing village has grown up, and in 1207 King John granted "Livpul" a charter to encourage the development of a port. Modern Liverpool's growth began in the late 17th and early 18th centuries, with the West Indies sugar trade and the slave trade. The coming of the steamship in the 1840s made the port busier than ever. It became a terminal for the Cunard and White Star Liners, and for merchant ships from all parts of the world, with 7 miles of docks along its waterfront.

The steamships took emigrants to Australia, Canada and America, and they brought in thousands of Irish refugees from the potato famines of the 1840s. Many got no further than Liverpool and, as other nationalities followed, the city began to take on the cosmopolitan character which it still retains. Today the mighty transatlantic liners have gone, but Liverpool is still Britain's second largest port after London.

Liverpool's **Anglican cathedral**, the largest in Britain, is 671 ft long and stands on a wooded slope to the east of the city. The central tower is 331 ft high, and spans the full width of the building. It is built of red sandstone to a Gothic design by Sir Giles Gilbert Scott. The foundation stone was laid in 1904 by Edward VII, but, interrupted by two World Wars, the building was finally completed in 1978.

## **Prime Minister**

Just north of the cathedral is Rodney Street, one of the finest groups of Georgian houses in northern England. William Ewart Gladstone (1809-98), who was Prime Minister four times in the reign of Queen Victoria, was born at No. 62.

The city's **Roman Catholic cathedral** stands about half a mile further north, also on high ground. The original plan was for a building that would be second only to St Peter's in Rome. But soaring costs and war-time interruptions caused a change of plan. The present buildings, designed by Sir Fredrick Gibberd in 1960, was consecrated in 1967. It is cylindrical in shape, with a conical roof topped by a tapering, coloured-glass tower.

A detached bell-tower stands at one side of the main building, and is balanced by the Chapel of Sacrament at the other side.

One of the most imposing buildings in Liverpool, **St George's Hall**, was designed by Lonsdale Elmes, who was only 24 when the foundation stone was laid in 1838. Elmes died at the age of 33, and the building was finished seven years later in 1854.

St George's Hall has been described as the finest example of the Greco-Roman style in Europe. Sixteen Corinthian columns, each about 60 ft high, make up the front portico, which is approached through St John's Gardens.

The main hall can accommodate 1,750 people. Its sunken floor is made up of 20,000 tiles mixed with bands of stone to produce a mosaic effect.

Liverpool's Town Hall was completed in 1754 to the design of John Wood, the architect who gave the city of Bath much of its elegance. The figure of Minerva by Felkix Rossi was added to the dome in 1802.

Many priceless treasures are displayed in the building, and the visitor's book contains signatures of royalty, British and foreign statesmen, soldiers, diplomats and personalities of the theatre covering several generations.

The chandeliers in the large ball-room were made in 1820. Each one is 28 ft long, contains 20,000 pieces of crystal and weighs more than a ton.

### **Lord Mayor's gift**

Sir Andrew Barclay Walker, Lord Mayor of Liverpool in 1873, provided the money to build the **Walker Art Gallery** which contains the largest collection of paintings in Britain outside London. Among the famous works on display are: *And when did you last see your father*: by W. F. Yeames, *Rubens' Virgin and child with St Elizabeth and the child Baptist*, *Martini's Christ discovered in the Temple* and a *Holbein portrait of Henry VIII*.

Other paintings include works by Hogarth, Reynolds, Tumer and George Stubbs, who was born in Liverpool. Also on view are sculptures by Rodin, Renoir, Le Hongre and Epstein.

**The Merseyside County Museum** in William Brown Street contains an aquarium and transport gallery in the basement, while the ground floor is devoted to the development of the City and the Port.

The first floor covers the history of the Ship and on the third floor is the Time Keeping Gallery with a fine collection of watches, clocks and a reconstruction of Chinese waterclock. Also on the third floor is a public planetarium.

**Speke Hall**, near the south-east border of the city and close to the airport, was started in 1490 by Sir William Norris. The house was completed in 1610 in its present form of four wings surrounding a cobbled courtyard. It escaped 18th century modernisation, and looks today as it did towards the end of the reign of Elizabeth I. With its black and-white half-timbering it is one of the best houses of the period in existence.

Much of the interior furnishing reflects the tastes of Richard Watt, a wealthy merchant who acquired the house in 1797, and his successors in the 19th century. The

kitchen includes an array of copper ware, a collection of smoothing irons and some early vacuum cleaners.

The first Mersey road tunnel, the **Queensway tunnel**, was opened in 1934 by George V. It is nearly 3 miles long and runs between Liverpool and Birkenhead. When opened, it was the world's longest underwater tunnel. The **Kingsway Tunnel** is 5 1/2 mile long and links Liverpool with Wallasey. It was opened by the Queen in 1971.

## APPENDIX D6

## Text 6 about Liverpool

*The Economist Business Travellers's Guides BRITAIN*, Brigid Avison (ed.). London: William Sons & Co. Ltd. (1987).

## LIVERPOOL

Liverpool was once Britain's greatest seaport but, more than any other major industrial city, it has found difficulty in adapting to life in post-industrial Britain. The changes Liverpool has had to face are profound—the shift away from conventional cargo handling to containerized freight, from sea to air travel, from trade with the Empire to trade with Europe (favouring east coast ports and roll-on/roll-off ferries). At the same time, the city has had its share of the problems facing the whole of the industrial north, most significantly a huge decline in the demand for manufacturing capacities. But Liverpool was slow to come to terms with these changes. Unemployment in the area is severe, and a highly charged social and political atmosphere had developed. In 1981, major riots erupted in the Toxteth district; more recently, the radical labour council found itself simultaneously at odds with the Conservative government and the national labour party hierarchy by driving the city towards bankruptcy.

In the wake of the riots there has been considerable investment in highly visible projects designed to boost Merseyside's morale, image and economy, such as the highly successful International Garden Festival in 1984 and the splendid restoration of the disused South dock, close to the city centre. The big new freeport to the north of the city has failed to attract the hoped-for investment in manufacturing industry but has had some success in building up entrepot business. There have been big investments in new plant by such companies as Ford, FM, Unilever (Which has a very big presence in Merseyside) and Bibby Edible Oils. The clothing retailer Littlewoods has brought in a Hong Kong supplier to manufacture here. Across the river at Birkenhead, Cammel Laird has a full order book for its (admittedly much shrunken) shipyard.

There is no shortage of other well-known names represented in the area-Plessey, Otis Elevator, Metal Box, Nabisco, United Biscuits, GEC, BICC, AC Delco, for example. Although the city's status as a financial centre received a blow in 1986 when the Bank of England closed its branch here, it retains a sizable financial and insurance community, with the UK headquarters of Royal Insurance pre-eminent. But the local pride for which "Scousers" (Liverpudlians) are renowned has taken a battering from which it is taking a long time to recover.

### **Arriving**

Liverpool's airport handles no international scheduled flights, but Manchester's International Airport is only 30 miles/48 km to the east and easily reached by motorway. Road and rail links with the rest of industrial Lancashire and with other parts of Britain are good. There are car ferry services from Dublin and Belfast.

### **Liverpool Airport**

The airport is at Speke, about 6 miles/10 km southeast of the city centre, less than 30 min by car. There are scheduled flights from London Heathrow (five a day, flight time 70 min), Belfast, Dublin, Jersey and the Isle of Man.

**City Link.** There is no direct rail or subway link. A taxi is the best into the centre; journey time 20 min. If doing business outside the city centre, consider renting a car; both Hertz and Avis have desks.

### **Railway station**

Lime street is the main station. There are direct and reasonably frequent express services from Scotland, the northeast via Manchester and London via Birmingham (2hr 40 min from Euston on the fastest services). The Liverpool Pullman is a predominantly First Class service to and from London, running, midday and evening, on which meals are served at your seat. A sleeper train leaves London Euston just before midnight; it gets to Lime Street in the early hours, but you can stay in bed until 8 am. There is now a direct daily service between Lime Street and the Channel port of Dover. The taxi rank usually has plenty of cabs. Timetable inquiries telephone 709 9696.



## Getting around

The city centre is quite small, and the business district in particular is very compact. Expect to get around on foot, with the aide of the occasional taxi or subway ride. Consider renting a car if planning to visit industrial sites or the docks.

**Walking** The business and shopping areas are not unusually hazardous; but "clubland", south of Hanover Street and Central subway station, is an area where you need to be on your guard at night.

**Taxis** are the London black cab variety. They are not easy to find on the street; telephone reservations *City Kabs telephone 264-7474, Liver Cabs telephone 922 1761.*

**Subway** Merseyrail underground railway links Lime street and James Street station, which serves the waterfront and financial area. The system is slightly confusing: trains on the Wirral Line cross the river and come into the centre from the west, go in a clockwise circle through the four city stations (James Street, Moorfields. Lime Street and Central:, and then go back across the river. The separate Northern line runs parallels to the Mersey, meeting the loop of the Wirral line at Moorfields and Central. Services start around 6 am and finish before midnight.

**Driving** Apart from the area around Lime Street, Liverpool's street network presents few problems for drivers, partly because a broad and uncongested highway runs close to the centre, separating it from the river Mersey. Two road tunnels cross the Mersey: one to Birkenhead, which starts close to the city centre (the westbound entrance and eastbound exit are some way apart), the other to Wallasey, reached via the A59. Parking in the centre is seldom a problem, but thefts of and from cars have grown considerably in recent years; leave your car in off-street parks or well-lit streets. If renting a car, *Avis, Budget, Europcar* and *Hertz* have offices.

**Limousines.** *Davy Liver telephone 709 4646, Wirral executive Cars telephone 644 7565.*

**Ferry** Three services an hour cross the Mersey to Brikenhead and Wallasey from Pier Head; journey time 8 min.

### **Area by area**

The main business area lies directly behind the three majestic waterfront buildings which announced Liverpool to approaching voyagers-from north to south, the Royal Liver building, the Cunard building (now the Customs house) and the Dock Board Offices. This part of the city, with its grand Victorian stone buildings, is as prosperous as ever. The banks and insurance companies are to be found here-the modern headquarters of Royal Insurance, known locally as "the sandcastle", is at the northwest corner of the area- along with accountants and lawyers (and the courts). The waterfront district consists of little else but office buildings. There are derelict areas on the fringes, but there are also slick new buildings and impressive renovations-notably Mercury Court, an office development which retains the facade of the old Exchange station. Beyond Castle Street, away from the river, there is more variety and shopping bustle.

The main shopping area is further "inland", east of the business district, running up to Lime Street station; many of the streets are traffic-free. Immediately south of Central station, around Duke Street and Seel Street, is a slightly seedy area where many of the city's nightclubs are to be found disused warehouses, and beyond "clubland" is "Chinatown", home of the biggest Chinese community in Europe. Much of this part of the city dates from the 18th C and the Georgian architecture is well preserved in Rodney Street, in which many professional practices have their offices. A little way east of the centre, on rising ground, are most of Liverpool's major institutions- the University, the hospitals, the Catholic cathedral.

### **The suburbs**

Surrounding the city centre is a belt of innercity decay, the southern end of which meets the Mersey at Toxteth. Beyond that are the more prosperous suburbs, the most fashionable, of which are close to the river-in the southeast, Grassendale Park (right on the river) and Calderstones; in the northwest, Crosby and Blundellsands. But top executives are more likely to live outside the city- either further up the coast towards the elegant seaside resort of Southport, or across the Mersey on the Wirral peninsula. The smart areas there are on the western side-Caldy, and West Kirkby.

## Hotels

Most of Liverpool's business hotels are fairly functional buildings dating from the early 1970s. Only the Atlantic Tower can be wholeheartedly recommended; it is not a great hotel, but it has no important drawbacks and is well placed for the business district. The Adelphi is in a category all its own- a relic of an earlier age.

## Restaurants

There is a shortage of restaurants suitable for business entertaining.

Most are casual places where interesting food is more easily found than elegant decor, privacy or particularly attentive service. For a more formal meal, the following are the best bets.

## Bars

For a relaxed drink in the business district the obvious choice is *Trials*, Castle St (see *Restaurants*)- a sumptuously decorated cafebar (open 9.30 am-10.30 pm) with comfortable and well-spaced sofas arranged on various levels. *Cains*, North John St is a semibasement bar-pub, on the fringe of the business district, which is soon filled to capacity at lunchtime. Liverpool is famous for its pubs, several of which are remarkable for their extravagant period decor; the best is the *Philharmonic*, 36 Hope St.

## Entertainment

Liverpool prides itself on its entertainment scene; quite apart from its exceptional contribution to pop music, it has strong traditions in drama and poetry. The two main sources of information, both free and neither comprehensive, are the month *Look Alive* and the fortnightly *What's On*.

Theatre, ballet, opera. The *Empire*, Lime St telephone 709 1555, the biggest two-tier theatre in Britain, hosts a wide variety of large-scale theatrical and musical events including ballet and opera by visiting companies. There are several smaller theatres: the *playhouse*, Williamson Sq telephone 709 8663, credit card telephone 709 4776 - innovative productions of classic and contemporary plays; the *Neptune*, Hanover St telephone 709 4988 alternative theatre.

**Music** The splendid 1930s *Philharmonic Hall*, Hope St telephone 709 3789 is the home of the long-established Royal Liverpool Philharmonic orchestra. During the main season (Sep, Apr) there are concerts on most Wednesday and Saturday evenings. In the summer there is a short Prom season, and occasional lunchtime recitals by members of the orchestra. There are also various pubs, clubs and societies where folk, jazz and rock sessions are to be found.

### **Shopping**

Liverpool lacks the prosperity to support many attractive shops. The most sophisticated are to be found in Cavern Walks, a small-scale mall in Mathew Street, close to the commercial area; these include several fashion shops as well as specialist retailers. Nearby, around the crossing of Victoria Street and North John Street, are some of the more expensive men's clothes shops. Otherwise, the main shopping area is around Church Street, where there are several department stores.

### **Sightseeing**

Liverpool is unexpectedly rich in interesting sights, particularly striking buildings and some good art collections. None of this is obvious if you visit Tourist Information Centre, which still concentrates on The Beatles. (Fans can pay homage at the site of the Cavern Club, Mathew St, or at the Beatles City "experience", Seel St.).

**Albert Dock Village.** The dock's splendid 19th C warehouses (the largest group of Grade 1 Listed Buildings in Britain) have been restored and turned into both a civic asset and a tourist attraction. The "pavilions", as they are known, now have gift shops, restaurants and part of the Maritime Museum's collection. In 1988, the Tate Gallery North will open in the largest warehouse, the rest of which is being converted into apartments. *Open every day from 10 am.*

**The Bluecoat.** The city's oldest building, with a permanent exhibition of modern British ceramics, jewellery and textiles, and changing art exhibitions, School La.. *Open Tue-Fri, 10.30-5.30.*

Merseyside Maritime Museum. A vivid display of Liverpool's seafaring history, also a major permanent exhibition about the 7m Europeans who emigrated to Australia and the New World via Liverpool in the years 1830-1930. *Pier Head. Open Easter-Nov, daily, 10.30-5.30. Sudley Art Gallery* 19thC merchant's house with good collection of 18th and 19thC British paintings, including some by Turner. *Mossley Hill RD. Open Mon-Sat, 10-5; Sun, 2-5.*

*Transworld Festival Gardens.* A garden and leisure park created for the 1984 international Garden Festival, on a previously derelict riverside site. *Riverside Dr. Open daily, 10 am-dusk.*

*Walker Art Gallery.* The largest collection of paintings in Britain outside London, including works by Rubens, Hogarth and the Pre-Raphaelites; also the highly regarded Peter Moores Modern Art Exhibition. William Brown St. *Open Mon-Sat, 10-5; Sun, 2-5.*

*Notable buildings, Metropolitan Cathedral of Christ the Kings* Brownlow hill: strikingly modern Catholic church, conical in shape, consecrated in 1967. *Anglican cathedral:* Britain's largest cathedral, built in traditional style in the early part of this century by Sir Giles Gilbert Scott; fine city views. *St Geroge's Hall:* impressive, classically styled 19thC building near Lime Street station, used for organ concerts.

### **Spectator sports**

Merseyside and its hinterland have a strong sporting tradition. In Liverpool itself, soccer rules the roost with two top class teams, Liverpool and Everton; but both rugby codes are strongly represented in neighbouring towns, and the event for which Liverpool is probably most famous is a horse-race.

**Racing.** One of the few top events in the British sporting calendar to be held outside the southeast is the Grand National steeplechase, run in early April at *Aintree* racecourse about 6 miles/10 km north of the city centre. Through the rest of the year regular meetings are held at *Haydock Park*, about 13 miles/12 km east.

*Rugby.* Many of Britain's best rugby league teams, such as Widnes, Wigan and St Helen's, come from the industrial towns east and northeast of Liverpool.

*Soccer.* Liverpool, winners in 1984 of both the European Cup and, for the 15th time, the League Championship, play at *Anfield* telephone 260 9999; their great rivals, Everton (League champions in 1985), play at *Goodison Park* telephone 521 2020.

### *Keeping fit*

None of the city's council-run sports and leisure centres is central; *their* addresses and telephone numbers are listed in the monthly leaflet, *Liverpool Leisure Diary*. The Britannia Adelphi and Moat House hotels have fitness centres.

*Sports and health centres.* The main one in the centre is *Health and fitness World* Eberle St telephone 227 2212-on the edge of the business district (free to guests of the Atlantic Tower hotel).

*Golf* The Lancashire coast north of Liverpool is renowned for its golf courses. The best-known within easy reach of the city are Formby and royal Birkdale (at Southport). Across the Mersey on the Wirral peninsula, the most prestigious club is the Royal Liverpool at Hoylake.

*Squash* The facilities at the Britannia Adelphi hotel include squash, and most of the council-run sports centres have courts. Private clubs include *Crosby* telephone 924 7203.

*Swimming* Both of the hotel pools are of fair size. Many of the council sports centres also have pools; inquiries telephone 724 2371.

*Tennis* The main public courts are in the *Vernon Sangster* sports centre telephone 263 0491. Private clubs include *Cressington* telephone 427 4657 and *Blundellsands* telephone 924 4624.

## APPENDIX D7

**Text 7 about Liverpool**

*City of Liverpool Official Guide*, (writer/author unknown). Gloucester: British Publishing Co. Ltd.

**Travel City**

There are so many ways of getting to Liverpool. Knowing the enthusiasm of travellers to reach their objectives as quickly as possible, we will deal with more or orthodox modes of transport. The sooner you reach here, the sooner you can start to explore, or get down to business.

So, number one for the race to the hub of north-west travel is by air to the new Liverpool Airport. You can get there from:

	Daily Flights	Duration minutes
<b>London Heathrow</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>50</b>
<b>Isle of Man</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>35</b>
<b>Belfast</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>50</b>
<b>Dublin</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>50</b>

Also, there is a weekend service from **Jersey CI**.

Next for speed there is the sumptuous Merseyside Pullman train from **London Euston** at breakfast time gets you there to **Liverpool Lime Street** in 2 hours 40 minutes. If you have to return the same day there is a Pullman just after 4.00 pm which takes an extra minute to reach the capital. So, by rail Inter City from London you can travel in comfort, dine in style and return the same day if you must after a visit of over 5 1/2 hours. Of course there are many other direct trains from Euston about eleven a day.

Then there are direct rail services ready to whizz you to the land of the Beatles and butties from Birmingham, Sheffield, Manchester, Wigan, Preston and Leeds.

If you prefer to travel by road, then you have come to the motorway capital of England.

But to find it the most romantic way as voyagers have done from the Norse, invaders, the Irish immigrants or the pampered Cunard passengers of the '30s- sail up the river. By "Monas Queen" from the Isle of Man steaming at 21 knots, the car ferry covers the 84 miles journey in 3 hours 45 minutes (summer months only). The "St. Column" will float your car from Belfast through to Liverpool's Langton Dock overnight in just 9 hours.

Once you have arrived, there is no need to stop travelling. There are two tunnels under the Mersey which emerge in Birkenhead and the M53. And there are everyone's favourite ferry boats taking you to the left bank of Liverpool's Pier Head and Liver Birds.

There are plenty of buses, taxis and hire cars as you would expect to find in any well run city.

### **ARTS ROUND MERSEYSIDE**

The Royal Liverpool Philharmonic Orchestra is the city's resident symphony orchestra. This internationally renowned orchestra attracts famous musicians from all over the world. In 1987 these included Kyung What Chung, Nigel Kennedy, Simon Rattle and Paul Tortelier.

The Royal Liverpool Philharmonic Society promotes a variety of music and concerts, from those given by the RLPO to those on the contemporary music network, from Mozart and Beethoven to Peter Maxwell Davies-taking in Gershwin and Elgar on the way!

Opera companies tour regularly to the Empire Theatre. The most frequent visitors to the area are Welsh National Opera and Scottish Opera who bring a varied repertoire to Liverpool. WNO has recently performed Berlioz's epic master-piece, the Trojan, to a packed house. Who's future visits are awaited with great anticipation.

Scottish Opera visited Liverpool in 1988 and include in their repertory a new version of Bernstein's Candide.

Recently, Liverpool has had ballet performances on an irregular basis. Now this is changing. In future, we will play host to various national ballet and dance companies. In May 1987 the Empire Theatre was the venue for London Festival Ballet a brilliant company who toured to Hong Kong and to the home of the Bolshoi themselves. In the new year the Empire theatre will play host to the Sadlers Wells Royal Ballet.



## **BLUECOAT ARTS CENTRE**

The Bluecoat is the oldest building of architectural note in Liverpool city center. It was built as a school and dates from 1717. Until 1906 the building was the Blue Coat School. That year the school moved out to Wavertree and for the next 20 years its future use was uncertain. Between 1907 and 1927 the building was occupied by the Sandon Studios society, a group of painters and sculptors. The building was finally taken over by the Bluecoat Society of Arts in 1927.

Today the Bluecoat is Liverpool's arts centre- The facilities include a nationally renowned gallery; a concert hall in which a wide variety of music and dance activities take place; a 100 seat cinema operated by Merseyside Film Institute and a crafts centre- "The Bluecoat Display Centre". The Bluecoat also contains an attractive bistro, bar and coffee shop. The building also houses a number of tenants including a silversmith, potter, puppeteers and painters as well as small businesses and cultural organisations. Rooms are available to let for meetings and other activities.

## **NATIONAL MUSEUMS AND GALLERIES ON MERSEYSIDE**

Visitors to the city find that there is an exciting buzz and a positive attitude about the place.

This is reflected in the wealth of art galleries and museums.

In April 1986 the region's museums and galleries became the first in a provincial city to be given national status on a par with London. The seven major venues are now known as the National Museums and Galleries on Merseyside.

Few, if any, cities in England can boast of the same encyclopaedic range of collections, many located in fine elegant buildings.

In the last year some 350,000 visitors from over 50 countries were welcomed at the newly established Maritime Museum based in the prestigious Albert dock complex, one of the most important renovation programmes in Europe this century.

Overall the museums and galleries saw more than 1,000,000 People pass through their doors last year, and this is only the beginning.

The range and quality of the museums and galleries are quite surprising. They include the Lady Lever Art Gallery, the Sudley Art Gallery, the Liverpool Museum, the Walker Art Gallery, the Museums of Labour History, the Merseyside Maritime Museum and the Large Objects Collection.

There are treasure from all over the world and past times, natural history displays showing the wealth of the plant and animal kingdoms, a lanetarium and aquarium and outstanding paintings by British and European artists.

They are a demonstration of Liverpool's rich heritage which is virtually unrivalled anywhere else in Britain.

## **CHINATOWN**

Many Visitors to Liverpool make the short journey from the city centre and the Albert Dock to Chinatown to sample the culinary delights of the area, which contains many restaurants offering a wide choice of oriental dishes.

Probably the most popular time to visit the area is during the Chinese New Year celebrations when dragons and fire-crackers abound.

## **CENTRAL LIBRARY**

Only a short walk from Lime Street Station and the main shopping centre is one of the country's largest public libraries. The Central Library on William Brown Street is open twelve hours a day and its many reference facilities are freely available to all.

You can consult old maps of Liverpool, trace addresses and telephone numbers of companies, listen to records and much, much more. Lending services are available on application.

Even if you are not seeking information, the Central Library is still worth a visit. A collection of water- colour paintings showing the changing face of Liverpool is always on display.

Also, there is a constantly changing programme of exhibitions, including display of photography, art, craft and local history material.

If you have a free Wednesday lunchtime, why not attend one of the recitals in the Hornby Library? A wide range of music is performed there, from classical to

contemporary, from soloists to school orchestras. Many performers are young musicians from various colleges in the north-west- a chance to hear future soloists at the beginning of their careers. Check for details of the recitals in Look Alive, or ring the Central Library.

A creche is available on Tuesday afternoons, so that parents can study in the library, confident that their pre- school children are safe.

Tours of the Library can be arranged for any group by contacting the Extra- Mural Services Officer.

You will be surprised at how much there is to do and see in the Library- come and visit us.

## **BEATLES**

If you were to stand on the step of Lime Street Station any day of the week and see the young people arriving from every part of the world with their packs on their backs you would appreciate the magnetism or even the magic that Liver- pool conjures up for each generation.

Here is the Mecca of the Beatles devotees. Their pilgrimage takes them to Mathew Street, Cavern Walks, Strawberry Fields, Penny Lane. To see Eleanor Rigby in Stanley Street. To walk down Menlove Avenue and pass the house where John Lennon spent his childhood.

The Beatles captured the heart of the world with their youth, their disarming charm, their sense of humour as well as their originality.

Fans come looking for the formula which created this talent and today they find that the sense of fun and adventure which caused a universal tidal wave lives on and throbs in the heart of this living city.

In Cavern Walks you can see their statues on the site where the Mersey Sound began. today it is a very fashion- able, high quality shopping centre.

## **ALBERT DOCK**

And whilst we are on the subject of turning the old into the new, they have rubbed the genie's lamp in the Albert Dock and the spirit of the past has become the wonder of the future. It is as if all that energy and bustle of a century ago has been bottled up in these warehouses, given a good rub and a scrub and Hey Presto the spirit has emerged.

If you want to dine by the water-side, drink wine in a real wine cellar, gaze at the sails in the marina or participate in the shopping experience of a life time then the romance of Victoria and Albert will live again.

If you are lucky, you could get your name down for a luxury flat in the development-some with a superb river view.

### **SPEKE HALL**

Keep travelling south and just by Liverpool Airport is Speke Hall. A magnificent timber-framed manor house, set in gardens and woodlands on the out- skirts of Liverpool. It was built by members of the Norris family from about 1490 until 1612 and is a remarkably complete house which has not been altered by later additions. The hall was lived in by the Watt family in the last century and furnishings reflect their taste.

Particularly impressive are the Great Hall with its Elizabethan "Great Wainscot" and the Great Parlour with its magnificent Jacobean stucco ceiling and Genealogical Overmantel which depicts three generations of the Norris family who built the hall. All the rooms are furnished and the tour includes the main living rooms, bedrooms and kitchen, presenting a full picture of the house.

Speke Hall is also well known for its priest holes, where Roman Catholic Priests hid during the persecution of the Elizabethan period and for its ghost.

### **CROXTETH HALL AND COUNTRY PARK**

On the east side of the city halfway between the A57 and A580 lies this attractive Queen Anne (early 18c) former home of the Earls of Sefton. Parts of the building date from Elizabethan times. The interior is furnished early 20c with tableaux of the life-styles and fashions of that period.

The gardens and home farm offer children an opportunity to enjoy seeing live farm animals at close quarters.

### **KNOWSLEY SAFARI PARK**

Whilst we're in the mood for wild- life, you can go back down Princess Drive, turn left into A58 (east) Liverpool Road, cross over M57 junction 2 into Prescot by-pass. The first turning on the left takes you into a land of lions, tigers, monkeys, white

rhinos, elephants, zebra and a host of other wild animals roving free in a natural setting.

### **AINTREE RAECOURSE**

Return to the M57 and travel north to the end (exit 7). First left A59 Orskirk Road, the entrance is on the left just before Aintree Station.

The Grand National Steeplechase is held here each April. Renowned worldwide as the most challenging steeple-chase, it attracts an attendance of 81,000 and is viewed on television by 700 million internationally.

It has been running for 150 years and its popularity continues to grow. So much so that extra viewing space has been developed recently.

The racecourse is used for a number of events including the Royal Lancashire Show in July.

### **MERSEYSIDE TOURISM**

The Tourism Board reports that 20 million visitors come to theatre each year. Seventeen million are day trippers and the balance stay overnight. A fifth of the "staying" visitors come from overseas.

It is estimated that these visitors spend about 250 million pounds a year and support 14,000 jobs in the country area, which includes the Wirral, South- port and St. Helens.

### **SOUTH DOCKS**

The former docks and waterways have been brought back into use by Merseyside Development Corporation.

The restored waters now include a new marina and yacht haven with berths for hundreds of craft. Dinghy sailing, sail- boarding, rowing, canoeing, hire boats, model boating, subaqua and fishing are now popular pastimes.

Also, plans are afoot for major leisure and shopping developments in the area.

Part of the site of the spectacular 1984 International Garden Festival has remained open to the public and it is hoped that this will continue.

## **PUBS AND CLUBS**

If you want to burn the midnight oil, or oil the wheels after a grinding day, then you'll find a good flow of the golden liquid in well primed pumps in many of the city's streets.

You must turn east and ascend Mount Pleasant. When you see the Roman Cathedral rising before you turn south into the street of Hope. Halt at the golden fates of number 36 and your Bunyanesque journey has brought you to a hostelry of wonderful proportions.

Gaze in wonder at its oriel windows, Art Nouveau balconies and stepped gables of the Philharmonic Dining Rooms, built in 1900. But before you leave do see the rose marble loos.

## **JAZZ**

This memento to John Barleycorn sets the scene for the respect, even reverence, he is paid in his grottos throughout this city of the mythical Liver Bird. The ceremonies in his honour are referred to as "having a bevy" and are often accompanied by appropriate music such as Jazz at the Phil, Birdy's Bar Leece Street, Hartleys Wine Bar Albert Dock, the Albert Lark Lane, Flangans Apple Mathew Street, Trader Jacks Berry Street and riverside Jazz in the Tradewinds Bar Terrace of the Atlantic Tower Hotel. Later at night the clubs draw the travellers with their incessant beat and once again we start in Hope Street at the Chauffeurs in No 60.

## **ROCK**

Didn't rock pave the way for the Beatles on their path to fame. Still, today, it has its faithful foot tapping followers pounding their way round the Cumberland in Cumberland Street, Flanagans Apple Mathew Street, Kellys Wine Bar Smithdown Road, Mayflower Fazakerley Street, Penny Farthing St John's Precinct and Rudi's Cumberland Street. Once in the mood, when the bars douse their lights then it's on to the clubs and steer for the rock at Klub Krackers Mount Pleasant, The Pavilion Wolstenholme Square or Wilsons Wood Street.

## **GREAT DAYS OUT**

Liverpool is the ideal centre for touring in the north-west. Even a few miles from the centre it is difficult to realise that the big city and busy industrial areas are close by. Travel west-ward, through the Mersey Tunnel or by ferry, to find the rural lanes of Wirral and its country parks, or the beautiful medieval city of Chester. Direct road or rail routes lead further afield to the glorious scenery of North Wales and the resorts of Rhyl and Colwyn Bay. To the south is rural Cheshire; rolling green pastures, the vast woodlands of Delamere Forest or the rugged hills of Macclesfield Forest, an extension of the Peak National Park.

**APPENDIX D8****Text 8 about Liverpool**

***Liverpool: POCKET GUIDE TO LIVERPOOL.*** Liverpool: The City of Liverpool Public Relations Office (1969).

Liverpool, up to the thirteenth century, was nothing more than a tiny fishing village, overshadowed by the big ports on the Dee-Chester, Burton, Neston, Parkgate and Hoylake. Then in 1207 King John granted Liverpool a charter, turning it into a borough and port for shipping men and materials to Ireland. In later centuries the port developed with the sugar trade from the West Indies, the American tobacco trade, and the rise of Lancashire textile industry. As the River Dee silted up, the Mersey assumed greater importance until, in the 18th century, the world's first modern deep-water dock was built in Liverpool. A new Custom-house was erected, new streets were laid out, wealthy merchants erected fine homes near their warehouses in the city centre. During that busy century the population leapt from 5,000 to nearly 55,000. By the time Victoria came to the throne, Liverpool was Britain's biggest port, bringing in raw materials and exporting finished goods from the new Lancashire industries. But the very success of Liverpool as a port made her vulnerable to any depression that hit trade. In the 1930's the city fathers set about establishing in the city a wide range of industries that made Liverpool less wholly dependent on shipping. They succeeded to such an extent that today Merseyside, for example, rivals the Midlands as the country's main car-manufacturing area, as well as building up a wide reputation for its engineering and mass-production skills. This has been achieved without losing sight of the fact that Liverpool's basic strength lies in its position as Europe's greatest port on the Atlantic seaboard. It is a matter of pride for the people of the city that so many of the goods sent out through the largest exporting port in the Commonwealth bear the label "Made in Liverpool". The main points of interest in the city are set out here in the form of a circular tour. It's a long tour, so we don't advise you to do it all in one day!



**The waterfront**, where it all begins. This is the first impressive sight of the city for those who come by sea. Their first step ashore is on the Landing Stage, the largest floating structure in the world, shared by the ocean liners at one end and the Mersey ferry boats at the other. There's also a brand-new bus terminus here, with a covered pedestrian way and a restaurant overlooking the river.

### **The big tree**

The liver Building, flanked by the Cunard Building and the Dock Board Building, dominates the waterfront. The Liver Building proudly carrying twin Liver birds, has become a symbol of Liverpool. The faces on its four-sided clock are bigger even than Big Ben.

**The Town Hall**, a few steps up from the river. Built in 1754, it is one of the most elegant show places in Liverpool (open to parties by special arrangement).

**Dale Street** runs up through the heart of the city. Once the departure point for horse-drawn stage coaches, it was a street of inns, and some interesting old alleyways survive to remind us of this time. Liverpool is a major commercial centre and the world's largest centre for insurance. As Britain's chief flour-milling port, Liverpool also has a busy Corn Exchange.

**In Sir Thomas Street**, off Dale Street, you'll find the Municipal Buildings which houses the city Public Relations Office. Here you can get any further information you need about the city.

### **The Mersey Tunnel**

At the top end of Dale Street is the Liverpool entrance to one of the longest underwater highways in the world-the Mersey Tunnel, opened in 1934 by King George V. Over 18 million vehicles a year use this 2 1/2-mile long, four-lane tunnel. A second tunnel is under construction between Liverpool and Wallasey.

### **St. George's Hall**

Variously described as "England's finest public building" and "one of the greatest edifices of the world", St. George's Hall, designed by 24-years-old Harvey Lonsdale Elmes, was opened in 1854. Originally planned only as a concert hall, it was built also to provide a superb setting for the Assize Courts. The Great Hall is richly decorated with bronze gates, marble and alabaster balustrades, and granite columns and mosaic floors (usually covered). Opposite to St. George's Hall is a fine group of imposing civic buildings consisting of-

**The Museums** newly constructed after war damage, began originally with the famous Derby collection of birds and the Mayor bequest of archaeological and anthropological specimens. Now they have grown to include an aquarium, galleries on shipping, local history, applied and decorative arts, and collections of ivories, gold and jewellery.

### **The Walker Art Gallery**

The largest collection of paintings outside London. The collection started with that of William Roscoe, a Liverpool lawyer and patron of the arts whose most famous acquisition was Simone Martini's "Christ discovered in the Temple". In 1960 Ruben's "Virgin and child with St. Elizabeth and the child Baptist", was purchased. The famous "And when did you last see your father?" is here too.

### **The Central Libraries**

More books are on open display on the shelves than in any other public library in the country. The Hornby Library has an outstanding collection of prints and first editions and the Liverpool Record Office and Local History Library contain valuable original documents about the history of the City.

### **The University**

Founded in 1881, with just 93 students, the University now has over 6,000 students and expects to reach 10,000 in the early 1970's. Within the University area is the School of Tropic Medicine, one of the most important centres for tropical studies in the world.

**The Metropolitan Cathedral of Christ the King**, consecrated in 1967, uses modern materials and new building techniques to produce a church of our time. No cathedral was ever built in so short a time-four years. The magnificent crown of glass, designed by John Piper and Patrick Reyntiens, was the largest commission for coloured glass in the history of the church. Revolution is carried right to the altar, which is placed in the centre of the congregation so that everyone can feel closely involved in the Mass. Sir Frederick Gibbard is the architect.

### **Philharmonic Hall**

In a direct line between the two cathedrals is the distinguished home of the Royal Liverpool Philharmonic orchestra. Built in 1939 it is acoustically one of the most perfect halls in Britain.

**Building and Design Centre** further along Hope Street, is the Building & Design Centre which has permanent and temporary exhibitions.

### **Liverpool Cathedral**

How many cities in the world can boast two 20th century cathedrals, each a masterpiece, though their styles are a millennium apart? Sir Giles Gilbert Scott designed his massive sandstone cathedral as a modern expression of the mediaeval Gothic style. It dominates both city and river, and has one of the largest cathedral organs (nearly 10,000 pipes) in the world. Building began in 1904, continued through the two wars, and should be completed in 1975. It has the world's largest Gothic arch.

**Bluecoat Chambers**, a Queen Anne building in the heart of the city, is the creative centre for the arts in Liverpool. It holds exhibitions of painting and sculpture, poetry readings, concerts and crafts exhibitions.

**Bold Street and Church Street** run through the centre of Liverpool's main shopping area, with huge department stores and small specialist shops. At the end of Lord Street is the Victoria Monument, built where the old Liverpool Castle once stood.

**Speke Hall** (not on the circular tour; you'll find it on the map at the back of the guide). A charming Elizabethan house lying in wooded, secluded grounds near the river, where one can step back into history. An interesting day can be divided between this quiet, old-world mansion and the bustling airport nearby.

## **ENTERTAINMENT & RECREATIONS**

**RADIO MERSEYSIDE**, opened in November 1967 is one of the first local radio stations in Britain and the biggest. The **PLAYHOUSE** with its new extension offers a full season of plays from Shakespeare to N.F. Simpson. The **EVERYMAN THEATRE** tends towards modern playwrights and holds poetry readings. **THE ROYAL COURT THEATRE** is a magnificent centre for all forms of stage entertainment, while the **EMPIRE**, with its huge stage, presents musicals, opera, ballet and variety. The **NEPTUNE**, the home of amateur drama, also stages professional productions and lunch-time shows.

## **SPORT**

Liverpool-some would say the most sport-conscious city in Britain-tends to be split by the "great divide": those who support Everton and those who favour Liverpool, two of the country's finest football teams. All the world knows the 30-fence Grand National, and people come from all over the world to this greatest steeple-chase of all. At Liverpool Stadium, battle has been joined by many of the world's great boxers and wrestlers.

## **Parks**

Around Liverpool is a ring of large, well-planned parks, covering a total area of 2,400 acres. Two of the largest of these are Sefton Park, dominated by its great Palm House, and Calderstones and Harthill (two parks which adjoin each other). Harthill is famous for its huge hot-houses (36,00 square feet of glass) and especially for the Orchid House, with its prize-winning blooms.

## **The Port**

Greatest export port in Britain at a time when exports mean more than at any other time in our history; that is the challenging role for Liverpool today. New roll-on, roll-off berths have been introduced. Container facilities of faster handling of goods are well under-way. A new 36 million dock system is planned for 1970. And even now, Liverpool is handling over 25 million tons of freight and 34,000 ships a year from 36 miles of docks. Visits to the Gladstone Dock can be arranged for school children through the Information Officer, Mersey Docks and Harbour Board, Pier Head.

## **THE AIRPORT**

Liverpool can take the biggest jets with one of the longest runways outside London (1 1/2 miles). In the last few years it has become a major international jetport, with direct flights to many parts of Europe. It has the highest safety standards in the U.K. and has the best equipped runway for "jumbo" jets. The spectators' balcony makes a popular day out and there is a high class restaurant, cocktail and buffet.

## **INDUSTRY**

The traditional industries of Liverpool include sugar refining and flour milling (Merseyside is the largest milling centre in Europe.) But these have now been strengthened by a wide range of new industries, from pharmaceuticals to telecommunications, which have made modern Liverpool their home. Cars have come to Merseyside in a big way: Ford's 15,000 workers turn out over 1,500 cars a day—more than half of them for export. This is Europe's largest motorcar factory under one roof, and houses the world's largest transmission plant. Standard-Triumph are here in strength too, and with Vauxhall across the Mersey, the Motor components manufacturers have been encouraged to set up workshop on Merseyside. More big names which can be found on Merseyside are English Electric, Schweppes, Plessey, Goodlass Wall, Bibby's, and there are many others.

## **FACE OF THE FUTURE**

The 25 million civic and social centre to be built in Liverpool will not only be the world's most modern development in local government, but will still be up-to-date in the year 2,000. A protected arcade will cross the centre of the city to link with office,

shopping and cultural areas. Work is already well advanced on St. John's Precincta new shopping complex including St. John's Market and the 450 ft. beacon, which will have a revolving restaurant, is already a landmark. The giant new Seaforth dock project, planned for 1970, is designed for tomorrow's biggest ships and tomorrow's high-speed handling methods.

### **Strand-Paradise development**

A flatted system of offices, flats and shops, with its own hotel, bus station and four acre garden deck. A centre in itself and also a main transport interchange point for the city, directly linked with the proposed new motorways, inner rail loops and airport.

### **TRANSPORT**

A 57 million inner motorway with 6 lanes will encircle the city within the next fifteen years, and will separate through traffic.

### **Cafes and Restaurants**

Visitors to Liverpool are extremely well provided for in this respect, as there are numerous cafes and restaurants, licensed and unlicensed, in every part of the City, where either snacks or full meals may be obtained. A few of these establishments are mentioned below, and many of the larger places specialise in catering for organised parties by arrangement.

A comprehensive list of Restaurants and Cafes (including Chinese and Indian) is available from the City Public Relations Office. Owens, T.J. Hughes, Lewis's and Woolworths have Restaurants and there are many others of all kinds too numerous to list here.

**APPENDIX E9****Text 9 About Liverpool**

*Liverpool: The pool of life*, Colin Wilkinson. Liverpool: Blue Press, Bluecoat Chambers.

**The River & Ferries**

Liverpool's name is synonymous with the sea and ships and the best starting point for any tour is to take a ferry trip across the Mersey. Ferries were already well-established when Edward III granted the monks of Birkenhead Prior legal rights in 1330 and no visit to the city is complete without the experience of sailing out from under the twin turrets of the Royal Liver Building to take in the view from mid-river. However many times you make the short trip, there is always a sense of adventure and expectancy.

**Pier Head**

Dominating the waterfront are the three buildings at its centre; the Royal Liver Building, the Cunard Building and the Port of Liverpool Building. Monumental and magnificent, they stand in testimony to the enterprise and prosperity of Liverpool in the early years of this century.

The Royal Liver Building is probably the city's best known landmark. Standing 322 feet from the ground to the top of the legendary Liver Birds, it was the first large-scale reinforced concrete building in the world. Designed by W Aubrey Thomas, it has an originality and power that is unique in Britain.

**Alber Dock**

Albert Dock is Liverpool's greatest expression of dock architecture. The vast warehouse complex was opened by Prince Albert in 1846. The architect, Yorkshire engineer Jesse Hartey, introduced the closed system, of which Albert Dock was the prototype. The closed dock system endured greater protection of valuable cargoes such as tobacco and spirits.

Built predominantly of cast-iron and brick, with external walls four feet thick at ground level. the Albert Dock has both simplicity and enormous power. Although it marked an important step forward in the design of docks, it soon became obsolete with the introduction of larger steam-powered ships. By 1920, it had virtually ceased to be used for commercial activities.

Fortunately, the buildings have survived virtually intact. Now the largest group of Grade One listed buildings in the country, Albert Dock has been sensitively restored to house an exciting mix of shops, businesses, museums and galleries and is one of Britain's top tourist attractions.

Merseyside Maritime Museum is housed in one block with five floors of shipping-related exhibitions and further exhibits in the quayside buildings outside including an important new section devoted to the history of Liverpool. Adjacent to it is the Tate Gallery, the major centre for contemporary art in the North of England. Elsewhere in the complex, The Beatles Story is an essential attraction for fans of Liverpool's most famous export.

## **Commerce**

As the port expanded and Liverpool grew in prosperity, many of the companies associated with the port erected buildings to reflect their importance and confidence. A short walk up Water Street and along Castle Street will give a taste of some of the finest commercial architecture in the country. Particularly worth looking at is the glass-facaded Oriel Chambers, a building so far ahead of its time that its architect, Peter Ellis, was ridiculed to the extent that he designed no further buildings. On the opposite side of Water Street stands the impressive India Buildings, with a shopping arcade named after the Holt family, who built the block as headquarters for their shipping line.

The same architect, Herbert J Rowse, was responsible for the magnificent Martin Bank Building (now Barclays Bank) across the road. Completed in 1932, it is his first work with a superb interior which can be viewed during the bank's opening times.



Next door to the bank stands the Town Hall, built between 1749 and 1754 to the design of John Wood of Bath. A disastrous fire in 1795 necessitated a reconstruction of parts of the building by James Wyatt, who added the impressively dome on its high drum. The interior contains magnificent civic suites complete with fine period furniture.

## **Culture**

Liverpool's most important building architecturally is St George's Hall. Described as the finest Greco-Roman building in Europe, St George's Hall was designed by 24 year old Harvey Lonsdale Elmes, who gained his commission by winning a competition to design a building to house a music festival. Liverpool Town Council then held a second competition for assize courts, which Elmes also won. The Corporation decided to combine the two schemes and St George's Hall is the result.

Work started in 1842 but Elmes, dying from tuberculosis in 1847, was unable to see his masterpiece completed. His friend and mentor C R Cockerell was brought in to finish the building and was responsible for designing the exquisite Small Concert Hall.

Few buildings can match the grandeur of St George's Hall, Its position, on spacious St. George's Plateau overlooked by the Gothic splendour of the old North Western Hotel, enhances the monumental quality of the building and rewards the visitor arriving from Lime Street Station with a remarkable first impression of the city.

The view from St. George's Plateau reveals a striking sweep of classical buildings Here, on William Brown Streets, Liverpool Museum, William Brown Library and the Walker Art Gallery rub shoulders with each other, offering a superb choice of internationally important collections. The Walker Art Gallery, in particular, is widely regarded as having the most comprehensive collection of European art outside of London.

Two other features are worth noting. The Wellington Column stands 132 feet high and is an exact replica of the Melville Monument in Edinburgh. It is said that the statue of the Duke is cast in metal from guns captured at Waterloo. At the end of the monument is the Steble Fountain, erected in 1879.

### **The Cathedrals**

Liverpool is one of few cities to boast two cathedrals. Both were built this century although you would hardly be likely to find two greater contrasts in style. Paradoxically, the Anglican Cathedral was designed by a Catholic, 21 year old Giles Gilbert Scott and the Metropolitan Cathedral by a Protestant, Frederick Gibbard.

Liverpool Cathedral is one of the largest cathedrals in the world; a massive, red sandstone masterpiece which took nearly 75 years to complete. Commanding a superb site, high above the river, the Cathedral was the first to be consecrated in England on a wholly new site since the 13th century.

At the other end of appropriately-named Hope Street stands the Metropolitan Cathedral. Built in a mere five years and completed in 1967, its imaginative conical shape reveals an interior of astonishing light and colour.

Together, the two cathedral dominate the landscape; communicating a powerful spirit of ecumencialism for which the city has become famous in recent years.

### **Georgian Liverpool**

Liverpool retains a large part of its Georgian heritage. Although a considerable amount has been lost this century, many of the remaining buildings have been sensitively restored particularly in the Rodney Street/Canning Street area.

Rodney Street was one of the first of the new residential streets created by Liverpool's wealthy merchants created at the end of the eighteenth century. Today, the street still captures the elegance of an earlier Liverpool: the buildings are beautifully proportioned and sit side by side in harmony, enhanced by subtle differences in door styles, railings and other features. Little wonder that both the University of Liverpool

and the John Moores University are based here in the extensive network of streets and squares that run between the dominant features of the city's two cathedrals.

### **The Arts**

Liverpool has a long tradition of excellence in the arts. The internationally renowned Royal Liverpool Philharmonic Orchestra has its permanent home in Hope Street and, further down the street, is the Everyman Theatre, a pioneering repertory company housed in a converted Gospel Hall. Claiming seniority as Britain's longest established repertory theatre, the Playhouse in Williamson Square has long been an important contributor to the city's artistic reputation. Two commercial theatres, the Empire and Royal Court, regularly stage national touring companies and shows. The Tate Gallery in the Albert Dock, the John Moores Exhibition at the Walker, and the Bluecoat Gallery have ensured Liverpool's standing for contemporary visual art.

The city has gained a deserved reputation for its artistic energy. The energy released by the Beatles revealed a city of musicians, poets, actors, playwright and painters. Today, this creative diversity continues to make its mark in every area of the national arts scene.

### **The Parks**

Liverpool has a great heritage of public parks and gardens, many of which were the former estates for merchants and shipping owners. The Victorians heralded a golden era of public design and Liverpool was in the forefront of the movement to recreate a breath of the country in the townscape. Princes Park, in 1842, was the first independent commission for the master of landscape design, Joseph Paxton, and was a benchmark for public park design in Europe and America.

Particularly worth visiting are Sefton Park, with its graceful avenues, wooded vales, lake and Palm House and the more formal Calderstones Park with its walled Old English Garden., Japanese Garden and other specialist areas.

## **The City Centre**

Liverpool city centre is an interesting mix of old and new. The oldest is the Bluecoat Chambers, a lovely Queen Anne building which is also the first art centre in Britain. The complex contains a gallery, concert room, studios and shops and has an exquisite enclosed garden.

In contrast, the new shopping development in Clayton Square and Cavern Walks are interesting additions to the city's architecture.

Pedestriation, the restoration of important buildings including the Lyceum on Bold Street and other improvements are transforming the centre. Liverpool has the oldest Chinese community in Europe and their area is being upgraded.

Elsewhere, around London Road, Queen Square and Bold Street, ambitious schemes are underway, bringing new life to the city.

## **The Beatles**

To the outsiders, perhaps, more than anything else, Liverpool is the birthplace of the Beatles. Over thirty years ago, they burst into the consciousness of the world in a way no other group had done before, captivating young people everywhere.

Today, guided tours around the Beatles' old haunts are an essential part of any fan's itinerary, taking in the homes and birthplaces, schools and early meeting places. The wrought iron gates of Strawberry Fields and the 'shelter in the middles of the roundabout' in Penny Lane are particularly popular as is the excellent 'Beatles Story' at the Albert Dock.

## **Sport**

It is said that sport is a religion in Liverpool. In particular, football dominates conversation. Liverpool Football Club is the most successful in Britain and a tour around their ground is obligatory for those interested in football. Everton FC have been somewhat overshadowed by their close neighbour in recent years although few other clubs can match their record of league title and cup wins.

Over 150 years ago, a steeplechase took place over an arduous four mile course. Later called the grand National, the race has held centre stage in the racing calendar. No other sporting event attracts such nationwide attention as the large field of horses and riders tackle a course of unrelenting severity.

The city has a fine reputation for other sports including rugby union, boxing, cycling and athletics. The City Council has been active in providing top quality facilities and these are ensuring that Liverpool's sporting traditions continue to develop.

### **The pool of Life**

If Liverpool did not exist, it would have to be invented' commented one favourably impressed visitor at the turn of the century. What other city can offer such magnificent architecture, so many great galleries and museums and such a diversity of activities? Liverpool is a remarkable city with a vibrancy and enthusiasm that never fails to impress. In the words of the great psychologist, Carl Jung, 'Liverpool is the Pool of Life'.

**APPENDIX D10****Text 10 about Liverpool**

***THE TOURING BOOK OF BRITAIN***, Barbara Littlewood (ed.).  
London: Book Club Associates (1984).

There was a settlement here, on the north bank of the River Mersey, as early as the first century AD, and this had grown into a sizeable fishing village by the time King John granted its charter in 1207. Trade with the West Indies encouraged the port's development, but the emergence of modern Liverpool really began with the introduction of steamships in the middle of the 19th century, and today the seven-mile-long dock is one of the finest in the world, although trade has sadly declined over recent years. The city has two cathedrals, both built this century—the Gothic-style Anglican, begun in 1904, and the strikingly different Roman Catholic one, with its stained glass tower and central altar, which was consecrated in 1967. The Walker Art gallery has an outstanding collection of European paintings and the Sudley Art Gallery concentrates on British paintings.

Housed in restored 19th century quays on the waterfront is the Merseyside Maritime Museum, which has a fine collection of full-size craft. The City Library is one of the country's largest reference libraries, with over 2,000,000 books. The university is growing in both size and reputation, and the Royal Liverpool Philharmonic orchestra is famous. Aintree Racecourse is the scene of the Grand National each spring, and both "Everton and Liverpool are football teams of note. Two tunnels beneath the Mersey join Liverpool with Birkenhead, which stands on the opposite bank. The city is said to be named after the legendary 'Liver' birds that overlook the dock from the towers of the Liver Building.

## **Appendices to Liverpool: E1-E10**

### **The Structural Analysis of Theme Types**

## APPENDIX E1

<b>Theme Analysis of Text 1 about Liverpool</b>
---

1a

Depending on your viewpoint,	Liverpool means the Beatles, or football, or good art collections, or urban dereliction-
Theme: top $\beta$ NFT CI Marked	Rheme

1b

it	's a mixture of all those things, and well worth a visit if you don't mind a city that shows some wear and tear than usual.
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Theme

2a

The city	prospered as a transatlantic port at the mouth of the River Mersey from the 16th century onwards,
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

2b

and	it	has some impressive 19th and 20th century architecture, including two cathedrals.
text Conj: cord	Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

3a

Even locals	get confused by the city centre one-way system,
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme



3b

so	if you want to drive into the city,	you're advised to park and then walk or use buses to get around.
text Conj: cord	top $\beta$ If -clause Marked	Rheme
Theme		

4a

There	are plenty of buses to get around	
Theme: top Subj Unmarked	Rheme	

4b

and	most of the main sights	are within a square mile.
text Conj: cord	Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

5.

For information on all bus, train and ferry travel on Merseyside,	consult one of the Mersey travel shops, at Williamson Square or Clayton Square in the city centre, or at Pier Head.	
Theme: top Adju: adv Marked	Rheme	

6.

The city	isn't ideal for cyclists .	
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme	

7.

A tour bus	sets off from Clayton Square every day at 1 pm for a one-hour trip round the main city landmarks.	
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme	

8a

Guided walks	start here every Thursday in summer
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

8b

also	there	are also maritime walks on summer Saturdays.
text Adju: conj	top Subj Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

9.

The Beatles Magical History Tour	is a two-hour bus trip round sights such a Penny Lane and Strawberry Fields, starting at Clayton Square at 2.33 pm daily.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

10a

The Walker Art Gallery	has one of England's best art collections outside London-
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

10b

it	's especially good for early Italian and Flemish paintings, and pre-Raphaellate pictures.
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

11.

There	's also an award-winning sculpture gallery (free).
Theme: top Subj Unmarked	Rheme

12.

Next door	is the Liverpool Museum, with artefacts from far afield; admission free, except for the Planetarium.
Theme: top Adju: Prep Phr Marked	Rheme

13.

There	's no charge for the Natural History Centre on the second floor.
Theme: top Subj Unmarked	Rheme

14.

The Museum of Labour History on the other side of the Walker	is about Merseyside people; admission free.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

15.

Liverpool Cathedral	is Britain's largest, an early 20th century Gothic-style structure.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

16a

Admission	is free
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

16b

but	donations	are welcome.
text Conj: cord	top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

16c

and	you	have to pay to climb the tower, for huge views.
text Conj: cord	top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

17a

In contrast	the Metropolitan cathedral	has a very modern look-
text Adju: conj	top NG: Subj Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

17b

It	was completed in 1967
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

17c

and	ϕ	rises to a crown of tall pinnacles.
text Conj: cord	top NG: pron, ellip Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

18a

Pier Head	is the departure point for ferries-
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

18b

and	it	's the best place to see the waterfront skyline formed by the Cunard Building, the Port of Liverpool Building and the Royal Liver Building, unmistakable with its 'Liver Birds' on the twin towers.
text Conj: cord	top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

19a

The Birds	are mythical creatures,
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

19b

and	ϕ	are said to have given Liverpool its name.
text Conj: cord	top NG: Subj, ellip Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

20.

('Liver'	rhymes with 'diver').
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

21.

Part of the ground floor	is open to the public.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

22a

You	can use the Mersey ferry to reach Wallasey and Birkenhead on the other side,
Theme: top Sub: pron Unmarked	Rheme

22b

or	ϕ	ask for a 'Stay Aboard Return'.
text Conj: cord	Theme: top Subj: pron, ellip Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

23.

The 'Ferry' cross the Mersey' Cruise	is a 50-minute round trip.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

24.

All boats	have refreshments.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

25.

South of Pier Head around Albert Dock	is a huge quadrangle of restored warehouses.
Theme: top Adju: Prep Phr Marked	Rheme

26.

The Maritime Museum	includes a reconstruction of an emigrant's ship, ship models and real boats, among other things.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

27a

It	also has events,
Theme : top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

27b

and	ticket holders	qualify for a free boat ride.
text Conj: cord	Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

28.

Some areas	are closed from November to April.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

29.

The other big museum	puts on exhibitions from the national collection of modern art at the Tate in London (admission free).
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

30a

There	are shops and eating places round the dock;
Theme: top Subj Unmarked	Rheme

30b

also	here	is the Beatles Story, a 'sixties experience'.
text Conj: cord	top Adju: adv Marked	Rheme
Theme		

31.

You	're warned to beware of pickpockets at Albert Dock.
Theme: top Subj: porn Unmarked	Rheme

32a

Entertainment	needn't cost the earth-
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

32b

cheapest tickets for the Playhouse	start at around 1 pound for a matinee performance,
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

32c

and	the highest prices	aren't very high.
text Conj: cord	top: Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

33a

Other venues	include the Empire for major touring productions, the Everyman, Bluecoat Arts Centre a Unity for innovative shows
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

33b

and	there	are others, in and near the city.
text Conj: cord	top Subj Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

34a

The Philharmonic Hall	is the home of the Royal Liverpool Philharmonic Orchestra;
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

34b

the Royal Court	has rock.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

35.

Speke Hall	is a half-timbered Elizabethan manor house, south of Liverpool beside the Merse.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

36.

Run by the National Trust,	it's open from April to October (closed Monday except bank holidays).
Theme: top $\beta$ NFT CI Marked	Rheme

37a

Public transport	takes you only as far as the airport half a mile away:
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

37b

take	the train to Garston (about 10 minutes from Liverpool Central train station on the Northern Line, and then the airport bus (short ride).
Theme: top Imperative Unmarked	Rheme

38.

The National Trust	runs 470 acres of dunes and pinewoods at Formby as a nature reserve.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

39a

It	's a pretty place to walk,
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme



39b

and	you	almost certainly see red squirrels.
text Conj: cord	top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

40a

Admission	is free;	
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme	

40b

there	is a charge for parking.	
Theme: top Subj Unmarked	Rheme	

41.

It	's just under a mile from Freshfield train station about half an hour from Liverpool Central station on the Northern Line.	
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme	

42.

Southport	is a leafy resort to the north of Liverpool (40 minutes from Liverpool train station on the Northern Line).	
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme	

43.

Lord Street in the middle of town	is wide and tree-lined with delicate wrought-iron canopies above the shops.	
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme	

44.

The Atkinson Art Gallery	is worth a leisurely visit (closed Sunday, admission free), as are the Botanic Gardens on the northern edge of town (admission free).	
Them: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme	

45a

Southport	has lots of resort amusements, and miles of sandy beach-
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

45b

the sea	is often invisible,
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

45c

but	beware	a fast-moving tide if you walk out in search of it.
text Conj: cord	top Imperative Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

46.

Bathing	isn't recommended anyway.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

47.

Martin Mere	is a Wildfowl and Wetland Trust centre, with wild birds from all over the world among pools, marshes and garden, plus thousands of migrant waterfowl in winter.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

48.

A nature trail	runs between bird-watching hides.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

49a

The centre	is 10 miles east of Southport:
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

49b

public transport	is by train from Southport to Burscough Bridge and from there by bus.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

## APPENDIX E2

<b>Theme Analysis of Text 2 about Liverpool</b>
---

1.

Liverpool	is an important shipping, university, and cathedral city situated on the Mersey estuary.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

2a

A settlement	has existed here for some time-
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

2b

the north bank of the Mersey	bore a community as long ago as the 1st-c AD.
Theme: top NG: Subj	Rheme

3a

This	had grown into a thriving fishing village by 1200,
Theme: top Subj: pro Unmarked	Rheme

3b

and	ϕ	was granted a charter by King John.
text Conj: cord	top Subj: pron, ellip Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

4a

Much later	the town expanded with the onset of heavy trade with the West Indies,
Theme: top Adju: adv Marked	Rheme

4b

and	ϕ	also became connected with the slave trade
text Conj: cord	top Subj: pron, ellip Unmarked	
Theme		

5a

However,	it was not until the introduction of steamships in the 1840	that Liverpool began to take on its present form.
text Adju: conj	top $\beta$ Pred Cl Marked	Rheme
Theme		

6a

The famous dockside frontage	extends for 7m	
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme	

6b

and	$\phi$	forms one of the finest systems to be found anywhere
text Conj: cord	top Subj: pron, ellip Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

7a

The landing stage	is the largest floating quay in the world,	
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme	

7b

and	$\phi$	stretches for half a mile on floating pontoons.
text Conj: cord	top Subj: pron, ellip Unmarked	
Theme		

8.

Leeds and Liverpool Canal	terminate here.	
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme	

9a

The 17-storey Royal Liver building	rises to 295 ft,
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

9b

and	φ	displays two towers surmounted by legendary liver birds.
text Conj: cord	top Subj: pron, ellip Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

10a

It	is flanked by the Cunard building and the dock Board offices,
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

10b

and	the three buildings	combine to form an impressive waterfront.
text Conj: cord	top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

11a

The new Anglican Cathedral by Sir Giles Gilbert Scott	was begun in 1904
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

11b

and	φ	displays notable stained glass and a fine organ.
text Conj: cord	top Subj: ellip, pron Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

12.

In striking contrast	is the new RC Cathedral of Christ the King, designed by Sir F Gibberd in 1959 and consecrated in 1967.
Theme: top Adju: Compl Marked	Rheme

13.

Features of the latter	include a stained-glass tower and a central white-marble altar.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

14a

Sir Edwin Lutyens	conceived and planned for this building in 1933,
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

14b

but	the only part of his design to reach fruition	was the remarkable crypt which is of particular note.
text Conj: cord	top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

15a

Restored Bluecoat Chambers	are situated in School Lane and dated from 1714.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

15b

and	ϕ	date from 1714.
text Conj: cord	top Subj: pro, ellip Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

16.

1854	was designed by Harvey Lonsdale Elwes, at the age of 24.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

17.

John Wood of Bath	designed the town hall in 1749, which was later enlarged by James Wyatt.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

18.

The restored museum and Walker Art Gallery	are also notable.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

19a

The old parish church of St Nicholas	was rebuilt in 1952, except for the tower of 1815,
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

19b

and	φ	stands in a memorial garden facing Pierhead.
text Conj: cord	top Subj, pron, ellip Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

20.

Several good Georgian houses	can be seen in the town.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

21.

Gladstone	was born at 62 Rodney Street, and Felicia Hemans at 118 Duke Street.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

22a

The Queensway road tunnel of 1934	runs under the Mersey,
Theme : top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

22b

and	φ	was duplicated by the Kingsway tunnel in 1971.
text Conj: cord	top Subj: pron, ellip	Rheme
Theme		



23.

Both	link with Birkenhead.
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

24a

Liverpool	has two leading football teams
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

24b

and	$\phi$	is traditionally the home of comedians and other entertainers.
text Conj: cord	top Subj: pron, ellip Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

25.

The airport	lies SE near Speke.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

## APPENDIX E3

<b>Theme Analysis of Text 3 about Liverpool</b>
---

1.

The city	holds a charter granted by King John in 1207 .
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

2.

It	had a Norman castle (on the site of the present Queen Victoria memorial) the ruins of which were removed in 1725.
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

3a

At the time of the first Stuarts	the population was only 1000,
Theme: top Adju: Prep Phr Marked	Rheme

3b

but	by the early 18th century	the town had a thriving trade mainly connected with the West Indies,
text Conj: cord	top Adju: Prep Phr Marked	Rheme
Theme		

3c

and	ϕ	was also concerned with the slave trade.
text Conj: :cord	top Subj: pron, ellip Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

4a

The coming of the railways	altered Liverpool, entirely,
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

4b

and	it was from this port	that the first ocean steamship line operated across the Atlantic in 1840.
text Conj: cord	top $\beta$ Pred Cl Marked	Rheme
Theme		

5.

Sudley Gallery, an early 19th-century merchant's house,	supplements the treasures of the Walker Art Gallery.
Subj: NG Theme: top Unmarked	Rheme

6.

The Picton, Hornby and Brown libraries together	have more than 200,000 volumes.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

7.

Liverpool University	originated with university College (1881), which was raised by royal charter in 1903 to full university status.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

8.

The city	has two cathedrals, Anglican and Roman Catholic.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

9.

The red sandstone cathedral of Liverpool	was begun in 1903 by Sir Giles Gilbert Scott.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

10a

More than half a century later	the cathedral is still incomplete;
Theme : top Adju: adv Marked	Rheme

10b

the west end and one bay of the nave	have still to be built.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

11.

Although the style is Classical Greek,	Scott's design is essentially original, dominant feature being the largest central tower.
Theme: top $\beta$ DP CI Marked	Rheme

12.

In 1925	Scott himself laid the last stone of the 173 ft high tower, which has double transepts on either side.
Theme: top Adju: Prep Phr Marked	Rheme

13.

The first part of the cathedral to be finished	was the Lady Chapel, which was consecrated in 1910.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

14.

It is estimated	that completion will be in the 1970's.
Theme: top $\beta$ Themd Comnt Marked	Rheme

15.

An example of Queen Anne architecture, built in 1717,	the house was acquired in 1927 as a centre for painters, sculptors, musicians and the arts generally under the supervision of the Bluecoat Society of Arts. (By appointment.)
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

16.

The original building, designed by John Weightman,	was destroyed by fire in 1941.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

17.

Phase one of the rebuilding, opened in 1966,	includes some of the museum's treasures, an aquarium and items of local history. (See p. 279.)
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

18.

HORNBY LIBRARY POEMS by Johnson and Cowper, letters from Nelson, Byron, Gladstone and Verdi, and signatures of many British monarchs,	are part of the autograph collection in this extensive library.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

19a

The book collection	contains about 8000 rare books,
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

19b

and	there	are many manuscripts, book illustrations (the collection is especially rich in French illustrated books, prints and examples of bookbinding and printing).
text Conj: cord	top Subj Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

20a

The Circumstanceular cathedral	was consecrated in 1967;
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

20b

its dominant feature	is the central lantern tower with slender, spiky pinnacles, some 290 ft high, above an aluminum roof.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

21.

This lantern, with stained glass by John Piper and Patrick Reyntiens, (who also worked on Coventry Cathedral)	illuminates the interior of the cathedral with a pool of light over the central altar.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

22.

Radiating from the walls	are chapels of various shapes, with stained glass windows and austere ornament.
Theme: top Adju: Compl Marked	Rheme

23.

At the west	is a wedge-shaped belfry-cum-porch, 90 ft high, forming the principal entrance. (See P. 277.)
Theme: top Adju: Prep Phr Marked	Rheme

24.

Liverpool	possesses one of the great Victorian Classical buildings-St George's Hall, masterpiece of the young architect, Harvey Lonsdale Elmes.
Theme: top Sub: NG Unmarked	Rheme

25a

He	began work on it in 1842
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

25b

but	φ	died at the age of 34 in 1847, long before the project was finished
text Conj: cord	top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

26a

The great vault	was the work of Sir Robert Rawlinson, to Elmes's designs, to Elmes's designs,
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

26b

and	C. R. Cockerell	completed the exterior and the interior decoration.
text Conj: cord	top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

27.

St George's Hall, inaugurated in 1854,	stands in the centre of the city.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

28a

The Hall	is of Classical Greek design;
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

28b

the facade	has a great portico of Corinthian columns,
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

28c

and	φ	is further decorated with partly free-standing square piers of the same order.
text Conj: cord	top Subj: pron, ellip Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

29a

There	is another, smaller portico of columns at the south end of the hall, while the north end is semi Circumstanceular.
Theme : top Subj Unmarked	Rheme

30.

<b>SPEKE HALL</b>	<b>One of the finest Elizabethan half-timbered houses in the country.</b>
<b>Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked</b>	<b>Rheme</b>

31a

<b>It</b>	<b>was built around a courtyard in 1530-98</b>
<b>Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked</b>	<b>Rheme</b>

31b

<b>and</b>	<b>φ</b>	<b>was formerly moated.</b>
<b>text Adju: cord</b>	<b>top Subj: pron , ellip Unmarked</b>	<b>Rheme</b>
<b>Theme</b>		

32.

<b>Internally</b>	<b>it is like a maze, with secret chambers and hideaways.</b>
<b>Theme: top Adju: adv Marked</b>	<b>Rheme</b>

33a

<b>The great hall</b>	<b>contains elaborate 16th- and 17th-century plaster work,</b>
<b>Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked</b>	<b>Rheme</b>

33b

<b>and</b>	<b>in the great parlour</b>	<b>is a representation of a local giant reputed to have been nearly 10 ft tall</b>
<b>text Conj: cord</b>	<b>top Adju: Prep Phr Marked</b>	
<b>Theme</b>		

34.

<b>The house</b>	<b>was built by the Norris family, who owned it until 1797</b>
<b>Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked</b>	<b>Rheme</b>



35a

Between 1720 and 1797	it was rented to local farmers,
Theme: top Adju: Prep Phr Marked	Rheme

35b

but	φ	but was restored and refurnished by 1812.
text Conj: cord	top Subj: pron, ellip Unmarked	Rheme

Theme

36.

The present building	was completed in 1754 to the design of John Wood of Bath.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

37a

The original building	was largely destroyed by fire in 1795;
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

37b

immediate rebuilding on the original idea	was begun, a council chamber being added in 1811.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

38.

On a newly devised dome	Felix Rossi's statues of Minerva was mounted in 1802.
Theme: top Adju: Prep Phr Marked	Rheme

39.

WALKER ART GALLERY	Named after Sir Andrew Barclay Walker, who donated the money for its construction.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

40a

It	has a notable collection of European and English paintings, including work by the Pre-Raphaelites;
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

40b

there	are 20th-century paintings and sculptures.
Theme: top Subj Unmarked	Rheme

## APPENDIX E4

<b>Theme Analysis of Text 4 about Liverpool</b>
---

1.

The northern bank of the River Mersey	was first settled in the 1st century AD.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

2.

By 1200	there was a fishing village on the Mersey, which was granted a charter by King John in 1207.
Theme: top Adju: Prep Phr Unmarked	Rheme

3a

Trading with the West Indies, and the slave trade,	led to a surge of expansion in the late 17th and early 18th centuries,
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

3b

but	it was not until the coming of the steamships in the 1840's	that Liverpool began to take on its modern form.
text Conj: cord	top Pred Cl Marked	Rheme
Theme		

4.

The steamships	were introduced just as the Irish potato famine caused millions of Irish-men to emigrate.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

5.

Tens of thousands	got only to Liverpool.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

6.

Two tunnels under the Mersey	connect Liverpool to Birkenhead.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

7a

There	is also a passenger ferry from the Pier Head landing stage in Liverpool to Bierkenhead and Seacombe,
Theme: top Subj Unmarked	Rheme

7b

and	the best view of Liverpool's 7 miles of water-front	is obtained from one of these ferries.
text Conj: :cord	top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

8.

Dominating the busy scene	is the Liver (pronounced Lie-ver) Building-the offices of the Royal Liver Friendly Society.
Theme: top Adju: Compl Marked	Rheme

9.

Its two main towers	are topped by "Liver" birds, mythical birds from which the city is said to have taken its name.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

10.

Underneath	is the largest floating landing stage in the world, stretching for half a mile on 200 pontoons.
Theme: top Adju: Prep Phr Unmarked	Rheme

11.

The central docks	are used by vessels bound for Ireland.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

12.

Gladstone Dock, further north,	commemorates the Victorian statesman who was born in Liverpool at 62 Rodney Street, which still had fine Georgian houses.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

13.

Liverpool's two modern cathedrals, both on high ground overlooking the city,	are examples of two distinct kinds of ecclesiastical architecture.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

14.

The Anglican Liverpool Cathedral, begun in 1904 by Sir Giles Gilbert Scott but still not completed,	is built of red stone in Gothic style.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

15a

It	was damaged by bombs in the Second World War,
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

15b

and	its fine peal of bells	was first rung in 1951.
text Conj: cord	top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

16a

Its aisles	are unusual in being built as tunnels through the walls,
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

16b

and	there	is much fine stained glass.
text Conj: cord	top Subj Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

17a

The Roman Catholic Metropolitan cathedral	was designed by Sir Frederick Gibbard
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

17b

and	φ	consecrated in 1967.
Theme: top Conj: cord	top Subj: pron, ellip Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

18.

The glass	was designed by John Piper and Patrick Reyntiens.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

19a

The building	was originally designed by sir Edwin Lutyens as a huge Classical domed building
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

19b

but	the war and soaring costs	dictated the change of plan to a more contemporary design.
text Conj: cord	top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

20.

Liverpool	is famed for its enlightened patronage of the arts.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

21.

The Walker Art Gallery	has a fine collection of European and English paintings, which includes Pre- Paphalelites.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

22.

The Royal Liverpool Philharmonic Orchestra	plays in the Philharmonic Hall, which was bought for the orchestra by the city.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

23a

The University of Liverpool	is expanding rapidly,
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

23b

and	the Mossley Hill area	will eventually become a university "village" accommodating nearly 1500 students.
text Conj: cord	top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

24.

Liverpool's pets, artists, writers and entertainers	have made a lasting mark on the cultural life of the nation, particularly since the emergence of the Liverpool-born Beatles to international fame in the 1960's.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

25.

The city	is famous for its sport, too.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

26.

Goodison Park, Everton's ground,	is one of the biggest football stadium in Britain.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

27.

Anfield, Liverpool's ground,	has the famous "Kop", where chanting fans pack the steep terraces behind one of the goals.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

28.

Aintree Racecourse	is the scene of the Grand National in the spring.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

29.

A semicircle of industrial towns, including Crosby, Bootle, Kirkby, St Helens and Widnes,	lies between Liverpool and the low-lying agricultural region beyond.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

30a

This	was marshland until it was reclaimed in the late 17th and early 18th centuries;
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

30b

now	it is fertile farming land ideal for potato-growing.
Theme: top Adju: adv Marked	Rheme



## APPENDIX E5

<b>Theme Analysis of Text 5 about Liverpool</b>
---

**A busy port and city on the Lancashire coast**

1.

There	was a settlement on the north bank of the River Mersey in the 1st century, close to a muddy creek, or "lifrugpool".
Theme: top Subj Unmarked	

2a

By 1200	a fishing village had grown up,
Theme: top Adju: Prep Phr Marked	Rheme

2b

and	in 1207	King John granted "Livpul" a charter to encourage the development of a port.
text Conj: cord	top Adju: Prep Phr Marked	Rheme
Theme		

3.

Modern Liverpool's growth	began in the late 17th and early 18th centuries, with the West Indies sugar trade and the slave trade.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

4.

The coming of the steamship in the 1840s	made the port busier than ever.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

5.

It	became a terminal for the Cunard and White Star Liners, and for merchant ships from all parts of the world, with 7 miles of docks along its waterfront.
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

6a

The steamships	took emigrants to Australia, Canada and America,
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

6b

and	they	brought in thousands of Irish refugees from the potato famines of the 1840s.
text Conj: cord	top NG: pron Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

7a

Many	got no further than Liverpool
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

7b

and,	as other nationalities followed,	the city began to take on the cosmopolitan character which it still retains.
text Conj: cord	top: $\beta$ DP Cl Marked	Rheme
Theme		

8a

Today	the mighty transatlantic liners have gone,
Theme: top Adju: adv Marked	Rheme

8b

but	Liverpool	is still Britain's second largest port after London.
text Conj: cord	top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

9a

Liverpool's Anglican cathedral, the largest in Britain,	is 671 ft long
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

9b

and	φ	stands on a wooded slope to the east of the city.
text Conj: cord	top Subj, pron Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

10a

The central tower	is 331 ft high,
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

10b

and	φ	spans the full width of the building.
text Conj: cord	top Sub, pron Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

11.

It	is built of red sandstone to a Gothic design by Sir Giles Gilbert Scott.
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Theme

12a

The foundation stone	was laid in 1904 by Edward VII,
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

12b

but,	interrupted by two World Wars,	the building was finally completed in 1978.
text Conj: cord	top $\beta$ NFT Cl Marked	Rheme
Theme		

**Prime Minister**

13.

Just north of the cathedral	is Rodney Street, one of the finest groups of Georgian houses in northern England.
Theme: top Adju: Prep Phr Marked	Rheme

14.

William Ewart Gladstone (1809-98), who was Prime Minister four times in the reign of Queen Victoria,	was born at No. 62.
Theme : top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

15.

The city's Roman Catholic cathedral	stands about half a mile further north, also on high ground.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

16.

The original plan	was for a building that would be second only to St Peter's in Rome.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

17.

But	soaring coasts and war-time interruptions	caused a change of plan.
text Conj: cord	top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

18.

The present building, designed by Sir Fredrick Gibbered in 1960,	was consecrated in 1967.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

19.

It	is cylindrical in shape, with a conical roof topped by a tapering, coloured-glass tower.
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

20a

A detached bell-tower	stands at one side of the main building,
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

20b

and	ϕ	is balanced by the Chapel of Sacrament at the other side.
text Conj: cord	top Subj: pron, ellip Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

21.

One of the most imposing buildings in Liverpool, St George's Hall,	was designed by Lonsdale Elmes, who was only 24 when the foundation stone was laid in 1838
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

22a

Elmes	died at the age of 33,
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

22b

and	the building	was finished seven years later in 1854.
text Conj: cord	top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

23.

St George's Hall	has been described as the finest example of the Greco-Roman style in Europe.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

24.

Sixteen Corinthian columns, each about 60 ft high,	make up the front portico, which is approached through ST Johns's Gardens.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

25.

The main hall	can accommodate 1,750 people.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

26.

Its sunken floor	is made up of 20,000 tiles mixed with bands of stone to produce a mosaic effect.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

27.

Liverpool's Town Hall	was completed in 1754 to the design of John Wood, the architect who gave the city of Bath much of its elegance.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

28.

The figure of Minerva by Felix Rossi	was added to the dome in 1802.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

29a

Many priceless treasures	are displayed in the building,
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

29b

and	the visitor's book	contains signatures of royalty, British and foreign statement, soldiers, diplomats and personalities of the theatre covering several generations.
text Conj: cord	top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

Theme

30.

The chandeliers in the large ball-room	were made in 1820.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

31a

Each one	is 28 ft long,
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

31b

φ	contains 20,000 pieces of crystal
Theme: top Sub: pron, ellip Unmarked	Rheme

31c

and	φ	weighs more than a ton.
text Conj: cord	top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

Theme

**Lord Mayor's gift**

32

Sir Andrew Barclay Walker, Lord Mayor of Liverpool in 1873,	provided the money to build the Walker Art Gallery which contains the largest collection of paintings in Britain outside London.
Theme : top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

33.

Among the famous works on display	are <i>And when did you last see your father?</i> by W. F. Yeames, Rubens' <i>Virgin and child with St Elizabeth and the child Baptist</i> , Martini's <i>Christ discovered in the Temple</i> and a Holbein portrait of Henry VIII.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

34

Other paintings	include works by Hogarth, Reynolds, Tumer and George Stubbs, who was born in Liverpool.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

35.

Also	on view	are sculptures by Rodin, Renoir, Le hongre and Epstein
text Adju: conj	top Adju: Compl Marked	Rheme
Theme		

36.

The Merseyside County Museum in William Brown Street	contains an aquarium and transport gallery in the basement, while the ground floor is devoted to the development of the City and the Port
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

37a

The first floor	covers the history of the Ship
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

37b

and	on the third floor	is the Time Keeping Gallery with a fine collection of watches, clocks and a reconstruction of a Chinese waterclock.
text Conj: cord	top Adju: Prep Phr Marked	Rheme
Theme		



38.

Also	on the third floor	is a public planetarium.
text Adju: conj	top Adju: Prep Phr Marked	Rheme
Theme		

39.

Speke Hall , near the south-east border of the city and close to the airport,	was started in 1490 by Sir William Norris.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

40.

The house	was completed in 1610 in its present form of four wings surrounding a cobbled courtyard.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

41a

It	escaped 18th century modernisation,
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

41b

and	φ	looks today as it did towards the end of the reign of Elizabeth I.
text Conj: cord	top Subj: pron, ellip Unmarked	Rheme

42.

With its black and-white half-timbering	it is one of the best houses of the period in existence
Theme : top Adju: Prep Phr Marked	Rheme

43.

Much of the interior furnishing	reflects the tastes of Richard Watt, a wealthy merchant who acquired the house in 1797, and his successors in the 19th century.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

44.

The kitchen	includes an array of copper ware, a collection of smoothing irons and some early vacuum cleaners.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

45.

The first Mersey road tunnel, the Queensway tunnel,	was opened in 1934 by George V.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

46a

It	is nearly 3 miles long
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

46b

and	ϕ	runs between Liverpool and Birkenhead.
text Conj: cord	top Subj: ellip Unmarked	
Theme		

47.

When opened,	it was the world's longest underwater tunnel.
Theme: β DP Cl Marked	Rheme

48a

The Kingsway Tunnel	is 5 1/2 mile long
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

48b

and	φ	links Liverpool with Wallasey.
text Conj: cord	top Subj: pron, ellip Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

49.

It	was opened by the Queen in 1971.
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

## APPENDIX E6

<b>Theme Analysis of Text 6 about Liverpool</b>
---

**LIVERPOOL**

1a

Liverpool	was once Britain's greatest seaport
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

1b

but,	more than any other major industrial city,	it has found difficulty in adapting to life in post-industrial Britain.
text Conj: cord	top Adju: adv Marked	Rheme
Theme		

2.

The changes Liverpool has had to face	are profound-the shift away from conventional cargo handling to containerized freight, from sea to air travel, from trade with the Empire to trade with Europe (favouring east coast ports and roll-on/roll-off ferries).
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

3.

At the same time,	the city has had its share of the problems facing the whole of the industrial north, most significantly a huge decline in the demand for manufacturing capacities.
Theme: top Adju: Prep Phr Marked	Rheme

4.

But	Liverpool	was slow to come to terms with these changes.
text Conj: cord	top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

5a

Unemployment in the area	is severe,
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

5b

and	a highly charged social and political atmosphere	had developed.
text Conj: cord	top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

6a

In 1981,	major riots erupted in the Toxteth district;
Theme: top Adju: Prep Phr Marked	Rheme

6b

more recently,	the radical labour council found itself simultaneously at odds with the Conservative government and the national labour party hierarchy by driving the city towards bankruptcy.
Theme: top Adju: adv Marked	Rheme

7.

In the wake of the riots	there has been considerable investment in highly visible projects designed to boost Merseyside's morale, image and economy, such as the highly successful International Garden Festival in 1984 and the splendid restoration of the disused South dock, close to the city centre.
Theme: top Adju: Prep Phr Marked	Rheme

8a

The big new free port to the north of the city	has failed to attract the hoped-for investment in manufacturing industry
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

8b

but	φ	has had some succession building up entrepot business.
text Conj: cord	top Subj: pron, ellip Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

9.

There	have been big investments in new plant by such companies as Ford, FM, Unilever (which has a very big presence in Merseyside) and Bibby Edible Oils.
Theme : top Subj Unmarked	Rheme

10.

The clothing retailer Littlewoods	has brought in a Hong Kong supplier to manufacture here.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

11.

Across the river at Birkenhead,	Cammel Laird has a full order book for its (admittedly much shrunken) shipyard.
Theme: top Adju: Prep Phr Marked	Rheme

12.

There	is no shortage of other well-known names represented in the area- Plessey, Otis Elevator, Metal Box, Nabisco, United Biscuits, GEC, BICC, AC Delco, for example.
Theme: top Subj Unmarked	Rheme

13.

Although the city's status as a financial centre received a blow in 1986 when the Bank of England closed its branch here,	it retains a sizable financial and insurance community, with the UK headquarters of Royal Insurance pre-eminent.
Theme: top β DP Cl Unmarked	Rheme

14.

But	the local pride for which "Scousers" (Liverpudlians) are renowned	has taken a battering from which it is taking a long time to recover.
text Conj: cord	top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

**Arriving**

15a.

Liverpool's airport	handles no international scheduled flights,	
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme	

15b.

but	Manchester's International Airport	is only 30 miles/48 km to the east and easily reached by motorway,
text Conj: cord	top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

16.

Road and rail links with the rest of industrial Lanchashire and with other parts of Britain	are good.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

17.

There	are car ferry services from Dublin and Belfast.
Theme: top Subj Unmarked	Rheme

**Liverpool Airport**

18.

The airport	is at Speke, about 6 miles/10 km southeast of the city centre, less than 30 min by car.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

19.

There	are scheduled flights from London Heathrow (five a day, flight time 70 min), Belfast, Dublin, Jersey and the Isle of Man.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

**City Link.**

20.

There	is no direct rail or subway link.
Theme: top Subj Unmarked	Rheme

21.

A taxi	is the best into the centre; journey time 20 min.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

22a

If doing business outside the city centre,	consider renting a car;
Theme : top $\beta$ DP CI Marked	Rheme

22b

both Hertz and Avis	have desks.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

**Railway station**

23.

Lime Street	is the main station.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme



24.

There	are direct and reasonably frequent express services from Scotland, the northeast via Manchester and London via Birmingham (2hr 40 min from Euston on the fastest services).
Theme: top Subj Unmarked	Rheme

25.

The Liverpool Pullman	is a predominantly First Class service to and from London, running, midday and evening, on which meals are served at your seat.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

26a

A sleeper train	leaves London Euston just before midnight;
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

26b

it	gets to Lime Street in the early hours,
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

26c

but	you	can stay in bed until 8 am.
text Conj: cord	top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme
Theme: top		

27.

There	is now a direct daily service between Lime Street and the Channel port of Dover.
Theme: top Subj Unmarked	Rheme

28.

The taxi rank	usually has plenty of cabs.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

29.

Timetable inquiries	telephone 709 9696.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

**Getting around**

30a

The city centre	is quite small,
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

30b.

and	the business district in particular	is very compact.
text Conj: cord	top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme
Theme: top		

31.

Expect	to get around on foot, with the aide of the occasional taxi or subway ride.
Theme: top Imperative Unmarked	Rheme

32.

Consider	renting a car if planning to visit industrial sites or the docks.
Theme top Imperative Unmarked	Rheme

**Walking.**

33a

The business and shopping areas	are not unusually hazardous;
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

33b

but	"clubland", south of Hanover Street and Central subway station,	is an area where you need to be on your guard at night.
text Conj: cord	top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

34

Taxis	are the London blackcab variety.	
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme	

35.

They	are not easy to find on the street; telephone reservations <i>City Kabs</i> telephone 264-7474, <i>Liver Cabs</i> telephone 922 1761.	
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme	

**Subway**

36a

Merseyrail underground railway	links Lime street and James Street stations, and commuter lines	
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme	

36b

and	φ	is most useful for journey between Lime Street and James Street station, which serves the waterfront and financial area
text Conj: cord	top Subj: pron, ellip Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

37a

The system	is slightly confusing:	
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme	

37b

trains on the Wirral Line	cross the river
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

37c

and	ϕ	come into the centre from the west,
text Conj: cord	top Subj: pron, ellip Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

37d

ϕ	go in a clockwise circle through the four city stations (James Street, Moorfields, Lime Street and Central),
Theme: top NG: pron Unmarked	

37e

and then	ϕ	go back across the river.
text Conj: cord	top Subj: pron Unmarked	
Theme		

38.

The separate Northern line	runs parallels to the Mersey, meeting the loop of the Wirral line at Moorfields and Central.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

39.

Services	start around 6 am and finish before midnight.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

## Driving

40.

Apart from the area around Lime Street,	Liverpool's street network presents few problems for drivers, partly because a broad and uncongested highway runs close to the centre, separating it from the river Mersey.
Theme: top Adju: Prep Phr Marked	Rheme

41.

Two road tunnels	cross the Mersey: one to Birkenhead, which starts close to the city centre (the westbound entrance and eastbound exit are some way apart), the other to Wallasey, reached via the A59.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

42a

Parking in the centre	is seldom a problem,
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

42b

but	thefts of and from cars	have grown considerably in recent years;
text Conj: cord	top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

42c

leave	your car in off-street parks or well-lit streets.
Theme: top Imperative Unmarked	

43.

If renting a car,	<i>Avis, Budget, Europcar and Hertz</i> have offices.
Theme: top $\beta$ DP Cl Marked	Rheme

**Limousines**

44a

Limousines Davy Liver	telephone 709 4646,
Theme: top Adju: Adv Marked	Rheme

44b

Wirral executive Cars	telephone 644 7565
Theme: top $\beta$ If-clause Marked	Rheme

**Ferry**

45.

Three services an hour	cross the Mersey <i>to</i> Brikenhead and Wallasey from Pier Head; journey time 8 min.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

**Area by area**

46.

The main business area	lies directly behind the three majestic waterfront buildings which announced Liverpool to approaching voyagers-from north to south, the Royal Liver building, the Cunard building (now the Customs house) and the Dock Board Offices.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

47.

This part of the city, with its grand Victorian stone buildings,	is as prosperous as ever.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

48a

The banks and insurance companies	are to be found here-
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

48b

the modern headquarters of Royal Insurance, known locally as the sandcastle",	is at the northwest corner of the area- along with accountants and lawyers (and the courts).
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

49.

The waterfront district	consists of little else but office buildings.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

50a

There	are derelict areas on the fringes,
Theme: top Subj Unmarked	Rheme

50b

but	there	are also slick new buildings and impressive renovations- notably Mercury Court, an office development which retains the facade of the old Exchange station.
text Conj: cord	top Subj Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

51.

Beyond Castle Street, away from the river,	there is more variety and shopping bustle.
Theme: top Adju: Prep Phr Marked	Rheme

52a.

The main shopping area	is further "inland", east of the business district, running up to Lime Street station;
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

52b

many of the streets	are traffic-free.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme: top

53a

Immediately, south of Central station, around Duke Street and Seel Street	is a slightly seedy area where many of the city's disused are to be found disused warehouses,
Theme: top Adju: Prep Phr Marked	Rheme

53b

and	beyond "clubland"	is "Chinatown", home of the biggest Chinese community in Europe.
text Conj: cord	top Adju: Prep Phr Marked	Rheme
Theme		

54a

Much of this part of the city	dates from the 18th C
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

54b

and	the Georgian architecture	is well preserved in Rodney Street, in which many professional practices have their offices.
text Conj: cord	top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

55.

A little way east of the centre, on rising ground,	are most of Liverpool's major institutions- the University, the hospitals, the Catholic cathedral.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme



**The suburbs**

56.

Surrounding the city centre	is a belt of innercity decay, the southern end of which meets the Mersey at Toxteth.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

57.

Beyond that	are the more prosperous suburbs, the most fashionable, of which Grassendale Park (right on the river) and Calderstones; in the northwest, Crosby and Blundellsands.
Theme: top Adju: Prep Phr Marked	Rheme

58.

But	top executives	are more likely to live outside the city- either further up the coast towards the elegant seaside resort of Southport, or across the Mersey on the Wirral peninsula.
text Conj: cord	top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

59.

The smart areas there	are on the western side-Caldy, and West Kirkby.
Theme Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

**Hotels**

60.

Most of Liverpool's business hotels	are fairly functional buildings dating from the early 1970s.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

61a

Only the Atlantic Tower	can be wholeheartedly recommended;
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

61b

it	is not a great hotel,	
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme	

61c

but	it	has no important drawbacks
text Conj: cord	top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

61d

and	$\phi$	is well placed for the business district.
text Conj: cord	top Subj: pron, ellip Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

62.

The Adelphi	is in a category all its own- a relic of an earlier age.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

**Restaurants**

63.

There	is a shortage of restaurants suitable for business entertaining.
Theme: top Subj Unmarked	Rheme

64.

Most	are casual places where interesting food is more easily found than elegant decor, privacy or particularly attentive service
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

65.

For a more formal meal,	the following are the best bets.
Theme: top Adju: adv Marked	Rheme

**Bars**

66.

For a relaxed drink in the business district	the obvious choice is <i>Trials</i> , Castle St (see <i>Restaurants</i> )- a sumptuously decorated cafebar (open 9.30 am-10.30 pm) with comfortable and well-spaced sofas arranged on various levels.
Theme: top Adju: adv Marked	Rheme

67

<i>Cains</i> , North Johon St	is a semibasement bar-pub, on the fringe of the business district, which is soon filled to capacity at lunchtime.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

68a

Liverpool	is famous for its pubs, several of which are remarkable for their extravagant period decor;
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

68b

the best	is the <i>Philharmonic</i> , 36 Hope St.
top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

**Entertainment**

69a.

Liverpool	prides itself on its entertainment scene;
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

69b.

quite apart from its exceptional contribution to pop music,	it has strong traditions in drama and poetry.
Theme: top Adju: Prep Phr Marked	Rheme

70.

The two main sources of information, both free and neither comprehensive,	are the month <i>Look Alive</i> and the fortnightly <i>What's On</i> .
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

**Theatre, ballet, opera**

71.

The <i>Empire</i> , Lime St telephone 709 1555, the biggest two-tier theatre in Britain,	hosts a wide variety of large-scale theatrical and musical events including ballet and opera by visiting companies.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

72.

There	are several smaller theatres: the <i>playhouse</i> , Williamson Sq telephone 709 8663, credit card telephone 709 4776 - innovative productions of classic and contemporary plays; the <i>Neptune</i> , Hanover St telephone 709 4988 alternative theatre.
Theme: top Subj Unmarked	Rheme

**Music**

73.

The splendid 1930s <i>Philharmonic Hall</i> , Hope St telephone 709 3789	is the home of the long-established Royal Liverpool Philharmonic orchestra.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

74.

During the main season (Sep, Apr)	there are concerts on most Wednesday and Saturday evenings.
Theme : top Adju: Prep Phr Marked	Rheme

75.

In the summer	there is a short Prom season , and occasional lunchtime recitals by members of the orchestra.
Theme: top Adju: Prep Phr Marked	Rheme

76.

There	are also various pubs, clubs and societies where folk, jazz and rock sessions are to be found.
Theme: top Subj Unmarked	Rheme

**Shopping**

77.

Liverpool	lacks the prosperity to support many attractive shops.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

78a

The most sophisticated	are to be found in Cavern Walks, a small-scale mall in Mathew Street, close to the commercial area;
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

78b

these	include several fashion shops as well as specialist retailers.
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

79.

Nearby, around the crossing of Victoria Street and North John Street,	are some of the more expensive men's clothes shops.
Theme: top Adju: Prep Phr Marked	Rheme

80.

Otherwise,	the main shopping area	is around Church Street, where there are several department stores.
text Adju: conj	top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

**Sightseeing**

81.

Liverpool	is unexpectedly rich in interesting sights, particularly striking buildings and some good art collections.	
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme	

82.

None of this	is obvious if you visit Tourist Information Centre, which still concentrates on The Beatles.	
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme	

83.

(Fans	can pay homage at the site of the Cavern Club, Mathew St, or at the Beatles City "experience", Seel St.)	
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme	

**Albert Dock Village**

84.

The dock's splendid 19th C warehouses (the largest group of Grade 1 Listed Buildings in Britain)	have been restored and turned into both a civic asset and a tourist attraction.	
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme	

85.

The "pavilions", as they are known,	now have gift shops, restaurants and part of the Maritime Museum's collection.	
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme	

86.

In 1988,	the Tate Gallery North will open in the largest warehouse, the rest of which is being converted into apartments
Theme: top Adju: Prep Phr Marked	Rheme

87.

Tate Gallery North	<i>Open every day from 10am.</i>
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

***The Bluecoat***

88.

The Bluecoat	The city's oldest building, with a permanent exhibition of modern British ceramics, jewellery and textiles, and changing art exhibitions, School La.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

89.

The Bluecoat	<i>Open Tue-Fri, 10.30-5.30.</i>
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

**Merseyside Maritime Museum**

90.

Merseyside Maritime Museum	A vivid display of Liverpool's seafaring history, also a major permanent exhibition about the 7m Europeans who emigrated to Australia and the New World via Liverpool in the years 1830-1930.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

91.

<i>Pier Head.</i>	<i>Open Easter-Nov, daily, 10.30-5.30</i>
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

***Sudley Art Gallery***

92.

Sudley Art Gallery	19thC merchant's house with good collection of 18th and 19thC British paintings, including some by Turner
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

93.

Mossley Hill RD.	Open Mon-Sat, 10-5; Sun, 2-5.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

***Transworld Festival Gardens***

94.

Transworld Festival Gardens	A garden and leisure park created for the 1984 international Garden Festival, on a previously derelict riverside site.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

95.

Riverside Dr	Open daily, 10 am-dusk.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

***Walker Art Gallery***

96.

Walker Art Gallery	The largest collection of paintings in Britain outside London, including works by Rubens, Hogarth and the Pre-Raphaelites; also the highly regarded Peter Moores Modern Art Exhibition. William Brown St.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme



97.

Walker Art Gallery	Open Mon-Sat, 10-5; Sun, 2-5.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

***Notable buildings,***

98.

Metropolitan Cathedral of Christ the Kings Brownlow hill: strikingly modern Catholic church, conical in shape,	consecrated in 1967.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

***Anglican cathedral***

99.

Anglican cathedral:	Britain's largest cathedral built in traditional style in the early part of this century by Sir Giles Gilbert Scott; fine city views.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

100.

St George's Hall:	impressive, classically styled 19thC building near Lime Street station, used for organ concerts.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

**Spectator sports**

101.

Merseyside and its hinterland	have a strong sporting tradition.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

102a

In Liverpool itself,	soccer rules the roost with two top-class teams, Liverpool and Everton;
Theme: top Adju: Prep Phr Marked	Rheme

102b.

but	both rugby codes	are strongly represented in neighbouring towns,
text Conj: cord	top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

102c

and	the event for which Liverpool is probably most famous	is a horse-race.
text Conj: cord	top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

**Racing**

103.

One of the few top events in the British sporting calendar to be held outside the southeast	is the Grand National steeplechase, run in early April at <i>Aintree</i> racecourse about 6 miles/10 km north of the city centre.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

104.

Through the rest of the year	regular meetings are held at <i>Haydock Park</i> , about 13 miles/12 km east.
Theme: top Adju: Prep Phr Marked	Rheme

**Rugby**

105.

Many of Britain's best rugby league teams, such as Widnes, Wigan and St Helen's,	come from the industrial towns east and northeast of Liverpool.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

**Soccer**

106a

Liverpool, winners in 1984 of both the European Cup and, for the 15th time, the League Championship,	play at <i>Anfield</i> telephone 260 9999;
Theme : top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

106b

their great rivals, Everton (League champions in 1985),	play at <i>Goodison Park</i> telephone 521 2020.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

**Keeping fit**

107a.

None of the city's council-run sports and leisure centres	<i>is central;</i>
Them: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

107b.

<i>their</i> addresses and telephone numbers	are listed in the monthly leaflet, <i>Liverpool Leisure Diary</i> .
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

108

The Britannia Adelphi and Moat House hotels	have fitness centres.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

**Sports and health centres.**

109.

The main one in the centre	is <i>Health and fitness World</i> Eberle St telephone 227 2212-on the edge of the business district (free to guests of the Atlantic Tower hotel).
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

**Golf**

110.

The Lancashire coast north of Liverpool	is renowned for its golf courses.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

111.

The best-known within easy reach of the city	are Formby and royal Birkdale (at Southport).
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

112.

Across the Mersey on the Wirral peninsula,	the most prestigious club is the Royal Liverpool at Hoylake.
Theme: top Adju: Prep Phr Marked	Rheme

**Squash.**

113.

The facilities at the Britannia Adelphi hotel	include squash, and most of the council-run sports centres have courts.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

114.

Private clubs	include <i>Crosby telephone 924 7203.</i>
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

**Swimming**

115.

Both of the hotel pools	are of fair size.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

116.

Many of the council sports centres	also have pools; inquiries telephone 724 2371.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

**Tennis**

117.

The main public courts	are in the <i>Vernon Sangster</i> sports centre telephone 263 0491.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

118.

Private clubs	include <i>Cressington</i> telephone 427 4657 and <i>Blundellsands</i> telephone 924 4624.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

## APPENDIX E7

<b>Theme Analysis of Text 7 about Liverpool</b>
---

1.

There	are so many ways of getting to Liverpool.
Theme: top Subj Unmarked	Rheme

2.

Knowing the enthusiasm of travellers to reach their objectives as quickly as possible,	we will deal with more orthodox modes of transport.
Theme: top $\beta$ NFT C1 Marked	Rheme

3.

The sooner you reach here,	the sooner you can start to explore, or get down to business.
Theme: top $\beta$ DP C1 Marked	Rheme
Theme	

4.

So	number one for the race to the hub of north-west travel	is by air to the new Liverpool Airport.
text Conj: cord	top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

5.

You	can get there from:		
		<u>Daily Flights</u>	<u>Duration minutes</u>
	London Heathrow	5	50
	Isle of Man	4	35
	Belfast	3	50
	Dublin	4	50
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme		

6.

Also,	there	is a weekend service from Jersey CI.
text Adju: conj	top Subj Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

7.

Next for speed	there is the sumptuous Merseyside Pullman train from London Euston at breakfast time gets you there to Liverpool Lime Street in 2 hours 40 minutes.	
top Adju: Adv Marked	Rheme	

8.

If you have to return the same day	there is a Pullman just after 4.00 pm which takes an extra minute to reach the capital.	
Theme: top $\beta$ If-clause Marked	Rheme	

9.

So,	by rail Inter City from London	you can travel in comfort, dine in style and return the same day if you must after a visit of over 5 1/2 hours.
text Conj: cord	top Adju: adv Marked	Rheme
Theme		

10.

Of course	there	are many other direct trains from Euston about eleven a day.
inter Adju: Modal	top Subj Unmarked	Rheme
Rheme		

11.

Then	there	are direct rail services ready to whizz you to the land of the Beatles and butties from Birmingham, Sheffield, Manchester, Wigan, Preston and Leeds.
text Cord: cord	top Subj Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

12.

If you prefer to travel by road,	then you have come to the motorway capital of England.
Theme: top $\beta$ If- clause Marked	Rheme

13.

But	to find it the most romantic way as voyagers have done from the Norse, invaders, the Irish immigrants or the pampered Cunard passengers of the '30s-	Sail up the river.
text Conj: cord	top NFT Cl Marked	Rheme
Theme		

14.

By "Monas Queen" from the Isle of Man steaming at 21 knots,	the car ferry covers the 84 miles journey in 3 hours 45 minutes (summer months only).
Theme: top Adju: adv Marked	Rheme

15.

The "St. Column"	will float your car from Belfast through to Liverpool's Langton Dock overnight in just 9 hours.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

16.

Once you have arrived,	there is no need to stop travelling.
Theme: top $\beta$ DP Cl Marked	Rheme

17.

There	are two tunnels under the Mersey which emerge in Birkenhead and the M53.
Theme: top Subj Unmarked	Rheme



18.

And	there	are everyone's favourite ferry boats taking you to the left bank of the Mersey and giving the finest views of Liverpool's Pier Head and Liver Birds.
text Conj: cord	top Subj Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

19

There	are plenty of buses, taxis and hire cars as you would expect to find in any well run city.	
Theme: top Subj Unmarked	Rheme	

**ARTS ROUND MERSEYSIDE**

20.

The Royal Liverpool Philharmonic Orchestra	is the city's resident symphony orchestra.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

21.

This internationally renowned orchestra	attracts famous musicians from all over the world.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

22.

In 1987	these included Kyung Wha Chung, Nigel Kennedy, Simon Rattle and Paul Tortelier.
Theme: top Adju: Prep Phr Marked	Rheme

23.

The Royal Liverpool Philharmonic Society	promotes a variety of music and concerts, from those given by the RLPO to those on the contemporary music network, from Mozart and Beethoven to Peter Maxwell Davies-taking in Gershwin and Elgar on the way!
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

24.

Opera companies	tour regularly to the Empire Theatre.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

25.

The most frequent visitors to the area	are Welsh National Opera and Scottish Opera who bring a varied repertoire to Liverpool.
Theme : top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

26.

WNO	has recently performed Berlioz's epic master- piece, the Trojan, to a packed house.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

27.

WNO's future visits	are awaited with great anticipation.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

28a

Scottish Opera	visited Liverpool in 1988
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

28b

and	φ	include in their repertory a new version of Bernstein's Candide.
text Conj: cord	top Subj: pron, ellip Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

29.

Recently,	Liverpool has had ballet performances on an irregular basis.
Theme: top Adju: Adv Marked	Rheme

30.

Now	this is changing.
Theme: top Adju: Adv Marked	Rheme

31.

In future,	we will play host to various national ballet and dance companies.
Theme: top Adju: Prep Phr Marked	Rheme

32.

In May 1987	the empire theatre was the venue for London Festival Ballet- a brilliant company who toured to Hong Kong and to the home of the Bolshoi themselves.
Theme top Adju: Prep Phr Marked	Rheme

33.

In the new year	the Empire theatre will play host to the Sadlers Wells Royal Ballet.
Theme : top Adju: Prep Phr Marked	Rheme

## BLUECOAT ARTS CENTRE

34.

The Bluecoat	is the oldest building of architectural note in Liverpool city center.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

35.

It	was built as a school and dates from 1717.
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

36.

Until 1906	the building was the Blue Coat School.
Theme top Adju: Prep Phr Marked	Rheme

37a

That year	the school moved out to Wavertree
Theme: top Adju: Adv Marked	Rheme

37b

and	for the next 20 years	its future use was uncertain.
text Conj: cord	top Adju: Prep Phr Marked	Rheme
Theme		

38.

Between 1907 and 1927	the building was occupied by the Sandon Studios society, a group of painters and sculptors.
Theme: top Adju: Prep Phr Marked	Rheme

39.

The building	was finally taken over by the Bluecoat Society of Arts in 1927.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

40.

Today	the Bluecoat is Liverpool's arts centre.
Theme: top Adju: adv Marked	Rheme

41.

The facilities	include a nationally renowned gallery; a concert hall in which a wide variety of music and dance activities take place; a 100 seat cinema operated by Merseyside Film Institute and a crafts centre-"The Bluecoat display Centre".
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

42.

The Bluecoat	also contains an attractive bistro, bar and coffee shop.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

43.

The building	also houses a number of tenants including a silversmith, potter, puppeteers and painters as well as small businesses and cultural organisations.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

44.

Rooms	are available to let for meetings and other activities.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

### NATIONAL MUSEUMS AND GALLERIES ON MERSEYSIDE

45.

Visitors to the city	find that there is an exciting buzz and a positive attitude about the place
Theme : top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

46.

This	is reflected in the wealth of art galleries and museums.
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

47.

In April 1986	the region's museums and galleries became the first in a provincial city to be given national status on a par with London.
Theme: top Adju: Prep Phr Marked	Rheme

48.

The seven major venues	are now known as the National Museum and Galleries on Merseyside.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

49.

Few, if any, cities in England	can boast of the same encyclopaedic range of collections, many located in fine elegant buildings
Theme : top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

50.

In the last year	some 350,000 visitors from over 50 countries were welcomed at the newly established Maritime Museum based in the prestigious Albert dock complex, one of the most important renovation programmes in Europe this century.
Theme: top Adju: Prep Phr Marked	Rheme

51a

Overall	the museums and galleries	saw more than 1,000,000 people pass through their doors last year,
int Adju: Modal	top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

51b

and	this	is only the beginning.
text Conj: cord	top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

52.

The range and quality of the museums and galleries	are quite surprising.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

53.

They	include the Lady Lever Art Gallery, the Sudley Art Gallery, the Liverpool Museum, the Walker Art Gallery, the Museums of Labour History, the Merseyside Maritime Museum and the Large Objects Collection.
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

54.

There	are treasures from all over the world and past times, natural history displays showing the wealth of the plant and animal kingdoms, a planetarium and aquarium and outstanding paintings by British and European artists.
Theme: top Subj Unmarked	Rheme

55.

They	are a demonstration of Liverpool's rich heritage which is virtually unrivalled anywhere else in Britain.
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

**CHINATOWN**

56.

Many Visitors to Liverpool	make the short journey from the city centre and the Albert Dock to Chinatown to sample the culinary delights of the area, which contains many restaurants offering a wide choice of oriental dishes.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

57.

Probably	the most popular time to visit the area	is during the Chinese New Year celebrations when dragons and fire-crackers abound.
inter Adju: Modal	top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

**CENTRAL LIBRARY**

58.

Only a short walk from Lime Street Station and the main shopping centre	is one of the country's largest public libraries.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

59a

The Central Library on William Brown Street	is open twelve hours a day
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

59b

and	its many reference facilities	are freely available to all.
text Conj: cord	top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

60.

You	can consult old maps of Liverpool, trace addresses and telephone numbers of companies, listen to records and much, much more.
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

61.

Lending services	are available on application.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

62.

Even if you are not seeking information,	the Central Library is still worth a visit.
Them: top $\beta$ If-clause Marked	Rheme

63.

A collection of water-colour paintings showing the changing face of Liverpool	is always on display.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

64.

Also,	there	is a constantly changing programme of exhibitions, including display of photography, art, craft and local history material.
text Conj: cord	top Subj Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

65.

If you have a free Wednesday lunchtime,	why not attend one of the recitals in the Hornby Library?
Theme: $\beta$ If-clause Marked	Rheme

66.

A wide range of music	is performed there, from classical to contemporary, from soloists to school orchestras.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme



67.

Many performers	are young musicians from various colleges in the north-west- a chance to hear future soloists at the beginning of their careers.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

68a

Check	for details of the recitals in Look Alive,
Theme: top Imperative Unmarked	Rheme

68b

or	ring	the Central Library.
text Conj: cord	top Imperative Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

69.

A creche	is available on Tuesday afternoons, so that parents can study in the library, confident that their preschool children are safe.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

70.

Tours of the Library	can be arranged for any group by contacting the Extra-Mural Services Officer.
Theme : top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

71a

You	will be surprised at how much there is to do and see in the Library-
Theme : top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

71b

come and visit	us.
Theme: top Imperative Unmarked	Rheme

## BEATLES

72.

If you were to stand on the step of Lime Street Station any day of the week and see the young people arriving from every part of the world with their packs on their backs	You would appreciate the magnetism or even the magic that Liverpool conjures up for each generation.
Theme: top $\beta$ If-clause Marked	Rheme

73.

Here	is the Mecca of the Beatles devotees.
Theme: top Adju: adv Marked	Rheme

74.

Their pilgrimage	takes them to Mathew Street, Cavern Walks, Strawberry Fields, Penny Lane.
Theme : top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

75.

$\phi$	To see Eleanor Rigby in Stanley Street.
Theme : top Subj: pron, ellip Unmarked	Rheme

76a

$\phi$	To walk down Menlove Avenue
Theme : top Subj: pron, ellip Unmarked	Rheme

76b

and	$\phi$	pass the house where John Lennon Spent his childhood.
Theme : top Subj: NG Unmarked	top Subj: pron, ellip Unmarked	Rheme

77.

The Beatles	captured the heart of the world with their youth, their disarming charm, their sense of humour as well as their originality.	
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme	

78a

Fans	come looking for the formula which created this talent
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

78b

and	today	they find that the sense of fun and adventure which caused a universal tidal wave lives on and throbs in the heart of this living city.
text Conj: cord	top Adju: adv Marked	Rheme
Theme		

79.

In Cavern Walks	you can see their statues on the site where the Mersey Sound began.
Theme: top Adju: Prep Phr Marked	Rheme

80.

Today	it is a very fashionable, high quality shopping centre.
Theme: top Adju: adv Marked	Rheme

**ALBERT DOCK**

81a

And	whilst we are on the subject of turning the old into the new,	they have rubbed the genie's lamp in the Albert Dock
text Conj: cord	Theme : top $\beta$ DP Cl Marked	Rheme
Theme		

81b

and	the spirit of the past	has become the wonder of the future.
text Conj: cord	top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

82a

It is as if	all that energy and bustle of a century ago has been bottled up in these warehouses, given a good rub and a scrub
Theme: top $\beta$ Themd Comnt Marked	Rheme

82b

and	Hey Presto	the spirit	has emerged.
Text Conj: cord	int Adju: Modal	top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme
Theme			

83.

If you want to dine by the water-side, drink wine in a real wine cellar, gaze at the sails in the marina or participate in the shopping experience of a life time	then the romance of Victoria and Albert will live again.
Theme: $\beta$ If-clause Marked	Rheme

84.

If you are lucky,	you could get your name down for a luxury flat in the development-some with a superb river view.
Theme: top $\beta$ If-clause Marked	Rheme

**SPEKE HALL**

85a

Keep	travelling south
Theme: top Imperative Unmarked	Rheme

85b

and	just by Liverpool Airport	is Speke Hall. A magnificent timber-framed manor house, set in gardens and woodlands on the out- skirts of Liverpool.
text Conj: cord	top Adju: Prep Phr Marked	Rheme
Theme		

86a

It	was built by members of the Norris family from about 1490 until 1612
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

86b

and	ϕ	is a remarkably complete house which has not been altered by later additions.
text Conj: cord	top Subj: pron, ellip Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

87a

The hall	was lived in by the Watt family in the last century
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

87b

and	furnishings	reflect their taste.
text Conj: cord	top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

88.

Particularly impressive	are the Great Hall with its Elizabethan "Great Wainscot" and the Great Parlour with its magnificent Jacobean stucco ceiling and Genealogical Overmantel which depicts three generations of the Norris family who built the hall.
Theme: top Adju: Compl Marked	Rheme

89a

All the rooms	are furnished
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Theme

89b

and	the tour	includes the main living rooms, bedrooms and kitchen, presenting a full picture of the house.
text Conj: cord	top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

90.

Speke Hall	is also well known for its priest holes, where Roman Catholic Priests hid during the persecution of the Elizabethan period and for its ghost.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

**CROXTETH HALL AND COUNTRY PARK**

91.

On the east side of the city halfway between the A57 and A580	Lies this attractive Queen Anne (early 18c) former home of the Earls of Sefton.
Theme: top Adju: Prep Phr Marked	Rheme

92.

Parts of the building	date from Elizabethan times.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

93.

The interior	is furnished early 20c with tableaux of the life-styles and fashions of that period.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme: top

94.

The gardens and home farm	offer children an opportunity to enjoy seeing live farm animals at close quarters.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

95.

Whilst we're in the mood for wild- life,	you can go back down Princess Drive, turn left into A58 (east) Liverpool Road, cross over M57 junction 2 into Prescot by-pass.
Theme: $\beta$ DP Cl Marked	Rheme

96.

The first turning on the left	takes you into a land of lions, tigers, monkeys, white rhinos, elephants, zebra and a host of other wild animals roving free in a natural setting.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

**AINTREE RACEOURSE**

97a

Return	to the M57
Theme: top Imperative Unmarked	Rheme

97b

and	travel	north to the end (exit 7).
text Conj: cord	top Imperative Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

98.

First left A59 Ormskirk Road,	the entrance is on the left just before Aintree Station.
Theme : top Adju: Prep Phr Marled	Rheme

99.

The Grand National Steeplechase	is held here each April.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

100a

Renowned worldwide as the most challenging steeple-chase,	it attracts an attendance of 81,000
Theme : top NFT Cl Marked	Rheme

100b

and	φ	is viewed on television by 700 million internationally.
text Conj: cord	Top Subj: pron, ellip Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

101a

It	has been running for 150 years
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

101b

and	its popularity	continues to grow.
text Adjunct: cord	top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme
Theme: top		

102.

So much so that	extra viewing space	has been developed recently
text Adju: conj	top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

103.

The racecourse	is used for a number of events including the Royal Lancashire Show in July.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

**MERSEYSIDE TOURISM**

104.

The Tourism Board	reports that 20 million visitors come to theatre each year.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

105a

Seventeen million	are day trippers
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

105b

and	the balance	stay overnight.
text Conj: cord	top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		



106.

A fifth of the "staying" visitors	come from overseas.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

107a

It is estimated	that these visitors spend about 250 million pounds a year
Theme: top $\beta$ Themd Comnt Marked	Rheme

107b

and	$\phi$	support 14,000 jobs in the country area, which includes the Wirral-Soutport and St. Helens.
text Conj: cord	top Subj: pron, ellip Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

**SOUTH DOCKS**

108.

The former docks and waterways	have been brought back into use by Merseyside Development Corporation.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

109.

The restored waters	now include a new marina and yacht haven with berths for hundreds of craft
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

110.

Dinghy sailing, sail-boarding, rowing, canoeing, hire boats, model boating, subaqua and fishing	are now popular pastimes.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

111.

Also,	plans	are afoot for major leisure and shopping developments in the area.
text Adju: conj	top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

112a

Part of the site of the spectacular 1984 International Garden Festival	has remained open to the public
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

112b

and	it is hoped	that this will continue.
text Conj: cord	top $\beta$ Themd Comnt Marked	Rheme
Theme		

## PUBS AND CLUBS

113.

If you want to burn the midnight oil, or oil the wheels after a grinding day	then you'll find a good flow of the golden liquid in well primed pumps in many of the city's streets.
Theme: top $\beta$ If-clause Marked	Rheme

114.

You	must turn east and ascend Mount Pleasant.
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

115.

When you see the Roman Cathedral rising before you	turn south into the street of Hope.
Theme: top $\beta$ DP Cl Marked	Rheme

116a

Halt	at the golden gates of number 36
Theme: top Imperative Unmarked	Rheme

116b

and	your Bunyanesque journey	has brought you to a hostelry of wonderful proportions.
text Conj: cord	top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

117.

Gaze	in wonder at its oriel windows, Art Nouveau balconies and stepped gables of the Philharmonic Dining Rooms, built in 1900.
Theme: top Imperative Unmarked	Rheme

118.

But	before you leave	do see the rose marble loos.
text Conj: cord	top: $\beta$ DP Cl Marked	Rheme
Theme		

**JAZZ**

119.

This memento to John Barleycorn	sets the scene for the respect, even reverence, he is paid in his grottos throughout this city of the mythical Liver Bird.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

120a

The ceremonies in his honour	are referred to as "having a bevy"
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

120b

and	φ	are often accompanied by appropriate music such as Jazz at the Phil, Birdy's Bar Leece Street, Hartleys Wine Bar Albert Dock, the Albert Lark Lane, Flangans Apple Mathew Street, Trader Jacks Berry Street and riverside Jazz in the Tradewinds Bar Terrace of the Atlantic Tower Hotel.
text Conj: cord	top Subj: pron, ellip Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

121a

Later at night	the clubs draw the traveller with their incessant beat
Theme : top Adju: adv Marked	Rheme

121b

and once again	we	start in Hope Street at the Chauffeurs in No 60
text Conj: cord	top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

**ROCK**

122.

Didn't rock	pave the way for the Beatles on their path to fame.
Theme: top = int Polar Question	Rheme

123.

Still,	today	it has its faithful foot tapping followers pounding their way round the Cumberland in Cumberland Street, Flanagans Apple Mathew Street, Kellys Wine Bar Smithdown Road, Mayflower Fazakerley Street, Penny Farthing St John's Precinct and Rudi's Cumberland Street.
Inter Adju: Modal	top Adju: adv Marked	Rheme
Theme		

124a

Once in the mood,	when the bars douse their lights then it's on to the clubs
Theme: top Adju: Adv Marked	

124b

and	φ	steer for the rock at Klub Krackers Mount Pleasant, The Pavilion Wolstenholme Square or Wisons Wood Street.
text Conj: cord	top Subj: pron, ellip Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

**GREAT DAYS OUT**

125.

Liverpool	is the ideal centre for touring in the north-west.	
top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme	

126.

Even a few miles from the centre	it is difficult to realise that the big city and busy industrial areas are close by.	
top Adju: Adv Marked	Rheme	

127

Travel	west-ward, through the Mersey Tunnel or by ferry, to find the rural lanes of Wirral and its country parks, or the beautiful medieval city of Chester.	
Theme: top Imperative Unmarked	Rheme	

128.

Direct road or rail routes	lead further afield to the glorious scenery of North Wales and the resorts of Rhyl and Colwyn Bay.	
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme	

129.

To the south	is rural Cheshire; rolling green pastures, the vast woodlands of Delamere Forest or the rugged hills of Macclesfield Forest, an extension of the Peak National Park.	
Theme: top Adju: Prep Phr Unmarked	Rheme	

## APPENDIX E8

<b>Theme Analysis of Text 8 about Liverpool</b>
---

1.

Liverpool,	up to the thirteenth century, was nothing more than a tiny fishing village, overshadowed by the big ports on the Dee-Chester, Burton, Neston, Parkgate and Hoylake.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

2.

Then	in 1207	King John granted Liverpool a charter, turning it into a borough and port for shipping men and materials to Ireland.
text Conj: cord	top Adju: Prep Phr Marked	Rheme

Theme
-------

3.

In later centuries	the port developed with the sugar trade from the West Indies, the American tobacco trade, and the rise of Lancashire textile industry.
Theme: top Adju: Prep Phr Marked	Rheme

4.

As the River Dee silted up,	the Mersey assumed greater importance until, in the 18th century, the world's first modern deep-water dock was built in Liverpool.
Theme: top $\beta$ DP CI Marked	Rheme

5a

New Custom-house	was erected,
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

5b

new streets	were laid out,
Theme Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

5c

wealthy merchants	erected fine homes near their warehouses in the city centre.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

6.

During that busy century	the population leapt from 5,000 to nearly 55.000.
Theme: top Adju: Prep Phr Marked	Rheme

7.

By the time Victoria came to the throne,	Liverpool was Britain's biggest port, bringing in raw materials and exporting finished goods from the new Lancashire industries.
Theme : top $\beta$ DP CI Marked	Rheme

8.

But	the very success of Liverpool as a port	made her vulnerable to any depression that hit trade.
text Conj: cord	top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

9.

In the 1930's	the city fathers set about establishing in the city a wide range of industries that made Liverpool less wholly dependent on shipping.
Theme: top Adju: Prep Phr Marked	Rheme

10.

They	succeeded to such an extent that today Merseyside, for example, rivals the Midlands as the country's main car-manufacturing area, as well as building up a wide reputation for its engineering and mass-production skills.
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

11.

This	has been achieved without losing sight of the fact that Liverpool's basic strengths lies in its position as Europe's greatest port on the Atlantic seaboard.
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

12.

It is a matter of pride for the people of the city	that so many of the goods sent out through the largest exporting port in the Commonwealth bear the label "Made in Liverpool".
Theme: top $\beta$ Themd Comnt Marked	Rheme

13.

The main points of interest in the city	are set out here in the form of a circular tour.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

14a

It	's a long tour,
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

14b

so	we	don't advise you to do it all in one day!
text Conj: cord	top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

Theme

**The waterfront,**

15.

The waterfront,	Where it all begins.
Theme : top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

16.

This	is the first impressive sight of the city for those who come by sea.
Theme : top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme



17.

Their first step ashore	is on the Landing Stage, the largest floating structure in the world, shared by the ocean liners at one end and the Mersey ferry boats at the other.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

18.

There	's also a brand-new bus terminus here, with a covered pedestrian way and a restaurant overlooking the river.
Theme: top Subj Unmarked	Rheme

**The big tree**

19.

The liver Building, flanked by the Cunard Building and the Dock Board Building,	dominates the waterfront.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

20.

The Liver Building proudly carrying twin Liver birds,	has become a symbol of Liverpool.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

21.

The faces on its four-sided clock	are bigger even than Big Ben.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

**The Town Hall,**

22.

The Town Hall,	a few steps up from the river.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

23.

Built in 1754,	it is one of the most elegant show places in Liverpool (open to parties by special arrangement).
Theme: top $\beta$ NFT CI Marked	Rheme

**Dale Street**

24.

Dale Street	runs up through the heart of the city.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

25a

Once the departure point for horse- drawn stage coaches,	it was a street of inns,
Theme : top Adju: adv Marked	Rheme

25b

and	some interesting old alleyways	survive to remind us of this time.
text Conj: cord	top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme
Theme: top		

26.

Liverpool	is a major commercial centre and the world's largest centre for insurance.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

27.

As Britain's chief flour- milling port,	Liverpool also has a busy Corn Exchange.
Theme: top Adju: adv Marked	Rheme

**In Sir Thomas Street**

28.

In Sir Thomas Street, off Dale Street,	you'll find the Municipal Buildings which houses the city Public Relations Office.
Theme : top Adju: Prep Phr Marked	Rheme

29.

Here	you can get any further information you need about the city.
Theme: top Adju: adv Marked	Rheme

**The Mersey Tunnel.**

30.

At the top end of Dale Street	is the Liverpool entrance to one of the longest underwater highways in the world- the Mersey Tunnel, opened in 1935 by King George V.
Theme: top Adju: Prep Phr Marked	Rheme

31.

Over 18 million vehicles a year	use this 2 1/2-mile long, four-lane tunnel.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

32.

A second tunnel	is under construction between Liverpool and Wallasey.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

**St. George's Hall.**

33.

Variously described as "England's finest public building" and "one of the greatest edifices of the world",	St. George's Hall, designed by 24-years-old Harvey Lonsdale Elmes, was opened in 1854.
Theme: top β NFT CI Marked	Rheme

34.

Originally planned only as a concert hall,	it was built also to provide a superb setting for the Assize Courts.
Theme : top $\beta$ NFT CI Marked	Rheme

35.

The Great Hall	is richly decorated with bronze gates, marble and alabaster balustrades, and granite columns and mosaic floors (usually covered).
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

36.

Opposite to St. George's Hall	is a fine group of imposing civic buildings consisting of
Theme: top Adju: Prep Phr Marked	Rheme

### The Museums

37.

The Museums newly constructed after war damage,	began originally with the famous Derby collection of birds and the Mayor bequest of archaeological and anthropological specimens.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

38.

Now	they have grown to include an aquarium, galleries on shipping, local history, applied and decorative arts, and collections of ivories, gold and jewellery.
Theme : top Adju: adv Marked	Rheme

### The Walker Art Gallery

39

The Walker Art Gallery	The largest collection of paintings outside London.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

40.

The collection	started with that of William Roscoe, a Liverpool lawyer and patron of the arts whose most famous acquisition was Simone Martini's "Christ discovered in the Temple".
Theme : top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

41.

In 1960	Ruben' "Virgin and child with St. Elizabeth and the child Baptist", was purchased.
Theme : top Adju: Prep Phr Marked	Rheme

42.

The famous "And when did you last see your father?"	is here too.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

### The Central Libraries

43.

More books	are on open display on the shelves than in any other public library in the country.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	

44a

The Hornby Library	has an outstanding collection of prints and first editions
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

44b

and	the Liverpool Record Office and Local History Library	contain valuable original documents about the history of the City.
text Conj: cord	top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

**The University**

45a

Founded in 1881, with just 93 students,	the University now has over 6,000 students
Theme: top $\beta$ NFT CI Marked	Rheme

45b

and	$\phi$	expects to reach 10,000 in the early 1970's.
text Conj: cord	top Subj: pron, ellip Unmarked	Theme
Theme		

46.

Within the University area	is the School of Tropical Medicine, one of the most important centres for tropical studies in the world.
Theme: top Adju: Prep Phr Marked	Rheme

**The Metropolitan Cathedral of Christ the King,**

47.

The Metropolitan Cathedral of Christ the King, consecrated in 1967,	uses modern materials and new building techniques to produce a church of our time.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

48.

No cathedral	was ever built in so short a time-four years.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

49.

The magnificent crown of glass, designed by John Piper and Patrick Reyntiens,	was the largest commission for coloured glass in the history of the church.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

50.

Revolution	is carried right to the altar, which is placed in the centre of the congregation so that everyone can feel closely involved in the Mass.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

51.

Sir Frederick Gibberd	is the architect.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

**Philharmonic Hall**

52.

In a direct line between the two cathedrals	is the distinguished home of the Royal Liverpool Philharmonic orchestra.
Theme: top Adju: Prep Phr Marked	Rheme

53.

Built in 1939	it is acoustically one of the most perfect halls in Britain.
Theme: top $\beta$ NFT Cl Marked	Rheme

**Building and Design Centre**

54.

Further along Hope Street,	is the Building & Design Centre which has permanent and temporary exhibitions.
Theme: top Adju: Prep Phr Marked	Rheme

**Liverpool Cathedral**

55.

How many cities in the world	can boast two 20th century cathedrals, each a masterpiece though their styles are a millennium apart?
Theme: top = int Wh-Clause Unmarked	Rheme

56.

Sir Giles Gilbert Scott	designed his massive sandstone cathedral as a modern expression of the mediaeval Gothic style.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

57a

It	dominates both city and river,
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

57b

and	$\phi$	has one of the largest cathedral organs (nearly 10,000 pipes) in the world.
text Conj: cord	top Subj: pron, ellip Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

58a

Building	began in 1904,
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

58b

and	$\phi$	should be completed in 1975.
text Conj: cord	top Subj: pron, ellip Marked	Rheme
Theme		

59.

It	has the world's largest Gothic arch.
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

**Bluecoat Chambers**

60.

Bluecoat Chambers, a Queen Anne building in the heart of the city,	is the creative centre for the arts in Liverpool.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme



61.

It	holds exhibitions of painting and sculpture, poetry readings, concerts and crafts exhibitions.
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

**Bold Street and Church Street**

62.

Bold Street and Church Street	run through the centre of Liverpool's main shopping area, with huge department stores and small specialist shops.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

63.

At the end of Lord Street	is the Victoria Monument, built where the old Liverpool Castle once stood.
Theme: top Adju: Prep Phr Marked	Rheme

**Speke Hall**

64a

Speke Hall	(not on the circular tour;
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

64b

you	'll find it on the map at the back of the guide).
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

65

φ	A charming Elizabethan house lying in wooded, secluded grounds near the river, where one can step back into history.
Theme: top Subj: pron, ellip Unmarked	Rheme

66.

An interesting day	can be divided between this quiet, old-world mansion and the bustling airport nearby.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

**ENTERTAINMENT & RECREATIONS**

67.

RADIO MERSEYSIDE, opened in November 1967	is one of the first local radio stations in Britain and the biggest.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

68.

The PLAYHOUSE with its new extension	offers a full season of plays from Shakespeare to N.F. Simpson.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

69a

The EVERYMAN THEATRE	tends towards modern playwrights
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

69b

and	φ	holds poetry readings.
Theme Conj: cord	top Subj: pron, ellip Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

70.

THE ROYAL COURT THEATRE	is a magnificent centre for all forms of stage entertainment, while the EMPIRE, with its huge stage, presents musicals, opera, ballet and variety.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

71.

The NEPTUNE, the home of amateur drama,	also stages professional productions and lunch-time shows.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

**SPORT**

72.

Liverpool-some would say the most sport-conscious city in Britain-	tends to be split by the "great divide": those who support Everton and those who favour Material Liverpool, two of the country's finest football teams.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

73a

All the world	knows the 30-fence Grand National,
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

73b

and	people	come from all over the world to this greatest steeple-chase of all.
text Conj: cord	top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

74.

At Liverpool Stadium,	battle has been joined by many of the world's great boxers and wrestlers.
Theme: top Adju: Prep Phr Marked	Rheme

**Parks**

75.

Around Liverpool	is a ring of large, well-planned parks, covering a total area of 2,400 acres.
Theme: top Adju: Prep Phr Marked	Rheme

76.

Two of the largest of these	are Sefton Park, dominated by its great Palm House, and Calderstones and Harthill (two parks which adjoin each other).
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

77.

Harthill	is famous for its huge hot-houses (36,00 square feet of glass) and especially for the Orchid House, with its prize-winning blooms.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

**The Port**

78.

The Port	Greatest export port in Britain at a time when exports mean more than at any other time in our history: that is the challenging role for Liverpool today.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

79.

New roll-on, roll-off berths	have been introduced.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

80.

Container facilities of faster handling of goods	are well under- way.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

81.

A new 36 million dock system	is planned for 1970.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

82.

And,	even now	Liverpool is handling over 25 million tons of freight and 34,000 ships a year from 36 miles of docks.
text Conj: cord	top Adju: adv Marked	Rheme
Theme		

83.

Visits to the Gladstone Dock	can be arranged for school children through the Information Officer, Mersey Docks and Harbour Board, Pier Head.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

**THE AIRPORT**

84.

Liverpool	can take the biggest jets with one of the longest runways outside London (1 1/2 miles).
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

85.

In the last few years	it has become a major international jetport, with direct flights to many parts of Europe.
Theme: top Adju: Prep Phr Marked	Rheme

86a

It	has the highest safety standards in the U.K.
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

86b

and	φ	has the best equipped runway for "jumbo" jets.
text Conj: cord	top Subj: pron, ellip Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

87a

The spectators' balcony	makes a popular day out-
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

87b

and	there	is a high class restaurant, cocktail and buffet.
text Conj: cord	top Subj Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

## INDUSTRY

88.

The traditional industries of Liverpool	include sugar refining and flour milling (Merseyside is the largest milling centre in Europe.)
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

89.

But	these	have now been strengthened by a wide range of new industries, from pharmaceuticals to telecommunications, which have made modern Liverpool their home.
text Conj: cord	top Subj: pron Unmarked	
Theme		

90a

Cars	have come to Merseyside in a big way:
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

90b

Ford's 15,000 workers	turn out over 1,500 cars a day-more than half of them for export.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

91a

This	is Europe's largest motorcar factory under one roof,
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

91b

and	ϕ	houses the world's largest transmission plant.
text Conj: cord	top Subj: pron, ellip Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

92a

Standard-Triumph	are here in strength too,
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

92b

and	with Vauxhall across the Mersey,	the Motor components manufacturers have been encouraged to set up workshop on Merseyside.
text Conj: cord	top Adju: Prep Phr Marked	Rheme

Theme

93a

More big names which can be found on Merseyside	Are English Electric, Schweppes, Plessey, Goodlass Wall, Bibby's,
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

93b

and	there	are many others.
text Conj: cord	top Subj Unmarked	Rheme

Theme

**FACE OF THE FUTURE**

94a

The 25 million civic and social centre to be built in Liverpool	will not only be the world's most modern development in local government,
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

94b

but	φ	will still be up-to-date in the year 2,000.
text Conj: cord	top Subj: pron, ellip Unmarked	Rheme

Theme

95.

A protected arcade	will cross the centre of the city to link with office, shopping and cultural areas.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

96a

Work	is already well advanced on St. John's Precinct- a new shopping complex including St. John's Market-
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

96b

and	the 450 ft. beacon, which will have a revolving restaurant,	is already a landmark.
text Conj: cord	top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

**The giant new Seaforth dock project,**

97.

The giant new Seaforth dock project, planned for 1970,	Is designed for tomorrow's ships and tomorrow's high-speed handling methods.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

**Strand-Paradise development**

98.

Strand-Paradise development	A flatted system offices, flats sand shops, with its own hotel, bus station and four acre garden deck.
Theme: top NG: Subj Unmarked	Rheme

99.

φ	A centre in itself and also a main transport interchange point for the city, directly linked with the proposed new motorways, inner rail loops and airport.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme



**TRANSPORT**

100a

A 57 million inner motorway with 6 lanes	will encircle the city within the next fifteen years,
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

100b

and	φ	will separate through traffic.
text Conj: cord	top Subj: pron, ellip Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

**Cafes and Restaurants**

101.

Visitors to Liverpool	are extremely well provided for in this respect, as there are numerous cafes and restaurants, licensed and unlicensed, in every part of the City, where either snacks or full meals may be obtained
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

102a

A few of these establishments	are mentioned below,
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

102b

and	many of the larger places	specialise in catering for organised parties by arrangement.
text Conj: cord	top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

103.

A comprehensive list of Restaurants and Cafes (including Chinese and Indian)	Is available from the City Public Relations Office.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

104a

T. J. Hughes, Lewewis's and Woolworths	have Restaurants
theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

104b

and	there	are many others of all kinds too numerous to list here.
text Conj: cord	top Subj Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

## APPENDIX E9

<b>Theme Analysis of 9 about Liverpool</b>
--

**The River & Ferries**

1a

Liverpool's name	is synonymous with the sea and ships
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

1b

and	the best starting point for any tour	is to take a ferry trip across the Mersey.
text Conj: cord	top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

Theme
-------

2a

Ferries	Were already well-established when Edward III granted the monks of Birkenhead Prior legal rights in 1330
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

2b

and	no visit to the city	is complete without the experience of sailing out from under the twin turrets of the Royal Liver Building to take in the view from mid-river.
text Conj: cord	Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

Theme
-------

3.

However many times you make the short trip,	here is always a sense of adventure and expectancy.
Theme: top $\beta$ DP Cl Marked	Rheme

**Pier Head**

4.

Dominating the waterfront	are the three buildings at its centre; the Royal Liver Building, the Cunard Building and the Port of Liverpool Building.
Theme: top Adju: Compl Marked	Rheme

5.

Monumental and magnificent,	they stand in testimony to the enterprise and prosperity of Liverpool in the early years of this century.
Theme: top Adju: Compl Marked	Rheme

6.

The Royal Liver Building	is probably the city's best known landmark.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

7.

Standing 322 feet from the ground to the top of the legendary Liver Birds,	it was the first large-scale reinforced concrete building in the world.
Theme: top NFT CI Marked	Rheme

8.

Designed by W Aubrey Thomas,	it has an originality and power that is unique in Britain.
Theme: top NFT CI Marked	Rheme

**Albert Dock**

9.

Albert Dock	is Liverpool's greatest expression of dock architecture.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

10.

The vast warehouse complex	was opened by Prince Albert in 1846.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

11.

The architect, Yorkshire engineer Jesse Hartey,	introduced the closed system, of which Albert Dock was the prototype.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

12.

The closed dock system	endured greater protection of valuable cargoes such as tobacco and spirits.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

13.

Built predominantly of cast-iron and brick, with external walls four feet thick at ground level.	The Albert Dock has both simplicity and enormous power.
Theme: top Adju: Compl Marked	Rheme

14.

Although it marked an important step forward in the design of docks,	it soon became obsolete with the introduction of larger steam-powered ships.
Theme: top DP CI Marked	Rheme

15.

By 1920,	it had virtually ceased to be used for commercial activities.
Theme: top Adju: Prep Phr Marked	Rheme

16.

Fortunately,	the buildings	have survived virtually intact.
inter Adju: Modal	top Subj: NG Unmarked	
Theme		

17.

Now the largest group of Grade One listed buildings in the country,	Albert Dock has been sensitively restored to house an exciting mix of shops, businesses, museums and galleries and is one of Britain's top tourist attractions.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

18.

Merseyside Maritime Museum	is housed in one block with five floors of shipping-related exhibitions and further exhibits in the quayside buildings outside including an important new section devoted to the history of Liverpool.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

19.

Adjacent to it	is the Tate Gallery, the major centre for contemporary art in the North of England.
Theme: top Adju: Prep Phr Marked	Rheme

20.

Elsewhere in the complex,	The Beatles Story is an essential attraction for fans of Liverpool's most famous export.
Theme: top Adju: Prep Phr Marked	Rheme

## Commerce

21.

As the port expanded and Liverpool grew in prosperity,	many of the companies associated with the port erected buildings to reflect their importance and confidence.
Theme: top $\beta$ DP Cl Marked	Rheme

22.

A short walk up Water Street and along Castle Street	will give a taste of some of the finest commercial architecture in the country.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

23.

Particularly worth looking at	is the glass-facaded Oriel Chambers, a building so far ahead of its time that its architect, Peter Ellis, was ridiculed to the extent that he designed no further buildings.
Theme: top Adju: Compl Marked	Rheme

24.

On the opposite side of Water Street	stands the impressive India Buildings, with a shopping arcade named after the Holt family, who built the block as headquarters for their shipping line.
Theme: top Adju: Prep Phr Marked	Rheme

25.

The same architect, Herbert J Rowse,	was responsible for the magnificent Martin' Bank Building (now Barclays Bank) across the road.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

26.

Completed in 1932,	it is his first work with a superb interior which can be viewed during the bank's opening times.
Theme: top NFT CI Marked	Rheme

27.

Next door to the bank	stands the Town Hall, built between 1749 and 1754 to the design of John Wood of Bath.
Theme: top Adju: Prep Phr Marked	

28.

A disastrous fire in 1795	necessitated a reconstruction of parts of the building by James Wyatt, who added the impressively dome on its high drum.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	

29.

The interior	contains magnificent civic suites complete with fine period furniture.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

**Culture**

30.

Liverpool's most important building architecturally	is St George's Hall.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

31.

Described as the finest Greco-Roman building in Europe,	St. George's Hall was designed by 24 year old Harvey Lonsdale Elmes, who gained his commission by winning a competition to design a building to house a music festival.
Theme: top NFT C1 Marked	Rheme

32.

Liverpool Town Council	then held a second competition for assize courts, which Elmes also won.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

33a

The Corporation	decided to combine the two schemes
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme



33b

and	St. George's Hall	is the result.
text Conj: cord	Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

34a

Work	started in 1842 but	
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme	

34b

but	Elmes, dying from tuberculosis in 1847,	was unable to see his masterpiece completed.
text Conj: cord	Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

35a

His friend and mentor C R Cockerell	was brought in to finish the building	
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme	

35b

and	φ	was responsible for designing the exquisite Small Concert Hall.
text Conj: cord	top Subj: pron, ellip Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

36.

Few buildings	can match the grandeur of St. George's Hall.	
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme	

37.

Its position, on spacious St. George's Plateau overlooked by the Gothic splendour of the old North Western Hotel,	enhances the monumental quality of the building and rewards the visitor arriving from Lime Street Station with a remarkable first impression of the city.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

38.

The view from St. George's Plateau	reveals a striking sweep of classical buildings.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

39.

Here, on William Brown Streets,	Liverpool Museum, William Brown Library and the Walker Art Gallery rub shoulders with each other, offering a superb choice of internationally important collections.
Theme: top Adju: adv Marked	Rheme

40

The Walker Art Gallery,	in particular, is widely regarded as having the most comprehensive collection of European art outside of London.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

41.

Two other features	are worth noting.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

42.

The Wellington Column	stands 132 feet high
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

43.

and	φ	is an exact replica of the Melville Monument in Edinburgh.
text Conj: cord	top Subj: pron, ellip Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

44.

It is said	that the statue of the Duke is cast in metal from guns captured at Waterloo.	
Theme: top β Themd Comnt Marked	Rheme	

45.

At the end of the monument	is the Steble Fountain, erected in 1879.	
Theme: top Adju: Prep Phr Marked	Rheme	

### The Cathedrals

46.

Liverpool	is one of few cities to boast two cathedrals.	
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme	

47.

Both	were built this century although you would hardly be likely to find two greater contrasts in style.	
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme	

48

Paradoxically,	the Anglican Cathedral	was designed by a Catholic, 21 year old Giles Gilbert Scott and the Metropolitan Cathedral by a Protestant, Frederick Gibbard.
int Adju: Modal	Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

Theme

49.

Liverpool Cathedral	is one of the largest cathedrals in the world; a massive, red sandstone masterpiece which took nearly 75 years to complete.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

50.

Commanding a superb site, high above the river,	the Cathedral was the first to be consecrated in England on a wholly new site since the 13th century.
Theme: top NFT CI Marked	Rheme

51.

At the other end of appropriately-named Hope Street	stands the Metropolitan Cathedral.
Theme: top NFT CI Marked	Rheme

52.

Built in a mere five years and completed in 1967,	its imaginative conical shape reveals an interior of astonishing light and colour.
Theme: top $\beta$ NFT CI Marked	Rheme

53.

Together	the two cathedrals	dominate the landscape; communicating a powerful spirit of ecumencialism for which the city has become famous in recent years.
text Adju: conj	top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

### Georgian Liverpool

54.

Liverpool	retains a large part of its Georgian heritage.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

55.

Although a considerable amount has been lost this century,	many of the remaining buildings have been sensitively restored particularly in the Rodney Street/Canning Street area.
Theme: top $\beta$ DP CI Marked	Rheme

56.

Rodney Street	was one of the first of the new residential streets created by Liverpool's wealthy merchants created at the end of the eighteenth century.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

57a

Today,	the street still captures the elegance of an earlier Liverpool:
Theme: top Adju: adv Marked	Rheme

57b

the buildings	are beautifully proportioned
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

57c

and	$\phi$	sit side by side in harmony, enhanced by subtle differences in door styles, railings and other features.
text Conj: cord	top Subj: pron, ellip Unmarked	
Theme		

58.

Little wonder	that both the University of Liverpool and the John Moores University	are based here in the extensive network of streets and squares that run between the dominant features of the city's two cathedrals.
int Adju: Modal	top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

## The Arts

59.

Liverpool	has a long tradition of excellence in the arts.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

60a

The internationally renowned Royal Liverpool Philharmonic Orchestra	has its permanent home in Hope Street
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

60b

and,	further down the street,	is the Everyman Theatre, a pioneering repertory company housed in a converted Gospel Hall.
text Conj: cord	top Adju: Prep Phr Marked	Rheme

Theme
-------

61.

Claiming seniority as Britain's longest established repertory theatre,	the Playhouse in Williamson Square has long been an important contributor to the city's artistic reputation.
Theme: top $\beta$ NFT CI Marked	Rheme

62.

Two commercial theatres, the Empire and Royal Court,	regularly stage national touring companies and shows.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

63.

The Tate Gallery in the Albert Dock, the John Moores Exhibition at the Walker, and the Bluecoat Gallery	have ensured Liverpool's standing for contemporary visual art.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

64.

The city	has gained a deserved reputation for its artistic energy.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

65.

The energy released by the Beatles	revealed a city of musicians, poets, actors, playwright and painters.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

66.

Today,	this creative diversity continues to make its mark in every area of the national arts scene.
Theme: top Adju: adv Marked	Rheme

### The Parks

67.

Liverpool	has a great heritage of public parks and gardens, many of which were the former estates for merchants and shipping owners.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

68a

The Victorians	heralded a golden era of public design
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

68b

and	Liverpool	was in the forefront of the movement to recreate a breath of the country in the townscape.
text Conj: cord	top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

69a

Princes Park, in 1842,	was the first independent commission for the master of landscape design, Joseph Paxton,
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

69b

and	φ	was a benchmark for public park design in Europe and America.
text Conj: cord	top Subj, pron, ellip Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

70.

Particularly worth visiting	are Sefton Park, with its graceful avenues, wooded vales, lake and Palm House and the more formal Calderstones Park with its walled Old English Garden., Japanese Garden and other specialist areas.
Theme: top Adju: Compl Marked	Rheme

### The City Centre

71.

Liverpool city centre	is an interesting mix of old and new.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

72.

The oldest	is the Bluecoat Chambers, a lovely Queen Anne building which is also the first art centre in Britain.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

73a

The complex	contains a gallery, concert room, studios and shops
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme



73b

and	φ	has an exquisite enclosed garden.
text Conj: cord	top Subj: pron, ellip Unmarked	Rheme

Theme

74.

In contrast,	the new shopping development in Clayton Square and Cavern Walks	are interesting additions to the city's architecture.
text Adju: conj	top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

Theme

75.

Pedestriation, the restoration of important buildings including the Lyceum on Bold Street and other improvements	are transforming the centre.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

76a

Liverpool	has the oldest Chinese community in Europe
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

76b

and	their area	is being upgraded.
text Conj: cord	top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

Theme

77.

Elsewhere, around London Road, Queen Square and Bold Street,	ambitious schemes are underway, bringing new life to the city.
Theme: top Adju: Prep Phr Marked	Rheme

**The Beatles**

78.

To the outsiders,	perhaps, more than anything else, Liverpool is the birthplace of the Beatles.
Theme: top Adju: adv Marked	Rheme

79.

Over thirty years ago,	they burst into the consciousness of the world in a way no other group had done before, captivating young people everywhere.
Theme: top Adju: Prep Phr Marked	Rheme

80.

Today	guided tours around the Beatles' old haunts are an essential part of any fan's itinerary, taking in the homes and birthplaces, schools and early meeting places.
Theme: top Adju: adv Marked	Rheme

81.

The wrought iron gates of Strawberry Fields and the 'shelter in the middles of the roundabout' in Penny Lane	are particularly popular as is the excellent 'Beatles Story' at the Albert Dock.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

**Sport**

82.

It is said	that sport is a religion in Liverpool.
Theme: top $\beta$ Themd Comnt Marked	Rheme

83.

In particular,	football	dominates conversation.
int Adju: Modal	top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

84.

Liverpool Football Club	is the most successful in Britain and a tour around their ground is obligatory for those interested in football.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

85.

Everton FC	have been somewhat overshadowed by their close neighbour in recent years although few other clubs can match their record of league title and cup wins.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

86.

Over 150 years ago,	a steeplechase took place over an arduous four mile course.
Theme: top Adju: Prep Phr Marked	Rheme

87.

Later called the grand National,	the race has held centre stage in the racing calendar.
Theme: top $\beta$ NFT CI marked	Rheme

88.

No other sporting event	attracts such nationwide attention as the large field of horses and riders tackle a course of unrelenting severity.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

89.

The city	has a fine reputation for other sports including rugby union, boxing, cycling and athletics.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

90a

The City Council	has been active in providing top quality facilities
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

90b

and	these	are ensuring that Liverpool's sporting traditions continue to develop.
text Conj: cord	top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

Theme

**The pool of Life**

91.

If Liverpool did not exist,	it would have to be invented' commented one favourably impressed visitor at the turn of the century.
Theme: top $\beta$ If-clause Marked	Rheme

92.

What other city	can offer such magnificent architecture, so many great galleries and museums and such a diversity of activities?
Theme: top Wh/Adju: Subj Unmarked	Rheme

93.

Liverpool	is a remarkable city with a vibrancy and enthusiasm that never fails to impress.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

94.

In the words of the great psychologist, Carl Jung,	'Liverpool is the Pool of Life'.
Theme: top Adju: Prep Phr Marked	Rheme

## APPENDIX E10

<b>Theme Analysis of Text 10 about Liverpool</b>
--

1a

There	was a settlement here, on the north bank of the River Mersey, as early as the first century AD,
Theme: top Subj Unmarked	Rheme

1b

and	this	had grown into a sizable fishing village by the time King John granted its charter in 1207.
text Conj: cord	top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

2a

Trade with the West Indies	encouraged the port's development,
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

2b

but	the emergence of modern Liverpool	really began with the introduction of steamships in the middle of the 19th century,
text Conj: cord	top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

2c

and	today	the seven-mile-long dock is one of the finest in the world, although trade has sadly declined over recent years.
text Conj: cord	top Adju: adv Marked	Rheme
Theme		

3.

The city	has two cathedrals, both built this century-the Gothic-style Anglican, begun in 1904, and the strikingly different Roman Catholic one, with its stained glass tower and central altar, which was consecrated in 1967.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

4a

The Walker Art gallery	has an outstanding collection of European paintings
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

4b

and	the Sudley Art Gallery	concentrates on British paintings.
text Conj: cord	top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

5.

Housed in restored 19th century quays on the waterfront	is the Merseyside Maritime Museum, which has a fine collection of full-size craft.
Theme: top $\beta$ NFT CI Marked	Rheme

6.

The City Library	is one of the country's largest reference libraries, with over 2,000,000 books.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

7a

The university	is growing in both size and reputation,
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

7b

and	the Royal Liverpool Philharmonic orchestra	is famous.
text Conj: cord	top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

8a

Aintree Racecourse	is the scene of the Grand National each spring,	
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme	

8b

and	both "Everton and Liverpool with Birkenhead,	are football teams of note.
text Conj: cord	top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

9.

Two tunnels beneath the Mersey	join Liverpool with Birkenhead, which stands on the opposite bank.	
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme	

10.

The city	is said to be named after the legendary 'Liver' birds that overlook the dock from the towers of the Liver Building'.	
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme	

## **Appendices to Liverpool: F1-F10**

### **Analysis of Topical Themes and Transitivity**



## APPENDIX F1

<b>Analysis of Topical Themes and Transitivity in Text 1 about Liverpool</b>
--

No	Domain	Topic	Sub-topic		Transitivity	Inter
			Marked	Unmarked		
1a	Reader	visitor	2nd prsn		Circumstance	✓
1b	Space	place		location	Carrier	
2a	Space	place		location	Actor	
2b	Space	place		location	Carrier	
3a	Space	DFP		people	Carrier	
3b	Reader	visitor	PRAL		Circumstance	✓
4a	Space			Exist There	Existent	
4b	Space	place		location	Carrier	
5	Space	services	travel		Circumstance	
6	Space	place		location	Carrier	
7	Space	DFP		recreation	Actor	
8a	Space	DFP		recreation	Actor	
8b	Space			Exist There	Existent	
9	Space	DFP		recreation	Carrier	
10a	Space	place		location	Carrier	
10b	Space	place		location	Carrier	
11	Space			Exist There	Existent	
12	Space	place	location		Attribute	
13	Space			Exist There	Existent	
14	Space	place		location	Carrier	
15	Space	place		location	Identified	
16a	Reader	visitor		regulations	Carrier	
16b	Reader	visitor		act	Actor	✓
16c	Reader	visitor		2nd prsn	Actor	✓
17a	Space	place		location	Carrier	
17b	Space	space		location	Goal	
17c	Space	[place]		[location]	[Actor]	
18a	Space	place		location	Identified	
18b	Space	place		location	Identified	
19a	Space	DFP		culture	Carrier	
19b	Space	[DFP]		[culture]	[Actor]	
20	Space	DFP		culture	Identified	
21	Space	place		location	Carrier	
22a	Reader	visitor		2nd prsn	Actor	✓
22b	Reader	[visitor]		[2nd prsn]	[Sayer]	✓
23	Space	services		travel	Carrier	
24	Space	services		travel	Carrier	

25	Space	place	location		Attribute	
26	Space	place		location	Carrier	
27a	Space	place		location	Carrier	
27b	Reader	visitor		3rd prsn	Beneficiary	✓
28	Space	place		location	Carrier	
29	Space	place		location	Actor	
30a	Space			Exist There	Existent	
30b	Space	place	location		Attribute	
31	Reader	visitor		2nd prsn	Target	✓
32a	Space	DFP		recreation	Carrier	
32b	Space	DFP		recreation	Carrier	
32c	Space	DFP		recreation	Carrier	
33a	Space	place		location	Carrier	
33b	Space			Exist There	Existent	
34a	Space	place		location	Identified	
34b	Space	place		location	Carrier	
35	Space	place		location	Carrier	
36	Space	place	attributive		Attribute	
37a	Space	services		travel	Actor	
37b	Reader	visitor		PRAL	Process	✓
38	Space	services		recreation	Actor	
39a	Space	place		location	Carrier	
39b	Reader	visitor		2nd prsn	Senser	✓
40a	Reader	visitor		regulations	Carrier	✓
40b	Space			Exist There	Existent	
41	Space	place		location	Carrier	
42	Space	place		location	Carrier	
43	Space	place		location	Carrier	
44	Space	place		location	Carrier	
45a	Space	place		location	Carrier	
45b	Space	DFP		nature	Carrier	
45c	Reader	visitor		PRAL	Process	✓
46	Reader	visitor		act	Carrier	✓
47	Space	place		location	Carrier	
48	Space	DFP		nature	Carrier	
49a	Space	place		location	Carrier	
49b	Space	services		travel	Carrier	

## APPENDIX F2

**Analysis of Topical Themes and Transitivity in Text 2 about  
Liverpool**

No	Domain	Topic	Sub-topic		Transitivity	Inter
			Marked	Unmarked		
1	Space	place		location	Carrier	
2a	Space	place		location	Existent	
2b	Space	place		location	Actor	
3a	Space	place		location	Actor	
3b	Space	[place]		[location]	[Beneficiary]	
4a	Time	history	temporal		Circumstance	
4b	Space	[place]		[location]	[Carrier]	
5	Time	history	temporal		Circumstance	
6a	Space	place		location	Carrier	
6b	Space	[place]		[location]	[Identified]	
7	Space	place		location	Identified	
8	Space	[place]		[location]	[Carrier]	
9a	Space	place		location	Carrier	
9b	Space	[place]		[location]	[Carrier]	
10a	Space	place		location	Carrier	
10b	Space	place		location	Carrier	
11a	Space	place		location	Goal	
11b	Space	[place]		location	[Carrier]	
12	Space	place	attributive		Attribute	
13	Space	DFP		culture	Carrier	
14a	Space	DFP		FP	Senser	
14b	Space	place		location	Identified	
15a	Space	place		location	Carrier	
15b	Space	[place]		[location]	[Carrier]	
16	Space	place		location	Goal	
17	Space	DFP		FP	Actor	
18	Space	place		location	Carrier	
19a	Space	place		location	Goal	
19b	Space	[place]		[location]	[Carrier]	
20	Space	place		location	Phenomenon	
21	Space	DFP		FP	Goal	
22a	Space	place		location	Carrier	
22b	Space	[place]		[location]	[Goal]	
23	Space	place		location	Carrier	
24a	Space	place		location	Carrier	
24b	Space	[place]		[location]	[Carrier]	
25	Space	place		location	[Carrier]	

## APPENDIX F3

<b>Analysis of Topical Themes and Transitivity in Text 3 about Liverpool</b>
--

No	Domain	Topic	Sub-topic		Transitivity	Inter
			Marked	Unmarked		
1	Space	place		location	Carrier	
2	Space	place		location	Carrier	
3a	Time	history	temporal		Circumstance	
3b	Time	history	temporal		Circumstance	
3c	Space	[place]		[location]	[Carrier]	
4a	Time	history		event	Actor	
4b	Space	place	location		Circumstance	
5	Space	place		location	Actor	
6	Space	place		location	Carrier	
7	Space	place		location	[Carrier]	
8	Space	place		location	Carrier	
9	Space	place		location	Goal	
10a	Time	history	temporal		Circumstance	
10b	Space	place		location	Goal	
11	space	DFP	culture		Circumstance	
12	Time	history	temporal		Circumstance	
13	Space	place		location	Identified	
14	Writer	comment	view point		Themd Comnt	*
15	Space	place	attributive		Circumstance	
16	Space	place		location	Goal	
17	Space	place		location	Carrier	
18	Space	DFP		culture	Carrier	
19a	Space	DFP		culture	Carrier	
19b	Space			Exist There	Existent	
20a	Space	place		location	Goal	
20b	Space	DFP		culture	Identified	
21	Space	DFP		culture	Actor	
22	Space	place	attributive		Attribute	
23.	Space	place	location		Attribute	
24	Space	place		location	Carrier	
25a	Space	DFP		FP	Actor	
25b	Space	[DFP]		[FP]	[Actor]	
26a	Space	place		location	Identified	
26b	Space	DFP		FP	Actor	
27	Space	place		location	Carrier	
28a	Space	place		location	Carrier	
28b	Space	place		location	Carrier	
28c	Space	[place]		[location]	[Goal]	

29	Space			Exist There	Existent	
30	Space	place		location	Identified	
31a	Space	place		location	Goal	
31b	Space	[place]		[location]	[Goal]	
32	Space	place	location		Circumstance	
33a	Space	place		location	Carrier	
33b	Space	place	location		Attribute	
34	Space	place		location	Goal	
35a	Time	history	temporal		Circumstance	
35b	Space	[place]		[location]	[Goal]	
36	Space	place		location	Goal	
37a	Space	place		location	Goal	
37b	Space	place		location	Goal	
38	Space	place	location		Circumstance	
39	Space	place		location	Goal	
40a	Space	place		location	Carrier	
40b	Space			Exist There	Existent	

## APPENDIX F4

<b>Analysis of Topical Themes and Transitivity in Text 4 about Liverpool</b>
--

No	Domain	Topic	Sub-topic		Transitivity	Inter
			Marked	Unmarked		
1	Space	place		location	Goal	
2	Time	history	temporal		Circumstance	
3a	Time	history		event	Carrier	
3b	Time	history	temporal		Circumstance	
4	Space	RB		RB	Goal	
5	Space	DFP		people	Actor	
6	Space	place		location	Actor	
7a	Space			Exist There	Existent	
7b	Reader	visitor		act	Goal	✓
8	Space	place	attributive		Attribute	
9	Space	place		location	Carrier	
10	Space	place	location		Attribute	
11	Space	place		location	Goal	
12	Space	place		location	Actor	
13	Space	place		location	Carrier	
14	Space	place		location	Goal	
15a	Space	place		location	Goal	
15b	Space	DFP		culture	Goal	
16a	Space	place		location	Carrier	
16b	Space			Exist There	Existent	
17a	Space	place		location	Goal	
17b	Space	[place]		[location]	[Goal]	
18	Space	DFP		culture	Goal	
19a	Space	place		location	Goal	
19b	Time	history		event	Actor	
20	Space	place		location	Carrier	
21	Space	place		location	Carrier	
22	Space	DFP		recreation	Actor	
23a	Space	place		location	Actor	
23b	Space	place		location	Carrier	
24	Space	DFP		people	Actor	
25	Space	place		location	Carrier	
26	Space	place		location	Identified	
27	Space	place		location	Carrier	
28	Space	place		location	Identified	
29	Space	place		location	Carrier	
30a	Space	place		location	Goal	
30b	Time	CS	temporal		Circumstance	

## APPENDIX F5

<b>Analysis of Topical Themes and Transitivity in Text 5 about Liverpool</b>
--

No	Domain	Topic	Sub-topic		Transitivity	Inter
			Marked	Unmarked		
1	Space			Exist There	Existent	
2a	Time	history	temporal		Circumstance	
2b	Time	history	temporal		Circumstance	
3	Time	history		event	Actor	
4	Time	history		event	Actor	
5	Space	place		location	Carrier	
6a	Space	RB		RB	Actor	
6b	Space	RB		RB	Actor	
7a	Space	DFP		people	Actor	
7b	Time	history	temporal		Circumstance	
8a	Time	CS	temporal		Circumstance	
8b	Space	place		location	Identified	
9a	Space	place		location	Carrier	
9b	Space	[place]		[location]	[Carrier]	
10a	Space	place		location	Carrier	
10b	Space	[place]		[location]	[Carrier]	
11	Space	place		location	Goal	
12a	Space	place		location	Goal	
12b	Space	place	attributive		Circumstance	
13	Space	place	location		Attribute	
14	Space	DFP		FP	Actor	
15	Space	place		location	Carrier	
16	Time	history		event	Carrier	
17	Time	history		event	Actor	
18	Space	place		location	Goal	
19	Space	place		location	Carrier	
20a	Space	place		location	Carrier	
20b	Space	[place]		location	[Goal]	
21	Space	place		location	Goal	
22a	Space	place		FP	Actor	
22b	Space	place		location	Goal	
23	Space	place		location	Identified	
24	Space	place		location	Identified	
25	Space	place		location	Carrier	
26	Space	place		location	Carrier	
27	Space	place		location	Goal	
28	Space	place		location	Goal	
29a	Space	DFP		culture	Goal	

29b	Space	DFP		culture	Carrier	
30	Space	DFP		culture	Goal	
31a	Space	DFP		culture	Carrier	
31b	Space	[DFP]		[culture]	[Carrier]	
31c	Space	[DFP]		[culture]	[Carrier]	
32	Space	DFP		FP	Actor	
33	Space	DFP	culture		Identified	
34	Space	DFP		culture	Carrier	
35	Space	place	attributive		Attribute	
36	Space	place		location	Circumstance	
37a	Space	place		location	Actor	
37b	Space	place	location		Attribute	
38	Space	place	location		Attribute	
39	Space	place		location	Goal	
40	Space	place		location	Goal	
41a	Space	place		location	Goal	
41b	Space	[place]		[location]	Carrier	
42	Space	place	location		Attribute	
43	Space	DFP		culture	Carrier	
44	Space	place		location	Carrier	
45	Space	place		location	Goal	
46a	Space	place		location	Carrier	
46b	Space	[place]		[location]	[Carrier]	
47	Time	history	temporal		Circumstance	
48a	Space	place		location	Carrier	
48b	Space	[place]		[location]	[Carrier]	
49	Space	place		location	Goal	



## APPENDIX F6

<b>Analysis of Topical Themes and Transitivity in Text 6 about Liverpool</b>
--

No	Domains	Topic	Sub-topic		Transitivity	Inter
			Marked	Unmarked		
1a	Space	place		location	Identified	
1b	Space	place	attributive		Circumstance	
2	Time	history		event	Carrier	
3	Time	history	temporal		Circumstance	
4	Space	place		location	Carrier	
5a	Space	DFP		NTF	Carrier	
5b	Space	DFP		NTF	Actor	
6a	Time	history	temporal		Circumstance	
6b	Time	history	temporal		Circumstance	
7	Time	history	temporal		Circumstance	
8a	Space	place		location	Actor	
8b	Space	[place]		[location]	[Carrier]	
9	Space			Exist There	Existent	
10	Space	place		NTF	Actor	
11	Space	place	location		Circumstance	
12	Space			Exist There	Existent	
13	Time	history	event		Circumstance	
14	Space	DFP		culture	Actor	
15a	Space	services		travel	Actor	
15b	Space	services		travel	Carrier	
16	Space	services		travel	Carrier	
17	Space			Exist There	Existent	
18	Space	services		travel	Carrier	
19	Space			Exist There	Existent	
20	Space			Exist There	Existent	
21	Space	services		travel	Identified	
22a	Reader	visitor	PRAL		Circumstance	✓
22b	Space	services		travel	Carrier	
23	Space	services		travel	Identified	
24	Space			Exist There	Existent	
25	Space	services		travel	Carrier	
26a	Space	services		travel	Actor	
26b	Space	services		travel	Actor	
26c	Reader	visitor		2nd prsn	Actor	✓
27	Space			Exist There	Existent	
28	Space	services		travel	Carrier	
29	Space	services	travel		Carrier	
30a	Space	place		location	Carrier	

30b	Space	place		location	Carrier	
31	Reader	visitor		PRAL	Process	✓
32	Reader	visitor		PRAL	Process	✓
33a	Space	place		location	Carrier	
33b	Space	place		location	Carrier	
34	Space	services		travel	Carrier	
35	Space	services		travel	Carrier	
36a	Space	services		travel	Actor	
36b	Space	[services]		travel	[Carrier]	
37a	Space	services		travel	Carrier	
37b	Space	services		travel	Actor	
37c	Space	[services]		[travel]	[Actor]	
37d	Space	[services]		[travel]	[Actor]	
37e	Space	[services]		[travel]	[Actor]	
38	Space	services		travel	Carrier	
39	Space	services		travel	Actor	
40	Space	place	location		Circumstance	
41	Space	services		travel	Actor	
42a	Reader	visitor		act	Carrier	✓
42b	Space	DFP		NTF	Actor	✓
42c	Reader	visitor		PRAL	[process]	✓
43	Reader	visitor	PRAL		Circumstance	✓
44a	Space	services	travel		Carrier	
44b	Space	services	travel		Carrier	
45	Space	services		travel	Actor	
46	Space	place		location	Carrier	
47	Space	place		location	Carrier	
48a	Space	place		location	Carrier	
48b	Space	place		location	Carrier	
49	Space	place		location	Carrier	
50a	Space			Exist There	Existent	
50b	Space			Exist There	Existent	
51	Space	place	location		Circumstance	
52a	Space	place		location	Carrier	
52b	Space	place		location	Carrier	
53a	Space	place	location		Attribute	
53b	Space	place	location		Attribute	
54a	Space	place		location	Carrier	
54b	Space	place		location	Goal	
55	Space	place	location		Attribute	
56	Space	place	location		Attribute	
57	Space	place	location		Attribute	
58	Space	DFP		people	Actor	
59	Space	place		location	Carrier	
60	Space	services		subsistence	Carrier	
61a	Space	services		subsistence	Target	

61b	Space	services		subsistence	Carrier	
61c	Space	services		subsistence	Carrier	
61d	Space	services		subsistence	[Carrier]	
62	Space	services		subsistence	Carrier	
63	Space			Exist There	Existent	
64	Space	services		subsistence	Carrier	
65	Reader	visitor	act		Circumstance	✓
66	Reader	visitor	act		Circumstance	✓
67	Space	services		subsistence	Carrier	✓
68a	Space	place		location	Carrier	
68b	Space	place		location	Identified	
69a	Space	place		location	Carrier	
69b	Space	place	attributive		Attribute	
70	Reader	visitor		act	Identified	✓
71	Space	place		location	Actor	
72	Space			Exist There	Existent	
73	Space	place		location	Identified	
74	Time	CS	temporal		Circumstance	
75	Time	CS	temporal		Circumstance	
76	Space			Exist There	Existent	
77	Space	place		location	Carrier	
78a	Writer	comment		viewpoint	Themd Comnt	
78b	Space	place		location	Carrier	
79	Space	place	location		Attribute	
80	Space	place		location	Carrier	
81	Space	place		location	Carrier	
82	Space	DFP		culture	Carrier	
83	Reader	visitor		3rd prsn	Actor	✓
84	Space	place		location	Goal	
85	Space	place		location	Carrier	
86	Time	CFP	temporal		Circumstance	
87	Space	place		location	Carrier	
88	Space	place		location	Identified	
89	Space	place		location	Carrier	
90	Space	place		location	Carrier	
91	Space	place		location	Carrier	
92	Space	place		location	Identified	
93	Space	place		location	Carrier	
94	Space	place		location	Goal	
95	Space	place	location		Carrier	
96	Space	place	location		Identified	
97	Space	place	location		Carrier	
98	Space	place	location		Goal	
99	Space	place	location		Identified	
100	Space	place	location		Carrier	
101	Space	place		location	Carrier	

102a	Space	place	location		Circumstance	
102b	Space	DFP		recreation	Goal	
102c	Space	DFP		recreation	Identified	
103	Space	DFP		recreation	Identified	
104	Time	CS	temporal		Circumstance	
105	Space	DFP		recreation	Actor	
106a	Space	DFP		recreation	Actor	
106b	Space	DFP		recreation	Actor	
107a	Space	DFP		recreation	Carrier	
107b	Space	services		recreation	Sayer	
108	Space	services		subsistence	Carrier	
109	Space	DFP		recreation	Identified	
110	Space	DFP		recreation	Carrier	
111	Space	DFP		recreation	Identified	
112	Space	place	location		Circumstance	
113	Space	DFP		recreation	Carrier	
114	Space	DFP		recreation	Carrier	
115	Space	DFP		recreation	Carrier	
116	Space	DFP		recreation	Carrier	
117	Space	DFP		recreation	Carrier	
118	Space	DFP		recreation	Carrier	

## APPENDIX F7

<b>Analysis of Topical Themes and Transitivity in Text 7 about Liverpool</b>
--

No	Domain	Topic	Sub-topic		Transitivity	Inter
			Marked	Unmarked		
1	Space			Exist There	Existent	
2	Writer	comment	viewpoint		Circumstance	*
3	Reader	visitor	PRAL		Circumstance	✓
4	Space	services		travel	Identified	✓
5	Reader	visitor		2nd prsn	Actor	✓
6	Space			Exist There	Existent	
7	Space	services		travel	Attribute	
8	Reader	visitor	PRAL		Circumstance	✓
9	Space	services	travel		Circumstance	
10	Space			Exist There	Existent	
11	Space			Exist There	Existent	
12	Reader	visitor	PRAL		Circumstance	✓
13	Reader	visitor	PRAL		Circumstance	✓
14	Space	services	travel		Circumstance	
15	Space	services		travel	Actor	
16	Reader	visitor	PRAL		Circumstance	✓
17	Space			Exist There	Existent	
18	Space			Exist There	Existent	
19	Space			Exist There	Existent	
20	Space	DFP		recreation	Identified	
21	Space	DFP		recreation	Actor	
22	Time	history	temporal		Circumstance	
23	Space	DFP		recreation	Actor	
24	Space	DFP		recreation	Actor	
25	Space	DFP		recreation	Identified	
26	Space	DFP		recreation	Actor	
27	Space	DFP		recreation	Phenomenon	
28a	Space	DFP		recreation	Actor	
28b	Space	[DFP]		[recreation]	[Carrier]	
29	Time	CS	temporal		Circumstance	
30	Time	CS	temporal		Circumstance	
31	Time	CFP	event		Circumstance	
32	Time	history	temporal		Circumstance	
33	Time	CFP	event		Circumstance	
34	Space	place		location	Identified	
35	Space	place		location	Goal	
36	Time	history	temporal		Circumstance	
37a	Time	history	temporal		Circumstance	

37b	Time	history	temporal		Circumstance	
38	Time	history	temporal		Circumstance	
39	Time	history	temporal		Goal	
40	Time	CS	temporal		Circumstance	
41	Space	DFP		recreation	Carrier	
42	Space	place		location	Carrier	
43	Space	place		location	Carrier	
44	Space	place		location	Carrier	
45	Reader	visitor		3rd prsn	Senser	✓
46	Space	place		location	Identified	
47	Time	history	temporal		Circumstance	
48	Space	place		location	Carrier	
49	Space	place		location	Sayer	
50	Time	history	temporal		Circumstance	
51a	Space	place		location	Senser	
51b	Time	history		event	Identified	
52	Space	DFP		culture	Carrier	
53	Space	place		culture	Carrier	
54	Space			Exist There	Existent	
55	Space	DFP		culture	Carrier	
56	Reader	visitor		3rd prsn	Actor	✓
57	Writer	comment	viewpoint		Identified	*
58	Space	place	location		Attribute	
59a	Space	place		location	Carrier	
59b	Space	DFP		culture	Carrier	
60	Reader	visitor		2nd prsn	Behaver	✓
61	Space	DFP		recreation	Carrier	
62	Reader	visitor	PRAL		Circumstance	✓
63	Space	DFP		culture	Carrier	
64	Space			Exist There	Existent	
65	Reader	visitor	PRAL		Circumstance	✓
66	Space	DFP		culture	Goal	
67	Space	DFP		people	Carrier	
68a	Reader	visitor		PRAL	Process	✓
68b	Reader	visitor		PRAL	Process	✓
69	Space	DFP		recreation	Carrier	
70	Reader	visitor		act	Goal	
71a	Reader	visitor		2nd prsn	Senser	✓
71b	Reader	visitor		PRAL	Process	✓
72	Reader	visitor	PRAL		Circumstance	✓
73	Space	place	location		Attribute	
74	Space	DFP		culture	Actor	
75	Reader	visitor		2nd prsn	[Senser]	✓
76a	Reader	[visitor]		[2nd prsn]	[Actor]	✓
76b	Reader	visitor		2nd prsn	Actor	✓
77	Space	DFP		FP	Actor	

78a	Reader	visitor		3rd prsn	Actor	✓
78b	Time	CS	temporal		Circumstance	
79	Space	place	location		Circumstance	
80	Time	CS	temporal		Circumstance	
81a	Writer	comment	viewpoint		Circumstance	✓
81b	Space	DFP		culture	Carrier	
82a	Writer	comment	viewpoint		Themd Comnt	*
82b	Space	DFP		culture	Actor	
83	Reader	visitor	PRAL		Circumstance	✓
84	Reader	visitor	2nd prsn		Circumstance	✓
85a	Reader	visitor		PRAL	Process	✓
85b	Space	place	location		Attribute	
86a	Space	place		location	Goal	
86b	Space	[place]		[location]	[Carrier]	
87a	Space	place		location	Goal	
87b	Space	DFP		culture	Identified	
88	Space	place	attributive		Attribute	
89a	Space	place		location	Carrier	
89b	Reader	visitor		act	Carrier	✓
90	Space	place		location	Carrier	
91	Space	place	location		Attribute	
92	Space	place		location	Identified	
93	Space	place		location	Carrier	
94	Space	place		location	Actor	
95	Reader	visitor	1st prsn		Circumstance	✓
96	Reader	visitor		act	Actor	✓
97a	Reader	visitor		PRAL	Process	✓
97b	Reader	visitor		PRAL	Process	✓
98	Space	place	attributive		Circumstance	
99	Space	DFP		recreation	Goal	
100a	Space	place	attributive		Circumstance	
100b	Space	[DFP]		[recreation]	[Phenomenon]	
101a	Space	DFP		recreation	Actor	
101b	Space	DFP		recreation	Actor	
102	Space	place		location	Goal	
103	Space	place		location	Goal	
104	Space	DFP		people	Sayer	
105a	Reader	visitor		3rd prsn	Carrier	✓
105b	Reader	visitor		3rd prsn	Actor	✓
106	Reader	visitor		3rd prsn	Actor	✓
107a	Writer	comment	viewpoint		Themd Comnt	*
107b	Reader	visitor		3rd prsn	Actor	✓
108	Space	place		temporal	Goal	
109	Space	place		location	Carrier	
110	Space	DFP		recreation	Carrier	
111	Time	CFP		event	Carrier	

112a	Space	place		location	Carrier	
112b	Writer	comment	viewpoint		Themd Comnt	
113	Reader	visitor	PRAL		Circumstance	✓
114	Reader	visitor		2nd prsn	Actor	✓
115	Reader	visitor	PRAL		Circumstance	✓
116a	Reader	visitor		PRAL	[Process ]	✓
116b	Reader	visitor		act	Actor	✓
117	Reader	visitor		PRAL	Process	✓
118	Reader	visitor	PRAL		Circumstance	✓
119	Space	DFP		culture	Actor	
120a	Space	DFP		recreation	Target	
120b	Space	[DFP]		[recreation]	[Carrier]	
121a	Time	CS	temporal		Circumstance	
121b	Reader	visitor	1st prsn		Actor	✓
122	Space	DFP		recreation	Actor	✓
123	Time	CS	temporal		Circumstance	
124a	Reader	visitor	PRAL		Circumstance	✓
124b	Reader	visitor		PRAL	Process	✓
125	Space	place		location	Identified	
126	Space	place	location		Circumstance	
127	Reader	visitor		PRAL	Process	✓
128	Space	services		travel	Actor	
129	Space	place	location		Attribute	



## APPENDIX F8

<b>Analysis of Topical Themes and Transitivity in Text 8 about Liverpool</b>
--

No	Domain	Topic	Sub-topic		Transitivity	Inter
			Marked	Unmarked		
1	Space	place		location	Carrier	
2	Time	history	temporal		Circumstance	
3	Time	history	temporal		Circumstance	
4	Time	history	temporal		Circumstance	
5a	Space	place		location	Goal	
5b	Space	place		location	Goal	
5c	Space	DFP		people	Actor	
6	Time	history	temporal		Circumstance	
7	Time	history	temporal		Circumstance	
8	Time	history		event	Carrier	
9	Time	history	temporal		Circumstance	
10	Space	DFP		people	Actor	
11	Space	DFP		NTF	Goal	
12	Writer	comment	viewpoint		Themd Comnt	*
13	Space	DFP		recreation	Goal	
14a	Space	DFP		recreation	Carrier	
14b	Writer	comment		viewpoint	Sayer	
15	Space	place		location	Actor	
16	Space	place		location	Identified	
17	Reader	visitor		3rd prsn	Carrier	✓
18	Space			Exist There	Existent	
19	Space	place		location	Carrier	
20	Space	place		location	Carrier	
21	Space	DFP		culture	Carrier	
22	Space	place		location	Carrier	
23	Space	place	attributive		Circumstance	
24	Space	place		location	Actor	
25a	Space	place	attributive		Circumstance	
25b	Space	place		location	Actor	
26	Space	place		location	Carrier	
27	Space	DFP	NTF		Circumstance	
28	Space	place	location		Circumstance	
29	Space	place	location		Circumstance	
30	Space	place	location		Attribute	
31	Space	DFP		NTF	Actor	
32	Space	place		location	Carrier	
33	Space	place	attributive		Circumstance	
34	Space	place	attributive		Circumstance	

35	Space	place		location	Carrier	
36	Space	place	location		Attribute	
37	Space	place		location	Actor	
38	Time	CS	temporal		Circumstance	
39	Space	place		location	Identified	
40	Space	DFP		culture	Actor	
41	Time	history	temporal		Circumstance	
42	Space	DFP		culture	Carrier	
43	Space	DFP		culture	Carrier	
44a	Space	place		location	Carrier	
44b	Space	place		location	Carrier	
45a	Space	place	attributive		Circumstance	
45b	Space	[place]		[location]	[Senser]	
46	Space	place	location		Attribute	
47	Space	place		location	Actor	
48	Space	place		location	Goal	
49	Space	DFP		culture	Identified	
50	Space	RB		RB	Goal	
51	Space	DFP		FP	Identified	
52	Space	place	location		Circumstance	
53	Space	place	attributive		Circumstance	
54	Space	place	location		Attribute	
55	Space	place		location	Carrier	
56	Space	DFP		FP	Actor	
57a	Space	place		location	Carrier	
57b	Space	[place]		[location]	[Carrier]	
58a	Time	history		event	Actor	
58b	Time	[history]		[event]	[Actor]	
59	Space	place		location	Carrier	
60	Space	place		location	Identified	
61	Space	place		location	Carrier	
62	Space	place		location	Actor	
63	Space	place	location		Attribute	
64a	Space	place		location	Carrier	
64b	Reader	visitor		2nd prsn	Actor	✓
65	Space	[place]		[location]	[Carrier]	
66	Reader	visitor		act	Goal	✓
67	Space	DFP		recreation	Identified	
68	Space	place		location	Actor	
69a	Space	place		location	Carrier	
69b	Space	[place]		[location]	[Carrier]	
70	Space	place		location	Carrier	
71	Space	place		location	Actor	
72	Space	place		location	Carrier	
73a	Reader	visitor		3rd prsn	Senser	✓
73b	Reader	visitor		3rd prsn	Actor	✓

74	Space	place	location		Circumstance	
75	Space	place	location		Attribute	
76	Space	place		location	Identified	
77	Space	place		location	Carrier	
78	Space	place		location	Identified	
79	Space	DFP		NTF	Goal	
80	Space	DFP		NTF	Carrier	
81	Space	DFP		NTF	Phenomenon	
82	Time	CS	temporal		Circumstance	
83	Reader	visitor		act	Goal	✓
84	Space	place		location	Actor	
85	Time	history	temporal		Circumstance	
86a	Space	[place]		[location]	Carrier	
86b	Space	[place]		[location]	[Carrier]	
87a	Space	place		location	Carrier	
87b	Space			Exist There	Existent	
88	Space	DFP		NTF	Carrier	
89	Space	DFP		NTF	Goal	
90a	Space	DFP		NTF	Actor	
90b	Space	DFP		people	Actor	
91a	Space	DFP		NTF	Identified	
91b	Space	[DFP]		[NTF]	[Carrier]	
92a	Space	DFP		NTF	Carrier	
92b	Space	DFP	NTF		Circumstance	
93a	Space	DFP		NTF	Identified	
93b	Space			Exist There	Existent	
94a	Space	place		location	Identified	
94b	Space	[place]		[location]	[Carrier]	
95	Space	place		location	Actor	
96a	Space	place		event	Carrier	
96b	Space	place		location	Carrier	
97	Space	place		location	Goal	
98	Space	place		location	Carrier	
99	Space	[place]		[location]	[Carrier]	
100a	Space	place		location	Actor	
100b	Space	[place]		[location]	[Actor]	
101	Reader	visitor		3rd prsn	beneficiary	✓
102a	Space	services		subsistence	Goal	
102b	Space	services		subsistence	Actor	
103	Space	services		subsistence	Carrier	
104a	Space	services		subsistence	Carrier	
104b	Space			Exist There	Existent	

## APPENDIX F9

<b>Analysis of Topical Themes and Transitivity in Text 9 about Liverpool</b>
--

No	Domain	Topic	Sub-topic		Transitivity	Inter
			Marked	Unmarked		
1a	Space	DFP		culture	Carrier	
1b	Reader	visitor		act	Identified	✓
2a	Time	history		event	Carrier	
2b	Reader	visitor		act	Carrier	✓
3	Reader	visitor	PRAL		Circumstance	✓
4	Space	place	attributive		Attribute	
5	Space	place	attributive		Attribute	
6	Space	place		location	Identified	
7	Space	place	attributive		Circumstance	
8	Space	place	attributive		Circumstance	
9	Space	place		location	Identified	
10	Space	place		location	Goal	
11	Space	DFP		FP	Actor	
12	Space	place		location	Actor	
13	space	place	attributive		Circumstance	
14	Time	history	event		Circumstance	
15	Time	history	temporal		Circumstance	
16	Space	place		location	Actor	
17	Space	place	attributive		Circumstance	
18	Space	place		location	Carrier	
19	Space	place	location		Attribute	
20	Space	place	location		Circumstance	
21	Time	history	event		Circumstance	
22	Reader	visitor		act	Actor	✓
23	Space	place	attributive		Attribute	
24	Space	place	location		Attribute	
25	Space	DFP		FP	Carrier	
26	Space	place	attributive		Circumstance	
27	Space	place	location		Attribute	
28	Time	history		event	Actor	
29	Space	place		location	Carrier	
30	Space	place		location	Identified	
31	Space	place	attributive		Attribute	
32	Space	DFP		people	Actor	
33a	Space	DFP		people	Actor	
33b	Space	place		location	Identified	
34	Time	history		event	Actor	

35a	Space	DFP		FP	Goal	
35b	Space	[DFP]		[FP]	[Carrier]	
36	Space	place		location	Identified	
37	Space	place		location	Actor	
38	Space	place		location	Carrier	✓
39	Space	place	location		Circumstance	
40	Space	place		location	Carrier	
41	Space	DFP		culture	Carrier	
42	Space	place		location	Carrier	
43	Space	[place]		[location]	[Carrier]	
44	Writer	comment	viewpoint		Themd Comnt	*
45	Space	place	location		Attribute	
46	Space	place		location	Carrier	
47	Space	place		location	Goal	
48	Space	place		location	Goal	
49	Space	place		location	Identified	
50	Space	place	attributive		Circumstance	
51	Space	place	location		Attribute	
52	Space	place	attributive		Circumstance	
53	Space	place		location	Carrier	
54	Space	place		location	Carrier	
55	Time	history	event		Circumstance	
56	Space	place		location	Identified	
57a	Time	CS	temporal		Circumstance	
57b	Space	place		location	Carrier	
57c	Space	[place]		[location]	[Actor]	
58	Space	place		location	Carrier	
59	Space	place		location	Carrier	
60a	Space	DFP		recreation	Carrier	
60b	Space	place	location		Attribute	
61	Space	place	attributive		Circumstance	
62	Space	place		location	Actor	
63	Space	place		location	Actor	
64	Space	place		location	Actor	
65	Space	DFP		FP	Carrier	
66	Time	CS	temporal		Circumstance	
67	Space	place		location	Carrier	
68a	Space	DFP		people	Actor	
68b	Space	place		location	Carrier	
69a	Space	place		location	Identified	
69b	Space	[place]		[location]	[Carrier]	
70	Space	place	attributive		Attribute	
71	Space	place		location	Carrier	
72	Space	place		location	Attribute	
73a	Space	place		location	Carrier	
73b	Space	[place]		[location]	[Carrier]	

74	Space	place		event	Carrier	
75	Space	place		event	Actor	
76a	Space	place		location	Carrier	
76b	Space	place		location	Goal	
77	Space	place	location		Circumstance	
78	Reader	visitor	3rd prsn		Circumstance	✓
79	Time	history	temporal		Circumstance	
80	Time	CS	temporal		Circumstance	
81	Space	place		location	Carrier	
82	Writer	comment	viewpoint		Themd Comnt	*
83	Space	DFP		recreation	Carrier	
84	Space	DFP		recreation	Identified	
85	Space	DFP		recreation	Goal	
86	Time	history	temporal		Circumstance	
87	Space	place	attributive		Circumstance	
88	Space	DFP		recreation	Actor	
89	Space	place		location	Carrier	
90a	Space	DFP		people	Carrier	
90b	Space	services		leisure	Sayer	
91	Space	place	location		Circumstance	
92	Space	place		location	Actor	✓
93	Space	place		location	Carrier	
94	Space	RB	RB		Circumstance	

## APPENDIX F10

<b>Analysis of Topical Themes and Transitivity in Text 10 about Liverpool</b>
---

No	Domain	Topic	Sub-topic		Transitivity	Inter
			Marked	Unmarked		
1a	Space			Exist There	Existent	
1b	Space	place		location	Actor	
2a	Time	history		event	Actor	
2b	Time	history		event	Actor	
2c	Time	CS	temporal		Circumstance	
3	Space	place		location	Carrier	
4a	Space	place		location	Carrier	
4b	Space	place		location	Senser	
5	Space	place	attributive		Attribute	
6	Space	place		location	Identified	
7a	Space	place		location	Actor	
7b	Space	DFP		recreation	Carrier	
8a	Space	place		location	Carrier	
8b	Space	DFP		recreation	Identified	
9	Space	place		location	Actor	
10	Space	place		location	Target	

## **Appendices to Biography Genre: G1-G3**

### **The Original Versions of Texts**



## APPENDIX G1

## Alfred Hitchcock

*Listening Contours* (2nd ed.). Rost, Michael. 1981. Tucson, Arizona: Lingual House Publishing Company

One of the most famous movie directors of all time was Alfred Hitchcock. Hitchcock is most famous for his mystery movies. When Alfred Hitchcock died in 1980, he had made over 50 complete movies.

Alfred Hitchcock was born in London in 1899. He was the youngest of three children. Hitchcock was a very shy boy and he went to very strict schools. Hitchcock studied to be an engineer, but he was always interested in movies. He used to go to the cinema as often as he could and he often read magazines about cinema. In his free time he also used to write stories that he wanted to make into movies.

Hitchcock gave up the idea of becoming an engineer when he got a small job with the *Famous Players*, which was a London movie company. Later he got a job as an assistant director with *Islington Studios*. Hitchcock, who got the nickname Hitch, often had some very clever ideas for filming movies, so later his employer gave him a chance to make a movie by himself. Hitch's first film - the first film that he directed - was called "The Pleasure Garden." This movie was made in 1920's, so of course it was a "silent movie." Movies at that time did not have sound.

Hitch made several other silent movies before he made the movie called "Blackmail." "Blackmail" was his first talking movie, and this movie was of course another mystery movie. Hitch had become famous for his mystery movies.

In 1939 Alfred Hitchcock moved to Los Angeles because Los Angeles was becoming the new center for film-making. The first movie that Hitch made in the U.S. was called

"Rebecca." The story of "Rebecca" came from a famous novel. In fact, Hitchcock got most of the stories for his movies from novels and plays. After reading a novel or play, Hitch would create the movie script by himself, and choose the actors and actresses, and also decide where and how to shoot each scene.

Hitchcock's movies are generally thought to be good movies because he did these things well: selecting of the story, writing of the script, selecting of the actors and actresses, and the creating of the scenes. Hitchcock used to do most of these jobs entirely by himself.

After the movie "Rebecca," Hitch made many more mystery movies in the United States. Some of his more famous movies are "Foreign Correspondent," "Strangers on a Train," "Suspicion," and "Psycho." The last movie that Hitchcock made was "Family Plot." This film was completed in 1976.

Alfred Hitchcock will probably always be remembered as one of the greatest movie directors of all time. He will be remembered for his complex mystery stories and for the number of good films that he directed.

In 1939 Alfred Hitchcock moved to Los Angeles because Los Angeles was becoming the new center for film-making. The first movie that Hitch made in the USA was called "Rebecca." The story of "Rebecca" came from a famous novel. In fact, Hitchcock got most of the stories for his movies from novels and plays. After reading a novel or play, Hitch would create the movie script by himself, and choose the actors and actresses, and also decide where and how to shoot each scene.

Hitchcock's movies are generally thought to be good movies because he did these things well: selecting of the story, writing of the script, selecting of the actors and actresses, and the creating of the scenes. Hitchcock used to do most of these jobs entirely by himself.

After the movie "Rebecca," Hitch made many more mystery movies in the United States. Some of his more famous movies are "Foreign Correspondent," "Strangers on a Train," "Suspicion," and "Psycho." The last movie that Hitchcock made was "Family Plot." This film was completed in 1976.

Alfred Hitchcock will probably always be remembered as one of the greatest movie directors of all time. He will be remembered for his complex mystery stories and for the number of good films that he directed.

**APPENDIX G2****Captain James Cook**

***English 6a Workbook: Teacher's Guide.* 1986. Academic Curriculum Unit. Dhahran, Saudi Arabia.**

Captain James Cook was an English seaman who lived in the eighteenth century. He was one of the world's greatest explorers. Between 1768 and 1779, he made three great voyages of exploration to the Pacific Ocean. The purpose of these voyages was to get information about lands already known and to discover new lands.

Captain Cook's first voyage began in August of 1768. On this voyage, he had only one ship with a crew of 94 seamen. He sailed south from England across the Atlantic Ocean and around the tip of South America. Then, he sailed west into the Pacific Ocean. Eventually, he discovered the large islands of New Zealand and drew maps of their coasts. Then, he continued west until he came to the east coast of Australia. He found this coast to be fertile, a fact which was not known in Europe at that time. He returned to England in July of 1771.

In the next year, Captain Cook began his second voyage of exploration. On this voyage, he had two ships and about 200 seamen. The purpose of this voyage was to try to discover if there was a continent other than Australia in the South Pacific. He sailed from England in July of 1772. When he reached the South *Pacific*, he turned directly south into the cold Antarctic Ocean. In this ocean, his ships were in great danger from icebergs. Cook sailed across much of the South Pacific. but he did not find a new continent. He did, however, visit and make maps of many islands in the South Pacific. He visited New Caledonia and the Cook Islands, which are named after him. He returned to England in July of 1775.

One year later, Captain Cook began his third voyage of exploration. Once again, he had two ships. However, he had fewer crewmen on this voyage. He had only 180 seamen.

The purpose of this voyage was to try to find a way from the Pacific Ocean to the Atlantic Ocean around the top of North America. He sailed from England in July of 1776. When he reached the Pacific, he visited Hawaii and New Zealand. Then, he sailed east toward the coast of North America. When he reached the coast of North America, he sailed directly north. He sailed north as far as he could go. Eventually, great walls of ice stood in his way, and he could go no further. Finally, he had to turn around and return to the Pacific. He sailed back to Hawaii where he died in February of 1779.

Captain Cook found and mapped many places that had never been visited before. Soon, many people were moving across the world to live in the places he discovered in the South Pacific. Captain Cook was one of the world's greatest explorers and seamen.

**APPENDIX G3****Dizzy Gillespie**

*Listening Contours* (2nd ed.).1981. Rost, Michael. Tucson, Arisona: Lingual House Publishing Company.

Dizzy Gillespie is perhaps one of the most famous jazz musicians in the world at the present time. He is popular not only with jazz fans, but also with other jazz musicians. In fact, among jazz musicians he is known as the "king of the Trumpet". He will probably always be remembered for his great influence on jazz music.

Dizzy Gillespie was born in 1917 in a small town in South Carolina, which is a state in the southern U.S. His father was an amateur musician who used to keep his band's instruments at the Gillespie house. Whenever he had a chance, Dizzy used to try to play some of the band's instruments. In fact, he experimented with all of them, but he preferred to play wind instruments such as the trumpet and the trombone. Dizzy always had strong lungs, so it was easy for him to play wind instruments. In a short time, Dizzy became very good at playing both the trumpet and the trombone. He never had a teacher or an actual lesson. By the time he was 13 years old, Dizzy became so good at the trumpet that he received a free scholarship to study at a big music institute.

Actually, Dizzy Gillespie's real name is John Birks Gillespie. He received the nickname "Dizzy" because he was always trying to act a little bit crazy in order to make other people laugh. "Dizzy" means a little bit unusual or crazy. Eventually, everybody began to call John "Dizzy."

Dizzy got his first important job as a musician in 1936. He played in a big band in Philadelphia. In 1937 he got the chance to play in a recording session. When the record became popular, Dizzy began to become recognized as a good musician. For the next few

years, Dizzy worked with a number of famous musicians such as Lionel Hampton, Charlie Parker, and Ella Fitzgerald.

In 1946 Dizzy started his own band and he has been a bandleader ever since that time. Dizzy's bands have been travelling all over the world for about 25 years. By his own estimate, Dizzy has travelled over a million miles with his bands. They have played in Africa, Europe, Asia, and South America.

Everywhere that he goes Dizzy Gillespie is welcomed by jazz fans. He has a friendly personality and he can still make people laugh and feel comfortable. Other musicians who have worked with Gillespie also have a lot of respect for him. They say that he is very patient and fair with the members of his band. He listens to their ideas and he seldom gets angry with them. Many band leaders do not like to work with new or young musicians, but Gillespie has always accepted young musicians into his band in order to teach them and in order to learn new styles from them too. Several famous modern jazz trumpeters such as Freddie Hubbard and Blue Mitchell started their musical careers with Dizzy Gillespie's band.

In his lifetime Gillespie recorded over 30 record albums. And he has appeared in front of millions of people, old and young. Perhaps Dizzy Gillespie will always be known as the "king of the Trumpet."

Dizzy got his first important job as a musician in 1936. He played in a big band in Philadelphia; In 1937 he got the chance to play in a recording session. When the record became popular, Dizzy began to become recognized as a good musician. For the next few years, Dizzy worked with a number of famous musicians such as Lionel Hampton, Charlie Parker, and Ella Fitzgerald.

In 1946 Dizzy started his own band and he has been a bandleader ever since that time. Dizzy's bands have been travelling all over the world for about 25 years. By his own

estimate, Dizzy has travelled over a million miles with his bands. They have played in Africa, Europe, Asia, and South America.

Everywhere that he goes Dizzy Gillespie is welcomed by jazz fans. He has a friendly personality and he can still make people laugh and feel comfortable. Other musicians who have worked with Gillespie also have a lot of respect for him. They say that he is very patient and fair with the members of his band. He listens to their ideas and he seldom gets angry with them. Many band leaders do not like to work with new or young musicians, but Gillespie has always accepted young musicians into his band in order to teach them and in order to learn new styles from them too. Several famous modern jazz trumpeters such as Freddie Hubbard and Blue Mitchell started their musical careers with Dizzy Gillespie's band.

In his lifetime Gillespie recorded over 30 record albums. And he has appeared in front of millions of people, old and young. Perhaps Dizzy Gillespie will always be known as the "king of the Trumpet."



## **Appendices to Biography Genre: H1-H3**

### **The Structural Analysis of Theme Types**

**APPENDIX H1**

<b>Alfred Hitchcock</b>
-------------------------

1.

One of the most famous movie directors of all time	was Alfred Hitchcock.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

2.

Hitchcock	is most famous for his mystery movies.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

3.

When Alfred Hitchcock died in 1980,	he had made over 50 complete movies.
Theme: top β DP CI Marked	Rheme

4.

Alfred Hitchcock	was born in London in 1899.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

5.

He	was the youngest of three children.
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

6a

Hitchcock	was a very shy boy
Theme: top Sub: NG Unmarked	Rheme

6b

and	he	went to very strict schools.
text Conj: cord	top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

7a

Hitchcock	studied to be an engineer,	
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme	

7b

but	he	was always interested in movies
text Conj: cord	top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

8a

He	used to go to the cinema as often as he could	
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme	

8b

and	he	often read magazines about cinema
text Conj: cord	top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

9.

In his free time	he also used to write stories that he wanted to make into movies.	
Theme: top Adju: Prep Phr Marked	Rheme	

10.

Hitchcock	gave up the idea of becoming an engineer when he got a small job with the <i>Famous Players</i> , which was a London movie company.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

11.

Later	he got a job as an assistant director with Islington Studios.
Theme: top Adju: adv Marked	Rheme

12a

Hitchcock, who got the nickname Hitch,	often had some very clever ideas for filming movies,
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

12b

so	later	his employer gave him a chance to make a movie by himself.
text Conj: cord	top Adju: adv Marked	Rheme
Theme		

13.

Hitch's first film - the first film that he directed-	was called "The Pleasure Garden."
Theme: top Sub: NG Unmarked	Rheme

14a

This movie	was made in 1920's,
Theme: top Adju: adv Marked	Rheme

14b

so	of course	it	was a "silent movie."
text Conj: cord	text Adju: conj	top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme
Theme			

15.

Movies at that time	did not have sound.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

16.

Hitch	made several other silent movies before he made the movie called "Blackmail."
Theme: top Sub: NG Unmarked	Rheme

17a

"Blackmail"	was his first talking movie,
Theme: top Adju: adv Marked	Rheme

17b

and	this movie	was of course another mystery movie.
text Conj: cord	top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

18.

Hitch	had become famous for his mystery movies.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

19.

In 1939	Alfred Hitchcock moved to Los Angeles because Los Angeles was becoming the new center for film-making.
Theme: top Adju: Prep Phr Marked	Rheme

20.

The first movie that Hitch made in the U.S.	was called "Rebecca."
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

21.

The story of "Rebecca"	came from a famous novel.
Theme: top Sub: NG Unmarked	Rheme

22.

In fact,	Hitchcock	got most of the stories for his movies from novels and plays.
text Adju: conj	top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

23a

After reading a novel or play,	Hitch would create the movie script by himself.
Theme: top $\beta$ NFT CI Marked	Rheme

23b

and	$\phi$	choose the actors and actresses.
text Conj: cord	top Subj: pron, ellip Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

23c

and also	φ	decide where and how to shoot each scene.
text Conj: cord	top Subj: pron, ellip Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

24.

Hitchcock's movies	are generally thought to be good movies because he did these things well: selecting of the story, writing of the script, selecting of the actors and actresses, and the creating of the scenes.	
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme	

25.

Hitchcock	used to do most of these jobs entirely by himself.	
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme	

26.

After the movie "Rebecca,"	Hitch made many more mystery movies in the United States.	
Theme: top Adju: Prep Phr Marked	Rheme	

27.

Some of his more famous movies	are "Foreign Correspondent," "Strangers on a Train," "Suspicion," and "Psycho."	
Theme: top Sub: NG Unmarked	Rheme	

28.

" The last movie that Hitchcock made	was "Family Plot."	
Theme: top Sub: NG Unmarked	Rheme	

29.

This film	was completed in 1976.
Theme: top Sub: NG Unmarked	Rheme

30.

Alfred Hitchcock	will probably always be remembered as one of the greatest movie directors of all time.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

31.

He	will be remembered for his complex mystery stories and for the number of good films that he directed.
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme



## APPENDIX H2

<b>Theme Analysis of the Text about James Cook</b>
--

1.

Captain James Cook	was an English seaman who lived in the eighteenth century.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

2.

He	was one of the world's greatest explorers.
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

3.

Between 1768 and 1779,	he made three great voyages of exploration to the Pacific Ocean.
Theme: top Adju: Prep Phr Marked	Rheme

4.

The purpose of these voyages	was to get information about lands already known and to discover new lands.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

5.

Captain Cook's first voyage	began in August of 1768.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

6.

On this voyage,	he had only one ship with a crew of 94 seamen.
Theme: top Adju: Prep Phr Marked	Rheme

7.

He	sailed south from England across the Atlantic Ocean and around the tip of South America.
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

8.

Then,	he	sailed west into the Pacific Ocean.
text Conj: cord	top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

9a

Eventually,	he	discovered the large islands of New Zealand
text Adju: conj	top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

9b

and	$\phi$	drew maps of their coasts.
text Conj: cord	top Subj: pron, ellip Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

10.

Then,	he	continued west until he came to the east coast of Australia.
Theme: top Conj: cord	top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

11.

He	found this coast to be fertile, a fact which was not known in Europe at that time.
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

12.

He	returned to England in July of 1771.
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

13.

In the next year,	Captain Cook began his second voyage of exploration.
Theme: top Adju: Prep Phr Marked	Rheme

14.

On this voyage,	he had two ships and about 200 seamen.
Theme: top Adju: Prep Phr Marked	Rheme

15.

The purpose of this voyage	was to try to discover if there was a continent other than Australia in the South Pacific.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

16.

He	sailed from England in July of 1772.
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

17.

When he reached the South <i>Pacific</i> ,	he turned directly south into the cold Antarctic Ocean.
Theme: top $\beta$ DP Cl Marked	Rheme

18.

In this ocean,	his ships were in great danger from icebergs.
Theme: top Adju: Prep Phr Marked	Rheme

19a

Cook	sailed across much of the South Pacific,
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

19b

but	he	did not find a new continent.
text Conj: cord	top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

20.

He	did, however, visit and make maps of many islands in the South Pacific.
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

21.

He	visited New Caledonia and the Cook Islands, which are named after him.
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

22.

He	returned to England in July of 1775.
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

23.

One year later,	Captain Cook began his third voyage of exploration.
Theme: top Adju: adv Marked	Rheme

24.

Once again,	he	had two ships.
text Adju: conj	top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

25.

However,	he	had fewer crewmen on this voyage.
text Adju: conj	top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

26.

He	had only 180 seamen.
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

27.

The purpose of this voyage	was to try to find a way from the Pacific Ocean to the Atlantic Ocean around the top of North America.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

28.

He	sailed from England in July of 1776.
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

29.

When he reached the Pacific,	he visited Hawaii and New Zealand.
Theme: top $\beta$ DP CI Marked	Rheme

30.

Then,	he	sailed east toward the coast of North America.
Theme: top Adju: adv Marked	top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

31.

When he reached the coast of North America,	he sailed directly north.
Theme: top $\beta$ DP CI Marked	Rheme

32.

He	sailed north as far as he could go.
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

33.

Eventually,	great walls of ice stood	in his way, and he could go no further.
text Adju: conj	top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

34.

Finally,	he	had to turn around and return to the Pacific.
text Adju: conj	top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

35

He	sailed back to Hawaii where he died in February of 1779.
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

36a

Captain Cook	found
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

36b

and	ϕ	mapped many places that had never been visited before.
text Conj: cord	Theme: top Subj: pron, ellip Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

37

Soon,	many people	were moving across the world to live in the places he discovered in the South Pacific.
Theme: top Adju: adv Marked	top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

38.

Captain Cook	was one of the world's greatest explorers and seamen.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

## APPENDIX H3

<b>Theme Analysis of the Text about Dizzy Gillespie</b>
---

1.

Dizzy Gillespie	is perhaps one of the most famous jazz musicians in the world at the present time.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

2.

He	is popular not only with jazz fans, but also with other jazz musicians.
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

3.

In fact,	among jazz musicians	he is known as the "king of the Trumpet."
text Adju: conj	top Adju: Prep Phr Marked	Rheme
Theme		

4.

He	will probably always be remembered for his great influence on jazz music
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

5.

Dizzy Gillespie	was born in 1917 in a small town in South Carolina, which is a state in the southern U.S.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme



6.

His father	was an amateur musician who used to keep his band's instruments at the Gillespie house.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

7.

Whenever he had a chance,	Dizzy used to try to pay some of the band's instruments
Theme: top $\beta$ DP Cl Marked	Rheme

8.

In fact,	he	experimented with all of them, but he preferred to play wind instruments such as the trumpet and the trombone.
text Adju: conj	top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

9a

Dizzy	always had strong lungs,
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

9b

so	it	was easy for him to play wind instruments
text Conj: cord	top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

10.

In a short time,	Dizzy became very good at playing both the trumpet and the trombone.
Theme: top Adju: Prep Phr Marked	Rheme

11.

He	never had a teacher or an actual lesson.
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

12.

By the time he was 13 years old,	Dizzy became so good at the trumpet that he received a free scholarship to study at a big music institute.
Theme: top $\beta$ DP CI Marked	Rheme

13.

Actually,	Dizzy Gillespie's real name	is John Birks Gillespie.
text Adju: conj	top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

14.

He	received the nickname "Dizzy" because he was always trying to act a little bit crazy in order to make other people laugh.
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

15.

"Dizzy"	means a little bit unusual or crazy.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

16.

Eventually,	everybody	began to call John "Dizzy."
text Adju: conj	top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

17.

Dizzy	got his first important job as a musician in 1936.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

18.

He	played in a big band in Philadelphia.
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

19.

In 1937	he got the chance to play in a recording session.
Theme: top Adju: Prep Phr Marked	Rheme

20.

When the record became popular,	Dizzy began to become recognized as a good musician.
Theme: top $\beta$ DP CI Marked	Rheme

21.

For the next few years,	Dizzy worked with a number of famous musicians such as Lionel Hampton, Charlie Parker, and Ella Fitzgerald.
Theme: top Adju: Prep Phr Marked	Rheme

22a

In 1946	Dizzy started his own band
Theme: top Adju: Prep Phr Marked	Rheme

22b

and	he	has been a bandleader ever since that time.
text Conj: cord Marked	top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

23.

Dizzy's bands	have been travelling all over the world for about 25 years.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

24.

By his own estimate,	Dizzy has travelled over a million miles with his bands.
Theme: top Adju: Prep Phr Marked	Rheme

25.

They	have played in Africa, Europe, Asia, and South America.
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

26.

Everywhere that he goes	Dizzy Gillespie is welcomed by jazz fans.
Theme: top $\beta$ DP CI Marked	Rheme

27a

He	has a friendly personality
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

27b

and	he	can still make people laugh and feel comfortable.
text Conj: cord	top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

28.

Other musicians who have worked with Gillespie	also have a lot of respect for him.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

29.

They	say that he is very patient and fair with the members of his band.
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

30a

He	listens to their ideas
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

30b

but	he	seldom gets angry with them.
text Conj: cord	top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

31a

Many band leaders	do not like to work with new or young musicians,
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

31b

but	Gillespie	has always accepted young musicians into his band in order to teach them and in order to learn new styles from them too.
text Conj: cord	top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

32.

Several famous modern jazz trumpeters such as Freddie Hubbard and Blue Mitchell	started their musical careers with Dizzy Gillespie's band.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

33.

In his lifetime	Gillespie recorded over 30 record albums.
Theme: top Adju: Prep Phr Marked	Rheme

34.

And	he	has appeared in front of millions of people, old and young.
text Conj: cord	top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

35.

Perhaps	Dizzy Gillespie	will always be known as the "king of the Trumpet."
int Adju: Modal	Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

## **Appendices to Geography Text-Book Genre: I1-I2**

### **The Original Versions of Texts**

**APPENDIX II****Volcanoes**

***English 6a Workbook: Teacher's Guide.* 1986. Academic Curriculum Unit. Dhahran, Saudi Arabia.**

A volcano is a special kind of opening in the earth. It is special because volcanoes occasionally erupt. This means that they throw hot gases, ash, rocks and lava out of the earth.

Many volcanoes look like cone-shaped mountains. Volcanoes begin as holes in the ground. But, when they erupt, they throw out lava, which is rock that has melted and can flow like a liquid. The lava flows around the hole in the ground. When the lava cools, it becomes solid and forms a cone around the hole. Each time the volcano erupts, more lava comes out. Eventually, the volcano looks like a mountain with a hole in the top from which lava can come out.

Volcanoes can be very dangerous. In a single day, the lava that pours out of them can flow over the countryside for many kilometers killing humans animals and plants. Also, the hot ash and gases can make it impossible for people and animals to breathe. Thousands of people have been killed by volcanoes.

Mount Vesuvius is a volcano in Southern Italy. It is 1,277 meters high. Approximately two thousand years ago, there were two towns near it. These towns were called Pompeii and Herculaneum. One night in August of the year 79, flames began coming out of the top of Mount Vesuvius. Then, a great black cloud of ash came out of the volcano, and rivers of mud and lava flowed down its sides. Pompeii and Herculaneum were completely buried. About 2,000 people were killed.

In more recent times, other volcanoes have erupted causing much damage and loss of life. Krakatoa, which is located in Indonesia, is not a large volcano. It is only 813 meters high. However, when it erupted in 1883, the noise was heard 5,000 kilometers



away. The eruption caused tidal waves that were forty meters high. These enormous waves swept down onto nearby islands. 36,000 people living on these islands were drowned.

Nineteen years later, in 1902, the people living in the town of St. Pierre on the island of Martinique heard strange noises. They were coming from a nearby volcano called Mount Pelee. Mount Pelee is a cone-shaped volcano that is 1,397 meters high. Then, on May 5, thousands of snakes appeared in the town. Something had made them leave the volcano as fast as they could. These snakes attacked any men or animals that got in their way. Before the snakes had gone, they had killed 50 humans and 200 animals. Then, three days later, an even worse thing happened. Mount Pelee erupted, killing 38,000 people in a few minutes. Only two men, of all the people who had lived in St. Pierre, survived the eruption of this volcano.

In the last few years, a number of volcanoes have erupted. In 1980, Mount St. Helens, a 2,549-meter-high volcano in the United States, erupted. This eruption killed only 60 people. In 1982, a 1,060-meter-high volcano in Mexico known as El Chichon erupted, killing 187 people.

In 1985, there was a much more serious volcanic eruption in South America. Nevado del Ruiz is a 5,486-meter-high volcano in Colombia. Because this volcano is so high, it always has snow at its top. When it erupted on November 13, 1985, the hot rocks and gas it threw out melted the snow. This snow flowed down the sides of the volcano in the form of a river of mud. Twenty-five thousand people were drowned in this mud.

Volcanoes have killed about 200,000 people in the last 600 years. They are one of the most destructive forces in nature. Scientists are trying to learn when volcanoes will erupt, so that people can be warned in advance. Scientists have made a lot of progress in understanding volcanoes. But, there is still much to be learned before volcanoes will stop being a threat to human life.

**APPENDIX I2****Rivers**

***English 6a Workbook: Teacher's Guide.* 1986. Academic Curriculum Unit. Dhahran, Saudi Arabia.**

Rivers have always been important to the countries through which they flow. Since ancient times, rivers have supplied water for irrigation. Also, they have often supported large fishing industries, so they have been a source of food. Finally, they have been an important means of transportation. In recent times, rivers have been used for another purpose. Dams and waterfalls on them have provided power to generate electricity.

Five of the most important rivers in the world are the Amazon, the Nile, the Congo, the Yanqzte and the Mississippi. All of these rivers are used for some of these purposes.

The Amazon river flows through several countries in South America. It is considered to be the largest river in the world because it carries more water than any other river. However, it is not the longest river. It is 6,437 kilometers long. It is 234 kilometers shorter than the world's longest river.

At present, the Amazon is used mainly as a means of transportation. The Amazon is wide enough and deep enough for large boats to carry cargo and passengers 3,700 kilometers along its length. Fishing is also an important industry on the Amazon. However, the Amazon has never been used *for* irrigation since the countries through which it flows have very rainy climates. Also, although there are plans to build a large darn, the river is not presently used to generate electricity.

The Nile River is located in the northern part of Africa. It is 6,671 kilometers long. It is the longest river in the world.

The Nile has been used as a source of water for irrigation and as a means of transportation for thousands of years. It is quite likely that irrigation was first practiced by ancient man on the banks of this river. Also, paintings from 5,000 years ago show boats carrying cargo on the Nile. In more recent times, since the Aswan Dam was completed, the Nile has been an important source of power for generating electricity.

The Congo River is another important river in Africa. It flows from east to west across the central part of this continent. The Congo is 4,667 kilometers long.

The Congo River is used mainly as a means of transportation. Many minerals, such as copper, and many crops, such as coffee and cotton, are carried on the Congo from the interior of Africa to the coast. Fishing, also, is becoming an important industry on this river. However, like the Amazon, the Congo River flows through countries with rainy climates. So, its waters have never been used for irrigation. Also, like the Amazon, the Congo is not used as a source of power to generate electricity.

The Yangtze River is located in Asia. It flows for 6,300 kilometers across China. It is the third longest river in the world.

For hundreds of years, the Yangtze has been used for three of the four main uses to which rivers are put. It has supplied water for irrigation and has been an important means of transportation since ancient times. Large boats can carry cargo and passengers for over 2,700 kilometers of its length. Also, fishing has always been an important industry on this river.

The Mississippi River flows from the northern part of the United States south through the middle of the country to the Gulf of Mexico. It is 3,779 kilometers long. It is the longest river in North America.

At present, there is a small fishing industry on the Mississippi. However, this river is used mainly as a means of transportation. The Mississippi carries about 40% of all cargo sent by water in the United States. However, like both the Amazon and the

Congo, the Mississippi has never been used for irrigation. The climate of the lands around the Mississippi supplies sufficient rain to make irrigation unnecessary.

## **Appendices to Geography Text-Book Genre: J1-J2**

### **The Structural Analysis of Theme Types**

**APPENDIX J1**

**Theme Analysis of the Text about Volcanoes**

1.

A volcano	is a special kind of opening in the earth.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

2.

It	is special because volcanoes occasionally erupt.
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

3.

This	means that they throw hot gases, ash, rocks and lava out of the earth.
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

4.

Many volcanoes	look like cone-shaped mountains.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

5.

Volcanoes	begin as holes in the ground.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

6.

But,	when they erupt,	they throw out lava, which is rock that has melted and can flow like a liquid.
text Conj: cord	top $\beta$ DP Cl Marked	Rheme

Theme
-------

7

The lava	flows around the hole in the ground.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

8a

When the lava cools,	it becomes solid
Theme: top $\beta$ DP Cl Marked	Rheme

8b

and	$\phi$	forms a cone around the hole.
text Conj: cord	top Subj: pron, ellip Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

9.

Each time the volcano erupts,	more lava comes out.
Theme: top $\beta$ DP Cl Marked	Rheme

10.

Eventually,	the volcano	looks like a mountain with a hole in the top from which lava can come out.
text Adju: conj	top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

11.

Volcanoes	can be very dangerous.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

12.

In a single day,	the lava that pours out of them can flow over the countryside for many kilometers killing humans animals and plants.
Theme: top Adju: Prep Phr Marked	Rheme

13.

Also,	the hot ash and gases	can make it impossible for people and animals to breathe
text Adju: conj	top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

14.

Thousands of people	have been killed by volcanoes.	
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme	

15.

Mount Vesuvius	is a volcano in Southern Italy.	
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme	

16.

It	is 1,277 meters high.	
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme	

17.

Approximately	two thousand years ago,	there were two towns near it.
text Adju: conj	top Adju: adv Marked	Rheme
Theme		

18.

These towns	were called Pompeii and Herculaneum.	
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme	

19.

One night in August of the year 79,	flames began coming out of the top of Mount Vesuvius.	
Theme: top Adju: Prep Phr Marked	Rheme	



20

Then,	a great black cloud of ash	came out of the volcano, and rivers of mud and lava flowed down its sides.
text Adju: conj	top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

21.

Pompeii and Herculaneum	were completely buried.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

22.

About 2,000 people	were killed. 21
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

23.

In more recent times,	other volcanoes have erupted causing much damage and loss of life.
Theme: top Adju: Prep Phr Marked	Rheme

24.

Krakatoa, which is located in Indonesia,	is not a large volcano.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

25.

It	is only 813 meters high.
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

26.

However,	when it erupted in 1883,	the noise was heard 5,000 kilometers away.
text Adju: conj	Theme: top β DP Cl Marked	Rheme
Theme		

27.

The eruption	caused tidal waves that were forty meters high.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

28.

These enormous waves	swept down onto nearby islands.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

29.

People living on these islands	were drowned.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

30.

Nineteen years later, in 1902,	the people living in the town of St. Pierre on 30 the island of Martinique heard strange noises.
Theme: top Adju: adv Marked	Rheme

31.

They	were coming from a nearby volcano called Mount Pelee.
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

32.

Mount Pelee	is a cone-shaped volcano that is 1,397 meters high.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

33.

Then,	on May 5,	thousands of snakes appeared in the town.
text Adju: conj	top Adju: Prep Phr Marked	Rheme
Theme		

34

Something	had made them leave the volcano as fast as they could.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

35.

These snakes	attacked any men or animals that got in their way.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

36.

Before the snakes had gone,	they had killed 50 humans and 200 animals.
Theme: top $\beta$ DP Cl Marked	Rheme

37.

Then,	three days later,	an even worse thing happened.
text Adju: conj	top Adju: adv Marked	Rheme
Theme		

38.

Mount Pelee	erupted, killing 38,000 people in a few minutes.
Theme: top Adju: Prep Phr Marked	Rheme

39.

Only two men, of all the people who had lived in St. Pierre,	survived the eruption of this volcano.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

40.

In the last few years,	a number of volcanoes have erupted.
Theme: top Adju: Prep Phr Marked	Rheme

41.

In 1980, Mount St. Helens,	a 2,549-meter-high volcano in the United States, erupted.
Theme: top Adju: Prep Phr Marked	Rheme

42.

This	eruption killed only 60 people.
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

43.

In 1982,	a 1,060-meter-high volcano in Mexico know as El Chichon erupted, killing 187 people.
Theme: top Adju: Prep Phr Marked	Rheme

44.

In 1985,	there was a much more serious volcanic eruption in South America.
Theme: top Adju: Prep Phr Marked	Rheme

45.

Nevado del Ruiz	is a 5,486-meter-high volcano in Colombia.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

46.

Because this volcano is so high,	it always has snow at its top.
Theme: top β DP Cl Marked	Rheme

47.

When it erupted on November 13, 1985,	the hot rocks and gas it threw out melted the snow.
Theme: top β DP Cl Marked	Rheme

48.

This snow	flowed down the sides of the volcano in the form of a river of mud.	
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme	

49.

Twenty-five thousand people	were drowned in this mud.	
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme	

50.

Volcanoes	have killed about 200,000 people in the last 600 years.	
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme	

51.

They	are one of the most destructive forces in nature.	
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme	

52.

Scientists	are trying to learn when volcanoes will erupt, so that people can be warned in advance.	
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme	

53

Scientists	have made a lot of progress in understanding volcanoes.	
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme	

54.

But,	there	is still much to be learned before volcanoes will stop being a threat to human life.
text Conj: cord	top Subj Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

## APPENDIX J2

<b>Theme Analysis of the Text about Rivers</b>
--

1.

Rivers	have always been important to the countries through which they flow.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

2.

Since ancient times,	rivers have supplied water for irrigation.
Theme: top Adju: adv Marked	Rheme

3a

Also,	they	have often supported large fishing industries,
text Adju: conj	top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

3b

so	they	have been a source of food.
text Conj: cord	top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

4.

Finally,	they	have been an important means of transportation.
text Adju: conj	top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

5.

In recent times,	rivers have been used for another purpose.
Theme: top Adju: Prep Phr Marked	Rheme

6.

Dams and waterfalls on them	have provided power to generate electricity.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

7.

Five of the most important rivers in the world	are the Amazon, the Nile, the Congo, the Yanqtze and the Mississippi.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

8.

All of these rivers	are used for some of these purposes.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

9.

The Amazon river	flows through several countries in South America.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

10.

It is considered	to be the largest river in the world because it carries more water than any other river.
Theme: top $\beta$ Themd Comnt Marked	Rheme

11.

However,	it	is not the longest river.
text Adju: conj	top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

12.

It	is 6,437 kilometers long.
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

13.

It	is 234 kilometers shorter than the world's longest river.	
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme	

14.

At present, text Adju: conj	the Amazon top Subj: NG Unmarked	is used mainly as a means of transportation. Rheme
Theme		

15.

The Amazon	is wide enough and deep enough for large boats to carry cargo and passengers 3,700 kilometers along its length.	
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme	

16.

Fishing	is also an important industry on the Amazon.	
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme	

17.

However,	the Amazon	has never been used for irrigation since the countries through which it flows have very rainy climates.
text Adju: conj	top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

18.

Also,	although there are plans to build a large darn,	the river is not presently used to generate electricity.
text Adju: conj	Theme: top $\beta$ DP Cl Marked	Rheme
Theme		



19.

The Nile River	is located in the northern part of Africa.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

20.

It	is 6,671 kilometers long.
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

21.

It	is the longest river in the world.
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

22.

The Nile	has been used as a source of water for irrigation and as a means of transportation for thousands of years.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

23.

It is quite likely	that irrigation was first practiced by ancient man on the banks of this river.
Theme: top $\beta$ Themd Comnt Marked	Rheme

24.

Also,	paintings from 5,000 years ago	show boats carrying cargo on the Nile.
Theme: top Adju: conj	top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

Theme

25.

In more recent times,	since the Aswan Darn was completed, the Nile has been an important source of power for generating electricity.
Theme: top Adju: Prep Phr Marked	Rheme

26.

The Congo River	is another important river in Africa.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

27.

It	flows from east to west across the central part of this continent
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

28.

The Congo	is 4.667 kilometers long.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

29.

The Congo River	is used mainly as a means of transportation.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

30.

Many minerals, such as copper, and many crops, such as coffee and cotton,	are carried on the Congo from the interior of Africa to the coast.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

31.

Fishing,	also, is becoming an important industry on this river.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

32.

However,	like the Amazon,	the Congo River flows through countries with rainy climates.
text Adju: conj	top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

33.

So,	its waters	have never been used for irrigation.
text Conj: cord	top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

34.

Also,	like the Amazon,	the Congo is not used as a source of power to generate electricity.
text Adju: conj	top Subj: NG Marked	Rheme
Theme		

35.

The Yangtze River	is located in Asia.
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme

36.

It	flows for 6,300 kilometers across China.
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

37.

It	is the third longest river in the world.
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

38.

For hundreds of years,	The Yangtze has been used for three of the four main uses to which rivers are put.
Theme: top Adju: adv Marked	Rheme

39a

It	has supplied water for irrigation
Theme: top Subj: pron Unmarked	Rheme

39b

and	φ	has been an important means of transportation since ancient times.
text Conj: cord	top Subj: pron, ellip Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

40.

Large boats	can carry cargo and passengers for over 2,700 kilometers of its length.	
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme	

41.

Also,	fishing	has always been an important industry on this river.
text Adju: conj	top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

42.

The Mississippi River	flows from the northern part of the United states south through the middle of the country to the Calf of Mexico.	
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme	

43.

It	is 3.779 kilometers long.	
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme	

44.

It	is the longest river in North America.	
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme	

45.

At present,	there	is a small fishing industry on the Mississippi.
text Adju: conj	top Subj Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

46.

However,	this river	is used mainly as a means of transportation.
text Adju: conj	top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme
Theme		

47.

The Mississippi	carries about 40% of all cargo sent by water in the United states.	
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme	

48.

However,	like both the Amazon and the Congo,	the Mississippi has never been used for irrigation.
text Adju: conj	top Adju: adv Marked	Rheme
Theme		

49.

The climate of the lands around the Mississippi	supplies sufficient rain to make irrigation unnecessary.	
Theme: top Subj: NG Unmarked	Rheme	

